



HDPIi High Definition Card Printer/Encoder Service Manual

Part Number: L001129 Revision 1.0

HDPii High Definition Card Printer/Encoder Service Manual (Rev. 1.0), property of Fargo Electronics, Incorporated

Copyright © 2008 by Fargo Electronics, Incorporated. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Exclusive permission is granted to authorized resellers of Fargo products to reproduce and distribute this copyrighted document to authorized Fargo customers. The revision number for this document will be updated to reflect changes, corrections, updates and enhancements to this document.

Revision Control Number	Date	Document Title
Revision 1.0	February 2009	HDPii High Definition Card Printer/Encoder Service Manual

These reference documents were thoroughly reviewed to provide Fargo with professional and international standards, requirements, guidelines and models for our technical, training and user documentation. At all times, the *Copyright Protection Notice* for each document was adhered to within our Fargo documentation process. This reference to other documents does indicate that Fargo is an ISO-certified company at this time.

- ANSI/ISO/ASQ Q9001-2000 American National Standard, (sub-title) Quality Management Systems – Requirements (published by the American Society of Quality, Quality Press, P.O. Box 3005, Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53201-3005)
- The ASQ ISO 9000:2000 Handbook (editors, Charles A. Cianfrani, Joseph J. Tsiakals and John E. West; Second Edition; published by the American Society of Quality, Quality Press, 625 N. Plankinton Avenue, Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53203)
- Juran's Quality Handbook (editors, Joseph M. Juran and A. Blanton Godfrey; Fifth Edition, McGraw-Hill)

Any questions regarding changes, corrections, updates or enhancements to this document should be forwarded to:

Fargo Electronics, Incorporated
Support Services
6533 Flying Cloud Drive
Eden Prairie, MN 55344 (USA)
(952) 946-0050
FAX: (952) 946-8492
www.fargo.com

Table of Contents

Section 1: Printer Overview	1-1
How to use the guide	1-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	1-2
Process Flow (in table format)	1-3
Reviewing the Boot-up Sequence	1-3
Reviewing the Sequence of Operations	1-4
Section 2: Specifications	2-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	2-1
Introduction	2-2
Reviewing the Printer Overview table	2-2
Reviewing the Package	2-3
Regulatory Compliances	2-5
Agency Listings	2-5
FCC Rules	2-6
Environmental Protection (China-RoHS)	2-6
Technical Specifications	2-7
Functional Specifications	2-16
Printer Components: Resin Thermal Transfer to USB Interface Port	2-17
Printer Components: LCD and Softkey Control Pad	2-18
Printer Components: Print Ribbons	2-20
Printer Components: Blank Cards	2-21
Printer Components: Card Input and Output Hoppers	2-22
Printer Components: Card Output Hopper and Reject Hopper	2-23
Printer Components: Transfer Roller	2-24
Printer Components: Flipper Table	2-25
Section 3: Installation Procedures	3-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	3-1
Introduction	3-2
Time Requirement	3-2
System Requirements	3-2
Inspecting the Printer	3-2
Unpacking the Printer	3-2
Choosing a Good Location	3-4
About Moisture Condensation	3-4
Module Installation Procedures	3-5
Installing the Output Module Accessory	3-5
Removing the Output Side Upgrade Cover (if applicable)	3-7
Printer Loading Procedures	3-8
Loading the Print Ribbon	3-8
Loading the Clear Transfer Film	3-11
Inserting the Card Cleaning Roller	3-14
Loading the Blank Cards	3-17
Connecting Power to Printer	3-19
Printer Driver Installation Procedures	3-22
Installation Procedures	3-22
Installing the Printer Driver	3-22
Printing a Test Print Image	3-31
Section 4: Accessory Procedures	4-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	4-1
Using the Security Lock Slot	4-2

Section 5: General Troubleshooting	5-1
LCD Messages	5-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	5-2
Troubleshooting - LCD and Printer Error Message Tables	5-3
How to use the LCD Error Message Table (example provided)	5-4
Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table	5-5
Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table	5-19
Communications Errors	5-30
Resolving the Communication Errors	5-30
Printing a Test Image	5-32
Reviewing the Alignment Self Test Card	5-34
Reviewing the Color Bars Self Test	5-35
Reviewing the Device Settings Self Test	5-36
Reviewing the Magnetic Self Test	5-38
Reviewing the Resin Self Test	5-39
Section 6: Ethernet Option Section	6-1
Introduction	6-1
Technical Specification - Ethernet Option	6-2
Functional Specification - Ethernet Option	6-3
Network Services - Overview	6-4
Reviewing the Print Server	6-4
Reviewing the Web Page Server	6-4
Reviewing the Network Management Interface	6-4
Reviewing the Telnet Server	6-4
Network Management Interface	6-5
Telnet Command Line Interface	6-5
Initiating a Telnet Session	6-5
Reviewing the Telnet Command Table	6-6
Ethernet Web Pages – Standard Procedures	6-12
Reviewing Web page security	6-12
Logging In	6-13
Accessing the Home page	6-14
Reviewing the Home Page	6-15
Reviewing the Home Page Categories and Fields (table)	6-16
Configuring the Network Settings	6-16
Accessing the Network Settings page	6-17
Reviewing the Interface	6-18
Reviewing the Current Settings	6-19
Switching to the Automatic IP Address Mode	6-20
Changing to the Static IP Address Mode	6-21
Using the Clear Changes button	6-23
Using the Media Information page	6-24
Using the TCP/IP page	6-25
Using the TCP/IP page	6-26
Using the Printer page	6-27
Using the System Log page	6-29
Changing the Log Name	6-30
Selecting the Log Type	6-32
Selecting the Log Destination	6-34
Setting up Email Event logging	6-36
Specifying UDP Event logging	6-38
Specifying TCP Event logging	6-40

Using the Administration pages	6-43
Using the System Information page	6-43
Changing the Root Password	6-45
Using the Reboot pages	6-46
Rebooting the Printer	6-46
Upgrading the Main Firmware	6-48
Using the Print Path page	6-54
Using the Help page	6-56
Additional Procedures	6-56
Accessing the Ethernet Status LEDs	6-56
Reviewing the LED Table	6-56
Upgrading the Main Firmware with the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility	6-57
Restoring the Factory Settings for Ethernet	6-59
Resetting the settings	6-59
Changing the LCD Network Settings	6-59
Accessing the Network Setup Menu	6-59
Changing the DHCP Setting	6-60
Changing the ANEG setting	6-60
Saving addresses	6-61
Resetting Passwords	6-61
Accessing the IP Address	6-62
Ethernet Printer Troubleshooting Procedures	6-63
Troubleshooting procedures	6-63
Verifying the Printer Connection	6-64
Verifying the Printer IP address	6-64
Verifying that your PC can access the Printer using the ping command	6-65
Printing a test page	6-66
Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions	6-67
Glossary of Terms	6-74
Section 7: Printer Adjustments	7-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	7-1
Printing on Alternate Card Stocks	7-2
Selecting the Right Cards and optimizing the Print Process	7-2
Selecting the Appropriate Printer Driver settings	7-3
Conducting the Tape Adhesion Test	7-5
Printer Driver Options	7-8
Installing Printer Driver Updates	7-8
Setting Up the Printer Driver	7-10
Setting up Windows 2000/XP/2003	7-10
Using the OK, Cancel and Help buttons	7-10
Using the Card tab	7-11
Selecting the Card Size	7-12
Selecting the Card Type	7-13
Setting the Orientation	7-17
Specifying the number of Copies	7-18
Selecting the Diagnostics button	7-19
Selecting the Test Print button	7-20
Selecting the About button	7-21
Selecting the Toolbox button	7-22
Using the Device Options tab	7-23
Detecting Supplies at Print Time Function	7-24

Adjusting the Ribbon Type	7-27
Adjusting the Film Type	7-29
Using the Dual Sided Group Functions	7-30
Using the Dual Sided - Print Both Sides option	7-31
Using the Print Both Sides - Split 1 Set of Ribbon Panels option	7-32
Using the Print Both Sides - Print Back Image on Front of Card option	7-33
Using the Dual Sided - Print Back Side Only option	7-34
Using the Device Options Group	7-35
Using the Rotate Front 180 Degrees or Rotate Back 180 Degrees options	7-36
Using the Disable Printing option	7-37
Using the Image Color tab	7-38
Using the Quality – Color Matching dropdown	7-40
Adjusting for the Resin Dither	7-44
Using the Advanced Image Color window	7-45
Using the Default button on the Image Color tab	7-51
Using the Image Transfer tab	7-52
Adjusting the Image Position controls	7-53
Adjusting the Transfer Dwell Time and Temperature	7-55
Using the Default button	7-59
Using the Magnetic Encoding tab	7-60
Using the Encoding Mode dropdown	7-61
Selecting the Coercivity/Magnetic Track	7-65
Reviewing the Shift Data Left Function	7-66
Reviewing the Magnetic Track Options	7-67
Using the Magnetic Track Options	7-69
Using the Character Size buttons	7-71
Using the ASCII Offset dropdown list	7-72
Using the Bit Density dropdown list	7-73
Using the LRC Generation dropdown list	7-74
Using the Encoding Mode dropdown list	7-75
Reviewing the ISO Track Locations	7-76
Sending the Track Information	7-77
Reviewing the Sample String	7-78
Reviewing the ASCII Code and Character Table	7-79
Using the Default button (Image Transfer tab)	7-80
Using the K Panel Resin tab	7-81
Using the Scroll controls	7-82
Using the Click and Drag capability	7-83
Selecting “inches or mm” radio button	7-83
Using the Add and Delete buttons	7-83
Selecting the Full Card	7-84
Selecting the Defined Area(s)	7-85
Selecting the Undefined Area(s)	7-86
Defining the Area to activate the Card Grid	7-87
Measuring the Total Card area	7-88
Measuring the Area to be positioned on the Card	7-89
Selecting the Print YMC under the K and Print K Only options	7-90
Using the Printer Supplies tab	7-92
Reviewing Information on the Supplies tab	7-93
Section 8: Inhibit Panel Usage	8-1
Using the Inhibit Panel (HDPiI)	8-1

Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)	8-1
Using Inhibit Panel with an Application	8-4
Generating Text Objects	8-4
Rendering Print Jobs	8-5
Using the Test Print	8-13
Using the Test Print	8-14
Troubleshooting the Inhibit Panel	8-15
Section 9: Toolbox	9-16
Accessing the Toolbox	9-16
Selecting the Configuration tab	9-17
Using the Configuration Tab	9-18
Using the Optional Printer Features Group Box	9-18
Using the Event Monitoring Group Box	9-19
Reviewing the Ribbon Low message	9-19
Using the Film Low message	9-20
Selecting the Set Language for Printer LCD Display Group Box	9-20
Selecting the Calibrate Film tab	9-21
Selecting the Calibrate Ribbon tab	9-22
Selecting the Clean Printer tab	9-23
Using the Clean Printer Group Box	9-25
Selecting the Advanced Settings tab	9-26
Reviewing the No Printer Connected error message	9-28
Reviewing the Value outside the Range error message	9-28
Section 10: Cleaning	10-29
Using the Required Supplies	10-29
Safety Messages (review carefully)	10-30
Accessing the Clean Printer tab	10-31
See below.	10-31
Cleaning the Printer Platen Roller and Card Feed Rollers	10-32
Cleaning Procedures	10-35
Cleaning inside the Printer	10-35
Cleaning outside the Printer	10-35
Cleaning the Printhead	10-36
Replacing the Card Cleaning Roller	10-37
Cleaning the Magnetic Encoder	10-38
Section 11: Fargo Workbench Printer Utility	11-1
Using the Inhibit Panel (HDPii)	11-1
Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)	11-1
Using Inhibit Panel (from an Application)	11-4
Generating TextOut Commands	11-4
Rendering Print Jobs	11-4
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)	11-5
Using the Test Print	11-12
Inhibit Panel Feature Operation	11-13
Using the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility For Inhibit Area Placement	11-13
Using the Application For Inhibit Area Placement	11-14
Background Information - Windows Printing System	11-15
Inhibit Bitmap - Local Printer Instances Functions	11-15
Inhibit Bitmap - Network (Shared) Printer Instances Functions	11-15
Inhibit Bitmap File Placement Examples	11-16
Inhibit Bitmap File Description	11-16
Section 12: Packing the Card Printer	12-1

Section 13: Firmware Updates	13-1
Performing the Firmware Updates	13-2
Section 14: Fargo Technical Support	14-1
Contacting Fargo Technical Support	14-1
Reading the Serial Numbers on a Fargo Printer	14-2
Finding out when a Card Printer was manufactured	14-2
Reviewing Example No. 1: Serial Number A9007001	14-2
Section 15: Reviewing Spare Parts Lists	15-1
Reviewing Spare Parts List for	15-1
Section 16: HDPII Parts Replacement	16-1
Safety Messages (review carefully)	16-2
Cover Replacement Procedures	16-3
Reviewing the HDPII Covers- Printer	16-3
Replacing the Front Door Assembly (D910131-01)	16-4
Replacing the Back Cover Assembly (D910132-01)	16-5
Replacing the Input Side Cover (D910133-01)	16-6
Replacing the Output Side Upgrade Cover (D910139-01)	16-7
Replacing the Output Side Cover (D910134-01)	16-8
Replacing the Top Cover (D910007-01)	16-9
Replacing the Front Panel Trim Cover (D910283-01)	16-10
Replacing the Magnetic Cover (D910138-01)	16-11
Removing the Baseplate	16-12
Board Replacement Procedures	16-13
Replacing the Magnetic Head Assembly (089201; Module Kit)	16-13
Replacing the LCD Board Assembly (A000440)	16-14
Replacing the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03)	16-15
Replacing the USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441)	16-16
Replacing the RFID Board Assembly (A000365)	16-19
Card Path and Roller Replacement Procedures	16-22
Replacing the Card Path Assembly (D910006)	16-22
Replacing the Card Rollers, Upper Roller (D910064) and Lower Roller (D910107)	16-24
Replacing the Card Rollers (D910062), Card Roller (D910063) and Card Roller (D910065)	16-27
Replacing the Platen Card Roller (D910101)	16-31
Replacing the Print Platen Roller (D910109)	16-33
Motor Replacement Procedures	16-37
Replacing the Drive Train Stepper Motor Assembly (D910073; Card Path location)	16-37
Replacing the Card Feed Motor/Roller Assembly (D910074)	16-39
Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055), Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057), and RFID Board (A000365)	16-41
Replacing the Film Take-Up Motor (D910058) and Ribbon Take-Up Motor (D910056)	16-46
Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D910216)	16-48
Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093; 2 belts) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Pulley (D840888)	16-53
Replacing the Lamination Mechanism (D910054)	16-57
Replacing the Lamination Mechanism Lam Cam Motor (D910072)	16-59
Replacing the Lamination Mechanism Lam Cam Sensor (D910216)	16-60
Sensor Replacement	16-61
Replacing the Card Path Sensor (D910200)	16-61
HDPII Printhead Assembly Kit (086091) Replacement Guide	16-64
HDPII Mainboard Cable Connection	16-68
Reviewing the HDPII Printer Main Board connections	16-68
Reviewing the HDPII Printer Main Board connections	16-69

Replacing the Output Side Cover (D910242-01) and Input Side Covers (D910187-01) and Top Cover (D910327-01).	16-71
Replacing the Output Module Back Access Assembly (D910132-01)	16-72
Replacing the Output Module Front Cover (D910131-01 & D910238-01)	16-73
Replacing the Output Module Gears (D860280) and (810266)	16-74
Replacing the Output Module Flipper Assembly (D900205)	16-76
Replacing the Output Roller Assembly (D900236)	16-79
Replacing the Output Module Flipper Roller (D900123)	16-81
Replacing the Output Module Sensor bundle (D900249)	16-82
Replacing the Output Module Motor (D900523)	16-83
Replacing the Card Feed Motor (D900524)	16-84
Replacing the Output Module Main Board (A000394)	16-85
Replacing the Accessory Board (A000483)	16-86
Replacing the Output Module Solenoid/Lock (D920032)	16-87
Replacing the Sensor Bundle (D910219)	16-88
Section 17: Glossary of Terms	17-89
Section 18: Index	18-2
Appendix: Engineering Drawings	18-1



Section 1: Printer Overview

How to use the guide

The HDPii High Definition Card Printer/Encoder User Guide is designed to provide installers and technicians with quick, efficient lookup of related procedures, components and terms. The Guide can be used effectively either in soft or hard copy, depending on the preference of the installer or technician.

Manual	Description
Glossary of Terms and Technical/Functional Specifications (hyper-linked)	You can go directly to the Glossary of Terms, Technical Specifications and Functional Specifications to learn how to use the processes, procedures, functions and windows for the within concise, correlative tables.
Table of Contents (hyper-linked)	You can use the automated Table of Contents to quickly locate, for example, an error message, a procedure, the index or an appendix.
Cross-Referencing (hyper-linked)	You can use the cross-referencing links to quickly locate, for example, an error message or a procedure.
Comprehensive Index (hyper-linked)	You can use the Comprehensive Index to quickly locate information on the Printer, relating to a specification, a procedural step, a window or screen, a component, a term, a qualifier or a related feature to this Printer.

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Process Flow (in table format)

Reviewing the Boot-up Sequence

Step	Process
1	The Card feed stepper turns ON (to check for a card in the card path).
2	The Film transfer take-up Motor turns ON to take up any slack in the film.
3	The Print Headlift turns until head up position is returned from Headlift Sensor.
4	The Print Ribbon moves forward until it finds the yellow panel, pauses, advances to magenta, then backs up to yellow (the Ribbon Sensor detects the color of the ribbon).
5	The Transfer Film advances forward two panels from supply (advances until the Print Film Sensor senses 2 marks on the Film).
6	The Transfer Film advances forward one panel from supply (advances until the Print Film Sensor senses 1 mark on the Film).
7	The Transfer Film reverses for one panel onto supply (reverses until the Print Film Sensor senses 1 mark on the Film).
8	The Transfer Film reverses for one panel onto supply (reverses until the Print Film Sensor senses 1 mark on the Film).

Reviewing the Sequence of Operations

The following sequence describes a dual-sided, full color print job with magnetic encoding.

Step	Process
1	The File information is received from the PC.
2	The Heater warms up and/or maintains the heat on the hot Roller using the RTD (Resistive Thermal Device) to help maintain the desired temp.
3	The DC Motor and Stepper Motor turn ON and run until a card is seen by the card Sensor, which will cause the Card Input Motor to stop. The Stepper will continue to run a certain number of steps to position the card under the Card Feed/Position Sensor.
4	For a magnetic print job, the Stepper will continue moving the card until the trailing edge is positioned under the Mag Head. All stop.
5	Stepper will turn ON in reverse direction and encode card. All stop.
6	Stepper will again turn on and position the trailing edge of the card under the Mag Head. All stop.
7	Stepper will turn ON in reverse direction and verify data encoded onto mag stripe.
8	Stepper continues transporting card until the trailing edge is positioned under the Card Feed/Position Sensor. All stop.
9	The Ribbon Drives turn ON and move until the correct panel is found by the Print Ribbon Sensor. All stop. (Note: The Print Ribbon Encoder is active during this step.) This step occurs simultaneously with Step 10 (below).
10	The Film Drives turn ON until the Film is positioned with the Film Print Alignment Sensor. (Note: This is the closest Sensor to the Print Platen Roller.) All stop. (Note: The Film Ribbon Encoder is active during this step.)
11	The Headlift Motor engages, moving the Printhead down until Headlift Sensor is activated. All stop.
12	The Fan turns ON as required to keep head cool.

Continued on the next page



Reviewing Card Printer Sequence of Operations (continued)

Step	Process
13	The Ribbon Drives, Film Drive and Print Platen Stepper turn ON and the Printhead burns the image data until the image data is depleted. All stop. (Note: The Ribbon Encoders and Film Encoders are active during this step.)
14	The Headlift Motor engages, moving the Printhead up until the Headlift Sensor is activated. All stop. The Film Drive reverses the Film Position Sensor to print over the image (again).
15	Repeat Steps 9 to 14 for the appropriate number of color/heat seal panels.
16	The Film Drives turn ON to rewind the printed portion of the Film into position at the heated Transfer Roller.
17	If the heater is not at the required temperature yet, the job will pause.
18	Stepper engages to move the card to a position directly over the Transfer Roller. The Card Feed/Position Sensor determines card edge and number of steps to position card. All stop.
19	The Headlift Motor turns ON to raise the Transfer Roller and will stop when the Headlift Sensor is activated. All stop.
20	The Stepper and Film Drive will turn off after a given number of steps based on the position given by the card Sensor. All stop. (Note: The Film Encoder is active during this step.)
21	The Headlift Motor turns ON to lower the Transfer Roller, stopping when the Headlift Sensor is activated.
22	The Film Drive and Stepper turn ON for a given number of clicks based on Film Encoder, until the film is released.
23	The Stepper turns ON to move the card into the Output Module to flip the card to the opposite side. After flipping, the card is transported back to the Card Feed/Position Sensor (to repeat Steps 9 to 14). Upon completion of all print cycles, the card is transported to the Output Hopper (based on steps from the Output Card Position Sensor). All stop.
24	The Heater is maintained at a set temperature by the RTD when the Printer is ON. The cooling fan is ON when the Printhead is ON or hot.

Section 2: Specifications

The purpose of this section is to provide the User with specific information on the Regulatory Compliances, Agency Listings, Technical Specifications and Functional Specifications for the Printers.

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Introduction

The purpose of this section is to provide the User with specific information on the Regulatory Compliances, Agency Listings, Technical Specifications and Functional Specifications for the Card Printer/Encoder.

Reviewing the Printer Overview table

Series	Input Hoppers	Card Capacity	Accepted Card Size	Encoding Modules	Flipper Table
(Dual-Sided Card Printer/Encoder)	1	100 (100 per Cartridge)	CR-80	Optional	Included

Reviewing the Package

These items are included with your Please see below:

- Unpacking Instructions
- Software Installation CD (includes Printer Driver)
- Cleaning Roller
- One (1) power supply with Printer



Reviewing the Card Printer

Display - Printer with attached Output Hopper



Regulatory Compliances

Term	Description
CSA (cUL)	The Printer manufacturer has been authorized by UL to represent the Card Printer as CSA Certified under CSA Standard C22.2 No. 60950-1-03. File Number: E145118
FCC	The Card Printer complies with the requirements in Part 15 of the FCC rules for a Class A digital device.
UL	The Card Printer is listed under UL IEC 60950-1 (2001) INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY EQUIPMENT. (Note: This product is intended to be supplied by a Listed Power Unit marked "Class 2" or "I.T.E." and rated for 24 V dc, 3.75 to 5 A.) File Number: E145118

Agency Listings

Term	Description
Emissions Standards	CE, FCC, CRC c1374, EN 55022 Class A, FCC Class A, EN 55024: 1998, EN 61000-3-2 and EN 61000-3-3.
Safety Standards	UL IEC 60950-1 (2001), CSA C22.2 No. 60950-1-03.

FCC Rules

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference.
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at their expense.

Reference Safety Messages in this document.



Environmental Protection (China-RoHS)

Environmental Protection Use Period is based on the product being used in an office environment.


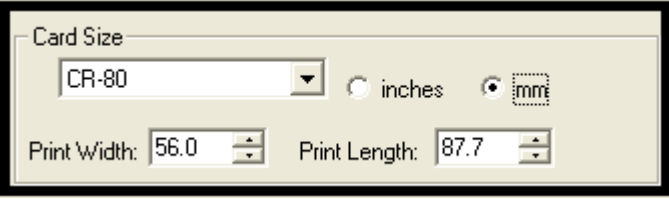
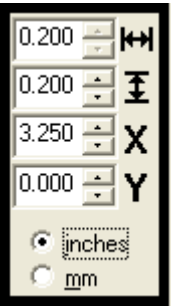
Technical Specifications

Term	Description
Accepted Card Thickness	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print only: .030" (30 mil) to .050" (50 mil) / .762mm to 1.27mm
Accepted Electronic Card types	HID Proximity Cards, Mifare Contactless Smart Cards and Contact Smart Cards, iClass
Accepted Card Types (Compositions)	ABS, PVC, PET, PETG, Proximity Cards, Contact Smart Cards, Magnetic Stripe cards and Optical Memory Cards
Card Cleaning	Replaceable cleaning roller (included with each print Ribbon)
Colors	Up to 16.7 million colors and 256 shades per Pixel.
Input Card Cartridge Capacity	100 cards (.030in./ .762mm) Has refillable Card Cartridge that can either be attached to the Printer or detached for storage. This allows single feed with the Card Cartridge removed or with no other cards in the Card Cartridge.
Output Hopper Card Capacity	100 card Output Hopper capacity (.030" / .762mm) Includes Reject Hopper capability when connected to the Output Module with available storage on the Output Tray.

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Card Sizes (Accepted Standard sizes)	<p>(See Card tab under Printer Adjustments):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CR-80: This selection is the default form size for the Printer. This will print a 2.125 in. W x 3.370 in. L (54mm W x 85.6mm L) image including a .04 over-bleed on each of the 4 sides. • CR-80 (default values): Card Size supported is 2.204 in. W X 3.452 in. L (56mm W X 87.7 mm L). <p>Standard Card Size in inches (Printer Driver > Card tab)</p>  <p>Standard Card Size in mm (Printer Driver > Card tab)</p> 

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Card Size (Custom selection)	<p>Sets Custom Card Size when closing dialog box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print Width default = 2.204, upper limit = 2.440, lower limit = 1.000, cannot be null • Print Length default = 3.452, upper limit = 3.704, lower limit = 3.000, cannot be null <p>Changing back to CR-80 resets to CR-80 defaults.</p> <p>Custom Card Size in inches (Printer Driver > Card tab)</p>  <p>Custom Card Size in mm (Printer Driver > Card tab)</p> 
Card Size (inches and mm)	<p>Choice of inches or mm changes the counter choice on the K Panel Resin tab. See below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inches displays card size in inches. • mm displays card size in mm. <p>Changing Print Width or Print Length dimensions automatically changes drop down to Custom.</p> 

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Colors (dpi)	300 dpi (11.8 dots/mm)
Dimensions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard: 11.50"H x 12.25"W x 9.25"D / 292mmH x 313mmW x 235mmD • Dual-Sided Module: 11.50"H x 25.00"W x 9.25"D / 292mmH x 626mmW x 235mmD
Display	User-friendly, SmartScreen™ LCD Control Panel
Encoding Options (only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ISO Magnetic Stripe Encoding Module, dual high- and low-coercivity, Tracks 1, 2 and 3 • JIS II Magnetic Stripe Encoding Module • E-card Docking Station (required for all e-card options or 3rd party smart card encoding) • Contact Smart Card Encoder (ISO 7816), Parts 1-4; T=0 and T=1 • Contactless Smart Card Encoder (Mifare®) • Prox Card Encoder (HID read-only) (Note: Corporate Express 1000 Cards can be used with special order Weigand/ASCII Converter) • iCLASS™

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Certified Supplies	<p>Card Printer/Encoder requires highly specialized media to function properly.</p> <p>To maximize printed card quality and durability, Printhead life and Printer/Encoder reliability, use only Certified Supplies, Fargo warranties are void, where not prohibited by law, when non-Certified Supplies are used.</p>
Film Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Clear, 1,500 prints• Standard Holographic (500 prints)• Custom Holographic, special order (500 prints)
Film Storage Temperature	77°F (25°C) or lower for no longer than 1.5 years.
Humidity	20% to 80% (non-condensing)
Input Hopper Card Capacity	100 cards (.030/.762mm)
Interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• USB 2.0 (high speed)• Ethernet with the internal Print Server
Maximum Accepted Card Width	2.125W / 54mmW
Maximum Accepted Card Length	3.375L / 85.6mmL

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Mechanical Security	<p>Locking override:</p> <p>The locking solenoid has a mechanical lock override (that allows access to the secured areas of the Printer with the appropriate key). This lock has a barrel-type key.</p> <p>Restricted access:</p> <p>With the cover closed and locked, the user will not have access to the following areas of the printer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reject Hopper • Flipper Access Door • Ribbon/Film Cartridge access area • Card Input Hopper
Memory	16MB RAM
Operating Temperature	65° F to 90° F (18° C to 32° C).
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Magnetic stripe encoding dual-sided (simultaneous) • Smart card encoding (contact/contactless) • Printer cleaning kit
Output Hopper Card Capacity	100 cards (.030mm)
Physical Security	The Printer has base-plate tie down points for physical security (built-in bolt-holes or a Kensington-type lock receptacle).
Power Supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 80W <p>(Note: This product is intended to be supplied by a Listed Power Unit marked "Class 2" and rated for 24 V dc, 3.75 to 5 A.)</p>

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Print Area	Over-the-edge on CR-80 cards.
Printing Method	HDP™ Dye-Sublimation / Resin Thermal Transfer
Print Ribbon Options	<p>Prints or Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full color, YMC*, 750 prints • Full color with resin black, YMCK*, 500 prints • Full color with two resin black Panels, YMCKK*, 500 prints • Full color YMC with resin black and heat seal panel for difficult-to-print surfaces, YMCKH*, 500 prints • Full Color/Inhibit, YMCI**, 500 prints <p>*Indicates the Ribbon type and the number of Ribbon panels printed where Y=Yellow, M=Magenta, C=Cyan, K=Resin Black, H=Heat Seal, and I=Inhibit.</p> <p>**The Inhibit or I designation under YMCI indicates the ability to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Users can select these Ribbon types to prevent film from transferring over security features, signature panel or other areas of special interest on the card surface.</p>

Continued on the next page

Technical Specifications (continued)

Term	Description
Print Speed - Batch Mode	<p>Print Speed - Batch Mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 38 seconds per card / 95 cards per hour (YMC with transfer)* • 46 seconds per card / 78 cards per hour (YMCK with transfer)* • 70 seconds per card / 51 cards per hour (YMCKK with transfer)* • 70 seconds per card / 48 cards per hour (YMCKI with transfer)* <p>Print speed indicates an approximate print speed. It is measured from the time a card feeds into the Printer until the time it ejects from the Printer.</p> <p>Print speeds do not include encoding time or the time needed for the PC to process the image.</p> <p>Process time is dependent on the size of the file, the CPU, amount of RAM and the amount of available resources at the time of the print.</p>
Resolution	300 dpi (11.8 dots/mm)
Single Wire USB 2.0 Encoding Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ISO Magnetic Stripe Encoding, dual high- and low-coercivity, Tracks 1, 2 and 3 • Contactless Smart Card Encoder (HID iClass and MIFARE) • Contact Smart Card Encoder reads from and writes to all ISO7816-1/2/3/4 memory and microprocessor smart cards (T=0, T=1) as well as synchronous cards • Prox Card Reader (HID read-only)
Software Drivers	Windows® 2000 / XP / Server 2003

Continued on the next page

Technical Specifications

Term	Description
Supply Frequency	50 Hz / 60 Hz
Supply Voltage	100-240 VAC, 3.8A
Supported Printers/Models	Please see below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ethernet • USB
System Requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • x86 based PC or compatible • Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows 2003 • 500MHz computer with 256MB of RAM or higher • 500MB free hard disk space or higher
Warranty	<p>Printer: Two year (including On-Call Express, U.S. only); optional Extended Warranty Program (U.S. only); see below for more detail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Two (2) Year Factory Warranty • Covers parts and depot repair • First year On-Call-Express (loaner printer) • 2nd year On-Call-Express available for a fee. This must be purchased before the first year On-Call-Express expires. • Extended Warranties available <p>Printhead: Lifetime; unlimited pass with Fargo-certified Cards</p>

Functional Specifications

The Card Printer utilizes two different, yet closely related printing technologies to achieve its remarkable print quality for dye-sublimation and resin thermal transfer. See previous section as needed.

The following describes how each of these technologies works:

Function	Description
Dye-Sublimation	<p>Dye-Sublimation is the print method the Card Printer uses to produce smooth, continuous-tone images that look photographic. (Note: This process uses a dye-based Ribbon roll that is partitioned by a number of consecutive color Panels.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Process colors: The Panels are grouped in a repeating Series of three process colors - yellow, magenta and cyan (YMC), along the entire length of the Print Ribbon. (Note: The Inhibit or I designation under YMCKI indicates the ability to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Users can select these Ribbon types to prevent film from transferring over security features, signature panel or other areas of special interest on the card surface.)• Panels: The Printer always prints the yellow Panel first, followed by the magenta Panel and the cyan Panel.• Printhead: As the Print Ribbon passes beneath the Printhead, hundreds of thermal elements, within the Printhead, heat the dyes on the Ribbon. (Note: When these dyes are heated, they vaporize and diffuse into the surface of the film. A separate pass is made for each of the three color Panels on the Ribbon.)• Color Shades: By combining the colors of each Panel and by varying the heat used to transfer these colors, it is possible to print up to 16.7 million different shades of color. (Note: This blends one color smoothly into the next, producing photo-quality images with absolutely no dot pattern.)• Dye-Diffusion Thermal Transfer: It is the process of heating a dye suspended in a cellulous substrate until the dye can flow, diffusing into the dye receptive surface of the card or InTM. (Note: This produces the image in the surface of the card.)

Printer Components: Resin Thermal Transfer to USB Interface Port

Component	Description
Resin Thermal Transfer	<p>Resin Thermal Transfer is the print method the Printer uses to print sharp black text and crisp bar codes that can be read by both infrared and visible-light bar code scanners.</p> <p>Like dye-sublimation, this process uses the same thermal Printhead to transfer color to a film from a resin-only Print Ribbon or the resin black (K) Panel of a full color Print Ribbon.</p> <p>The difference, however, is that solid dots of resin-based ink are transferred and fused to the surface of the film. (Note: This produces very durable, saturated printing.)</p>
Card Cartridge	Load blank cards into this Cartridge.
Card Output Hopper	Stores 100 cards.
LCD Display	Displays the current status of the Printer.
Printhead	The component of the Printer that actually does the printing. (Note: This component is fragile and must not be bumped or touched with anything other than a cleaning pen.)
Softkey Buttons	Current function is displayed above the button and will change depending upon the Printer's mode of operation.
Card Cleaning Roller	Automatically cleans cards for higher print quality. (Note: Replace this Roller after every 1000+ cards or as needed.)
Power Port	Connect to the (included) power supply.
USB Interface Port	Connect to the Windows PC USB cable, LAN Connector.

Printer Components: LCD and Softkey Control Pad

The Printer provides a two line, thirty-two (32) character LCD Display that can communicate helpful information about the Printer's operation. The bottom line of the LCD Display will always be used to communicate the current function of the Printer's softkey buttons.

This section describes how the LCD Display and Softkey Control Pad work together.

Component	Description
Softkey Buttons	<p>The Printer has two softkey buttons that appear below the LCD Display. Their current function is indicated by the words appearing above them. This function will change according to the Printer's current mode of operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Press the corresponding softkey button under the choice you want to select. If no word appears above a particular button, this indicates it has no function in that particular mode of operation.
LCD Display	<p>The Printer's LCD Display will change according to the Printer's current mode of operation.</p>
Ready / Printer Open Screens	<p>Once the Printer has finished its system check and with the Printer closed, the Printer will display Printer Ready to indicate that the Printer is ready for operation. (Note: The Printer will stay in this mode until it receives a print job or it is turned OFF.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Printer is opened, the Cover is Open screen will appear. Press either the Forward or Back buttons to move the Printer's card path Rollers in the indicated direction. (Note: This is helpful when cleaning the Printer or if clearing jammed media.)

Printer Components: LCD and Softkey Control Pad (continued)

Component	Description
Print Status Screen	<p>During operation, the LCD will indicate the current Print Status by showing you the area of the Printer that is active. It does this by displaying the following messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FEEDING: Indicates that cards are being fed into the Printer. • FLIPPING: Indicates that the card is being transported to the Output Module. • ENCODING: Indicates the encode station is encoding a card (appears only if you are using a Printer with an optional built-in Encoding Module). • PRINTING: Indicates the Printer is printing onto the film. • RECIEIVING DATA: Indicates that the Printer is receiving data from the PC. • TRANSFERRING: Indicates the Printer is transferring an image to a blank card. <p>The Print Status screen always displays Cancel in the lower left and Pause in the lower right.</p>
The Cancel button	<p>Use this button to cancel print jobs and reset the Printer for the next print job. Cancel now has two options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancel single job in memory. • Cancel all jobs in memory. <p>This Cancel All function will cancel all print jobs in the Printer and will completely reset the Printer. In this case, be sure to cancel the print jobs from the PC before pressing YES.</p>
The Pause button	<p>Use this button to pause the Printer at any time during operation. Note the Printer will always finish its current task before pausing.</p> <p>When the Printer is paused, the Pause softkey button will change to Resume.</p> <p>Press Resume to continue Printer operation.</p>

Printer Components: Print Ribbons

The Card Printer utilizes both dye-sublimation and/or resin thermal transfer methods to print images (print to film and transfer film to card).

- Since the dye-sublimation and the resin thermal transfer print methods each provide their own unique benefits, Print Ribbons are available in dye-sublimation-only and combination dye-sublimation/resin versions.
- The Inhibit or **I** designation (under YMCKI indicates the ability to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Users can select these Ribbon types to prevent film from transferring over security features, signature panel or other areas of special interest on the card surface.

To make it easier to remember which Print Ribbons are which, a letter code has been developed to indicate the type of Ribbon panels found on each Ribbon.

This letter code is as follows:



= Dye-Sublimation Yellow panel



= Dye-Sublimation Magenta panel



= Dye-Sublimation Cyan panel



= Resin Black panel



= Heat Seal panel



= Inhibit panel (see note, above)

Printer Components: Blank Cards



Caution: Never run cards with a contaminated, dull or uneven surface through the Printer. Printing onto such cards will ultimately lead to poor print quality. Always store the card stock in its original packaging or in a clean, dust-free container. Do not print onto cards that have been dropped or soiled.

Type	Description
Card Size	These Card Printers accept standard CR80 sized cards (3.375L x 2.125W / 85.6mmL x 54mmW) with a thickness of 30 mil to 50 mil (.030/.762mm).
Card Design	<p>The Printer will print onto any card with a clean, level and polished PVC surface. (Important: Composite PVC is recommended over straight PVC for the best results and for ISO card specification compliance. Single-side straight PVC does not conform to ISO compliance at this time.)</p> <p>The Printer will print onto any card with a clean, level and polished PVC surface.</p>
Card Surface	<p>Suitable cards must have a polished PVC surface free of fingerprints, dust or any other types of embedded contaminants.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• In addition, cards must have a completely smooth, level surface in order for the Printer to achieve consistent color Coverage.• Some types of Proximity cards, for example, have an uneven surface which will inhibit consistent color transfer. <p>Likewise, some smart card chips are raised slightly above the cards surface, which also results in poor color transfer.</p>

Printer Components: Blank Cards (continued)

Type	Description
UltraCard stock	<p>Due to the importance of using high-quality blank cards, a factory-approved card stock called UltraCard™ is available and recommended for best results.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Two types of these cards are available: UltraCard and UltraCard III.• UltraCard stock has a PVC core and offers medium card durability.• Recommended: UltraCard III stock has a 40% polyester core and offers high durability. <p>Both types of UltraCards produce printed images with a glossy, photo-quality finish.</p>

Printer Components: Card Input and Output Hoppers

Type	Description
Card Cartridge	The Card Cartridge will hold a maximum of 100 cards (based on a standard 30 mil card thickness).

Printer Components: Card Output Hopper and Reject Hopper

Type	Description
Card Output Hopper	<p>All standard Card Printers provide a 100 card capacity Card Output Hopper (based on a standard 30 mil card thickness). (Note: This Hopper stores the cards after they are printed.) Shown in the lower left.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Once set in place, the Input Hopper is secured with a latch that is deactivated by a lever located in an area with restricted access.• Reject hopper functionality when connected to the Output Module. The storage is available on the output tray.
Good Card Hopper	<p>The Printer has a 100 card Output Hopper for good cards. The good cards are stacked in a location that is covered during normal operation.</p>
Reject Hopper	<p>The Printer has a 10 to 20 card Output Hopper for reject cards. The reject cards are stacked in a location that is locked during normal operation.</p>
Exception Feed	<p>The Printer has a simple single card exception feed that can be initiated by an external command.</p> <p>Once this command is sent, the Printer waits for the insertion of the exception card into the exception feed slot, located at the top of the Printer.</p> <p>A card (inserted into this card slot prior to this command) may cause the Printer to jam when printing occurs.</p>

Printer Components: Transfer Roller



Danger: The Printer's Transfer Roller can reach temperatures exceeding 350 degree F (175 C). Use extreme caution when operating the Transfer Roller. Never touch the Transfer Roller unless the Printer Power has been turned off for at least 20 to 30 minutes.



Type	Description
Controls	Both the Printer itself and the Printer's software Driver control the built-in Transfer Roller.
Temperature Adjustment	<p>To change the temperature of the Transfer Roller, adjust its temperature through the Image Transfer Tab within the Printer Driver setup window.</p> <p>Once adjusted, the new temperature settings will be sent down with the next print job, along with the rest of the Printer Driver information.</p>
New Temperature Setting	<p>Before printing begins, the Transfer Roller will automatically adjust itself to the new temperature setting. (Note: This new temperature setting will remain programmed within the Printer until it is once again changed within the Printer Driver or until the Printer is turned OFF.)</p> <p>Whenever the Printer is turned OFF, the Transfer Roller will automatically reset itself and return to its default temperature the next time the Printer is turned ON.</p> <p>Disconnect the Printer's power supply. (Technician Note: Cycling the Printer's power supply serves to reset the Transfer Roller to its default temperature. The temperature setting within the Printer Driver, however, will stay the same until it is changed.)</p>

Printer Components: Flipper Table

Type	Description
Exception Feed	<p>The printer has a simple single card exception feed that can be initiated by an external command.</p> <p>Cards (fed from the exception feed slot) feed from a +90° inclination of the Flipper Table.</p> <p>In the Kiosk mode, cards can move from the exception feed slot to different positions for printing, magnetic encoding, and e-card encoding, using the OMNIKEY modules.</p>
Kiosk Mode	<p>The Kiosk mode is used to manually feed card stock into the printer, using the module top slot.</p> <p>Kiosk mode enabled: When a print job is sent to the printer, it will rotate the Flipper Table to a vertical orientation and wait for a card to be inserted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If a card is already present in the slot, a card jam error will result.• A card can only be inserted into the slot after the Output is ready to accept it.

Section 3: Installation Procedures

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Procedures for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Introduction

The following guide will walk you through the installation of the Fargo Driver.

Time Requirement

This software installation process will require approximately 2 to 6 minutes (depending on the speed of your PC).

System Requirements

The System Requirements are as follows:

- IBM-PC or compatible, Windows® 32 bit 2K/XP, Pentium® class 500 MHz computer with 256MB of RAM or higher, 500MB free hard disk space or higher, USB 2.0

Inspecting the Printer

While unpacking your Printer, inspect the carton to ensure that no damage has occurred during shipping. Make sure that all supplied accessories are included with your unit.

Unpacking the Printer

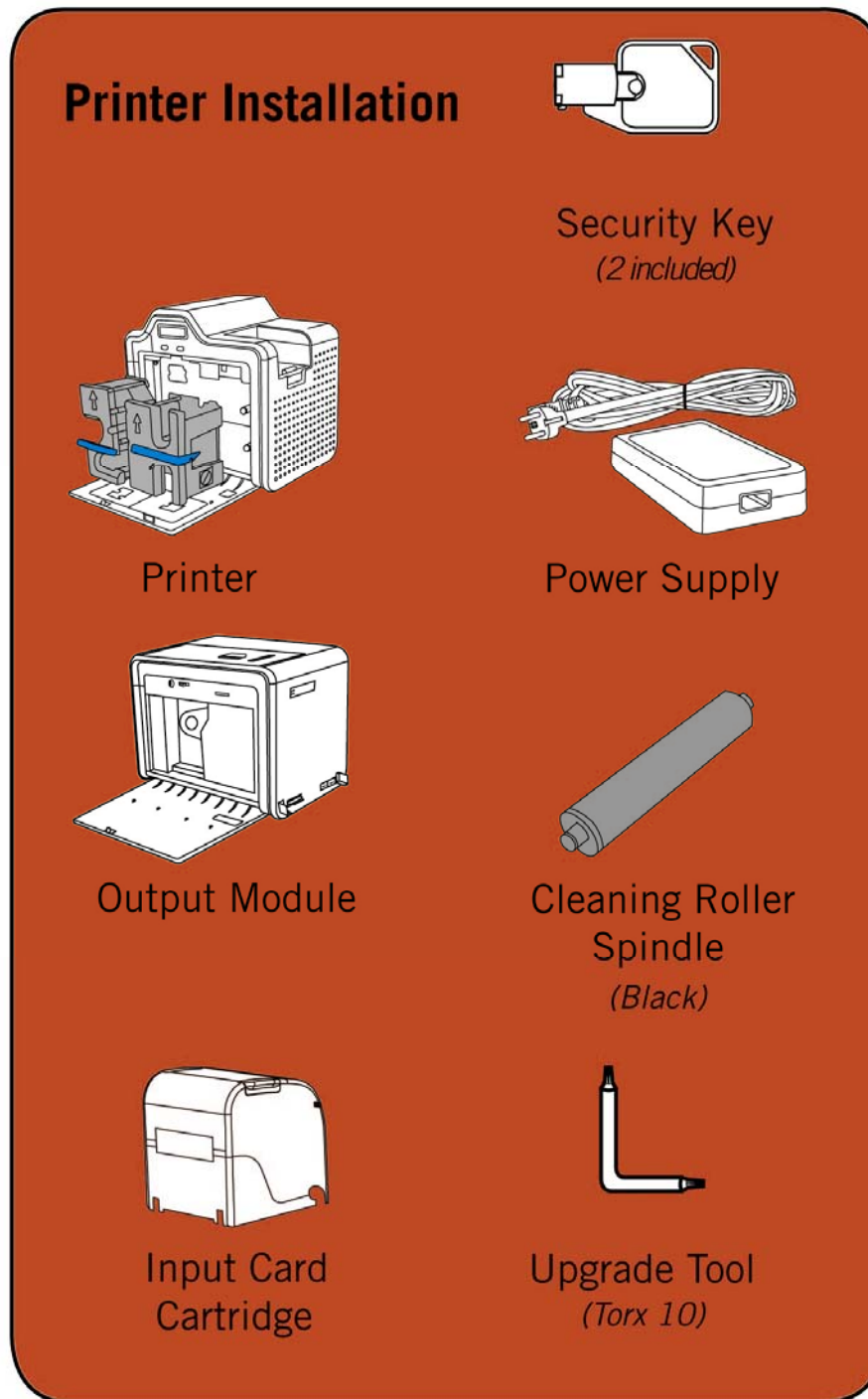
The following items are included with your Printer:

- Software Installation CD (includes Printer Driver, Online User's Guide and Printer Diagnostic Tool)
- Power Supply with Power Cord (**Note:** This product is intended to be supplied by a Listed Power Unit marked "Class 2" and rated for 24 V dc, 3.75 to 5 A.)
- Card Cleaning Roller
- Card Cartridge
- Warranty Card
- Registration Card

(Important: Please use the original packaging when shipping the Printer/Output.)

Unpacking the Printer (continued)

Display A – Included with your Printer



Choosing a Good Location

Follow these guidelines:

- Place the unit in a location with adequate air circulation to prevent internal heat build-up.
- Use the Printer's dimensions as a guideline for the minimum clearances to the unit.
(**Note:** Allow for adequate clearance above the unit to accommodate the height of the unit with its Covers open.)
- Do not install unit near heat sources such as radiators or air ducts or in a place subject to direct sunlight, excessive dust, mechanical vibration or shock.

About Moisture Condensation

If the unit is brought directly from a cold to a warm location or is placed in a very damp room, moisture may condense inside the unit. Should this occur, print quality may not be optimum.

Leave the unit turned OFF in a warm, dry room for several hours before using. This will allow the moisture to evaporate.



Caution: For safety purposes, Ethernet is not intended for a direct connection outside of the building.


Module Installation Procedures

Installing the Output Module Accessory

Parts included: Output Module Accessory Kit, Torx tool and screws

Tools needed: Torx Tool (included in kit)

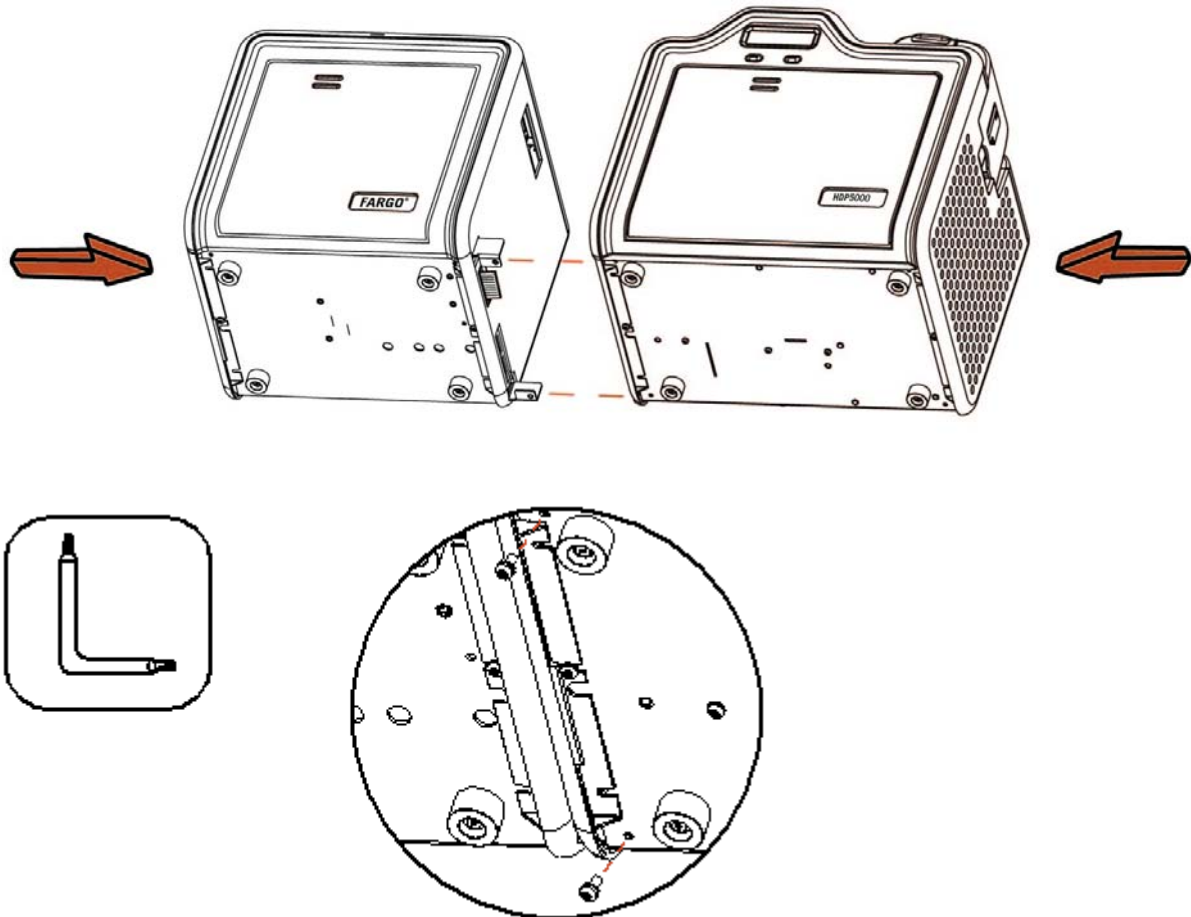
Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove all USB, Serial, and Ethernet communication connections. Remove the Card Output Hopper. Important: Do not remove the Covers for this procedure.
3	The Output Module is installed at the output side of the Printer.
4	a. Turn the Printer and the Output Module on their back. b. Use the Torx tool provided to remove the two (2) screws from the bottom of the Output Module. Save the screws for later for reattachment.
5	If the Printer Module has the Output Side Upgrade Cover installed, then follow the Removing the Output Side Upgrade Cover (if applicable) procedure (provided below these instructions).
6	Position the Output Module attachment tabs into the appropriate slots at the base of Printer. See Display A (below).
7	Use the two (2) screws to attach the Output Module to the Printer. Please refer to the pictures below.

Continued on the next page

Output Module Accessory (continued)

Display A - Slide the Output Module attachment tabs into the appropriate slots at the base of Printer Module. This picture shows the Printer and the Output Module.




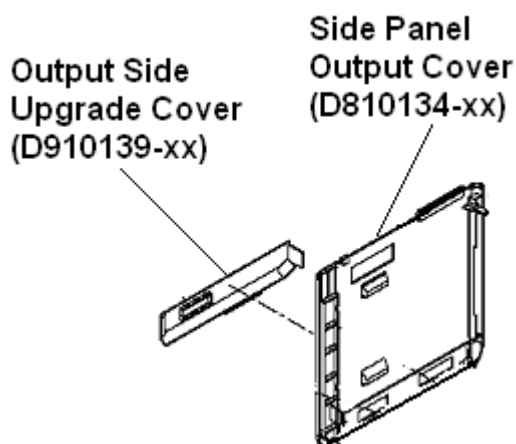
Removing the Output Side Upgrade Cover (if applicable)

Tools needed: Press the Release tab with a flat blade. Use the Snap and Clip process.

Estimated Repair Time: 1 minute

Important: This procedure only applies if the Printer comes equipped with the Output Side Upgrade Cover (D910139-XX).

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.
2	Press the release tab in back while simultaneously pulling at the center of the bottom edge.
3	Reverse instructions to re-assemble. Leave it off if your Printer is upgraded for the Output.



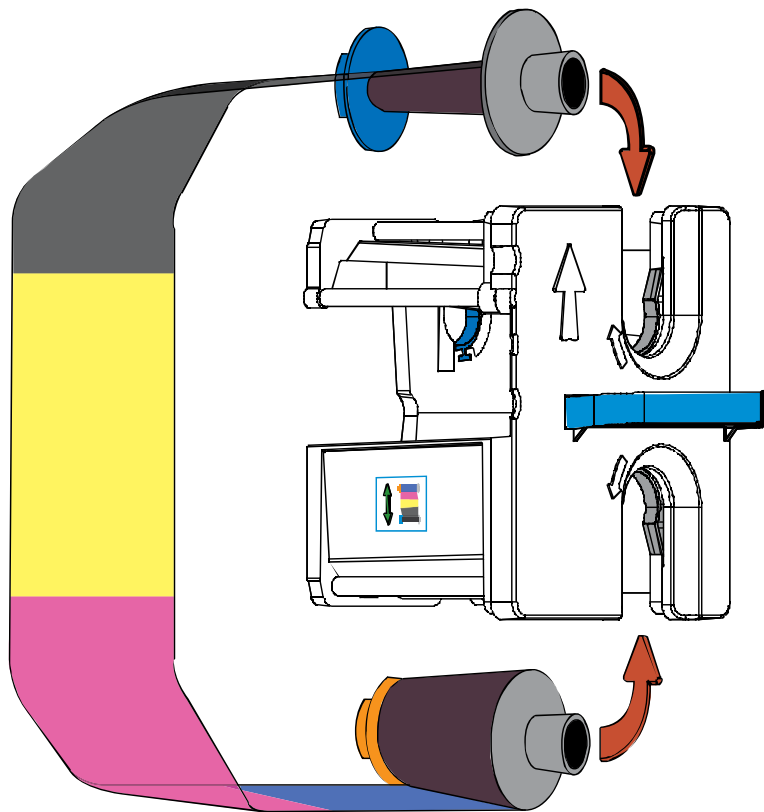
Printer Loading Procedures

Loading the Print Ribbon

Note: Card Printers require highly specialized supplies to function properly.

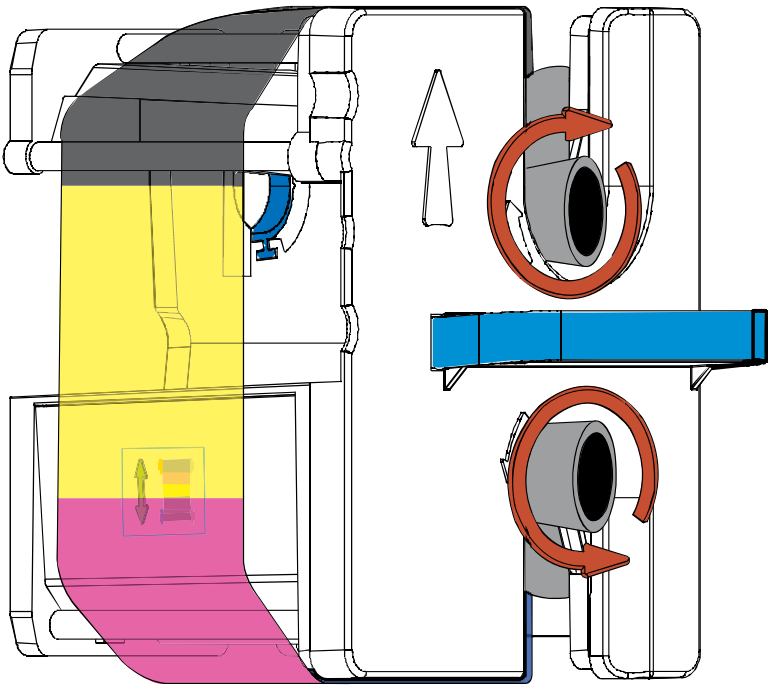
- To maximize Printer life, reliability, printed card quality and durability, you must use only Certified Supplies.
- For this reason, your Fargo warranty is void, where not prohibited by law, if you use non-Certified Supplies.

Step	Procedure
1	Load the Print Ribbon into the Print Ribbon Cartridge until the Rolls click.



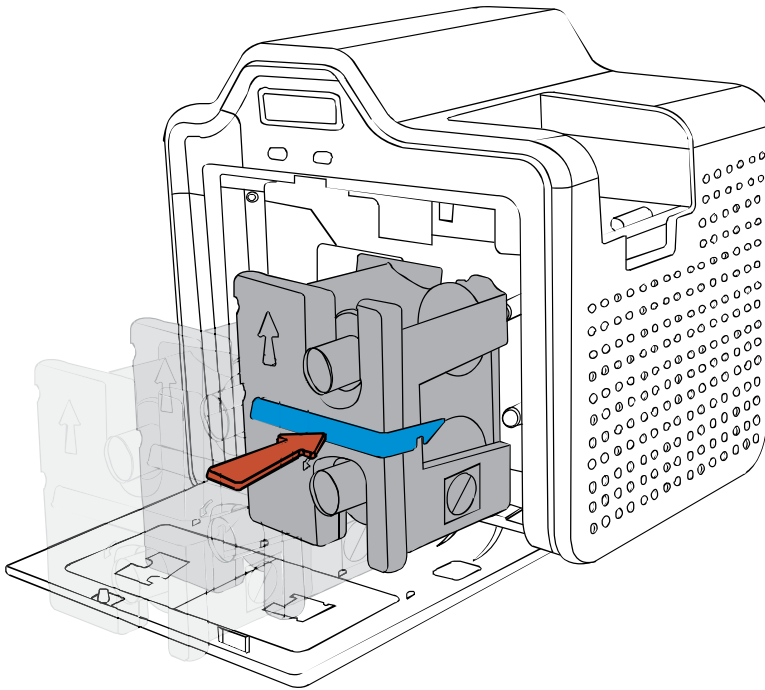
Loading the Print Ribbon (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Tighten the Print Ribbon.



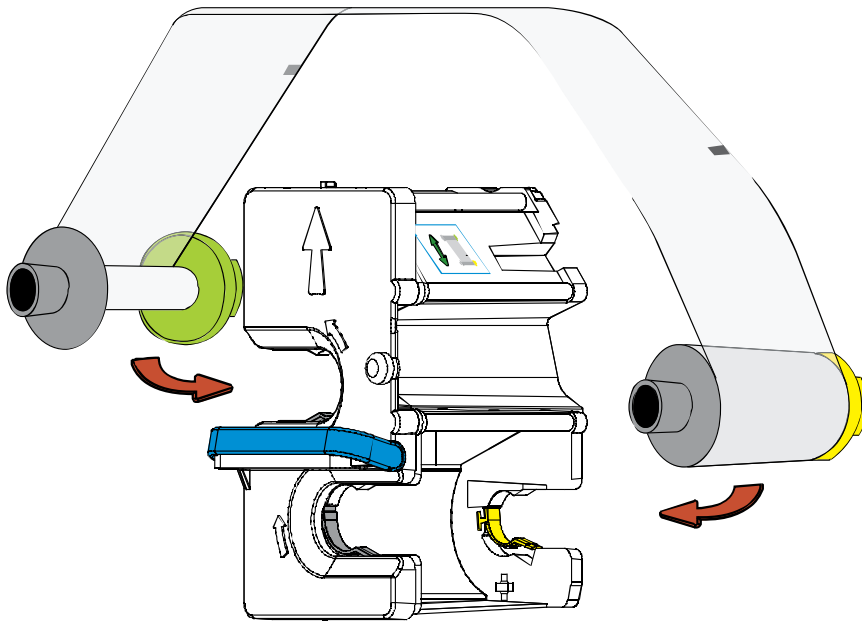
Loading the Print Ribbon (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Insert the Print Ribbon Cartridge into the Printer until it clicks.



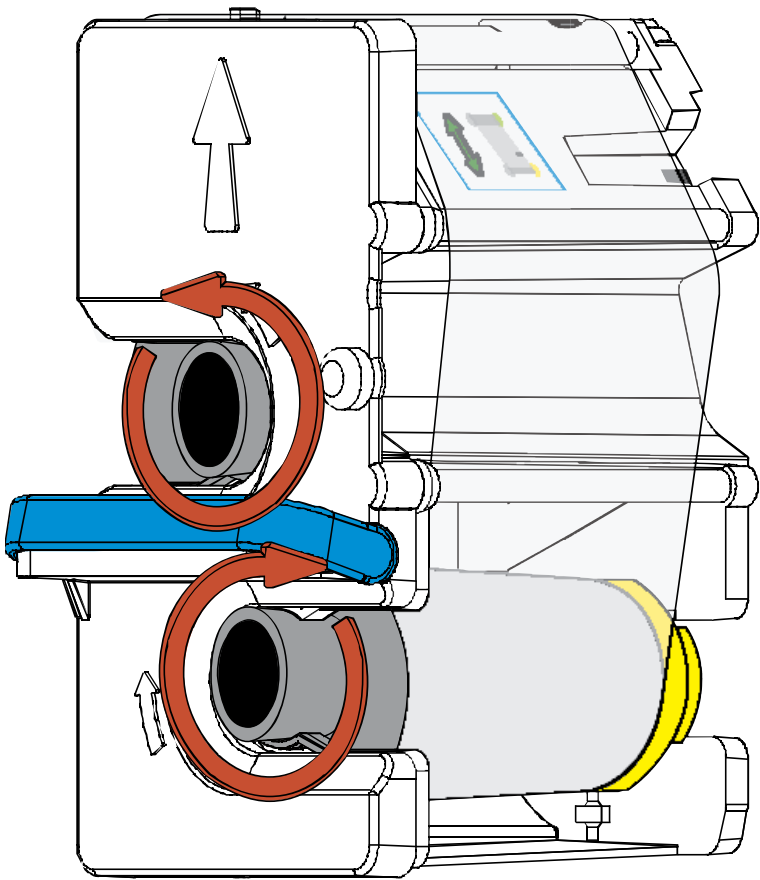
Loading the Clear Transfer Film

Step	Procedure
1	Load the Film into the Film Cartridge until the rolls click.



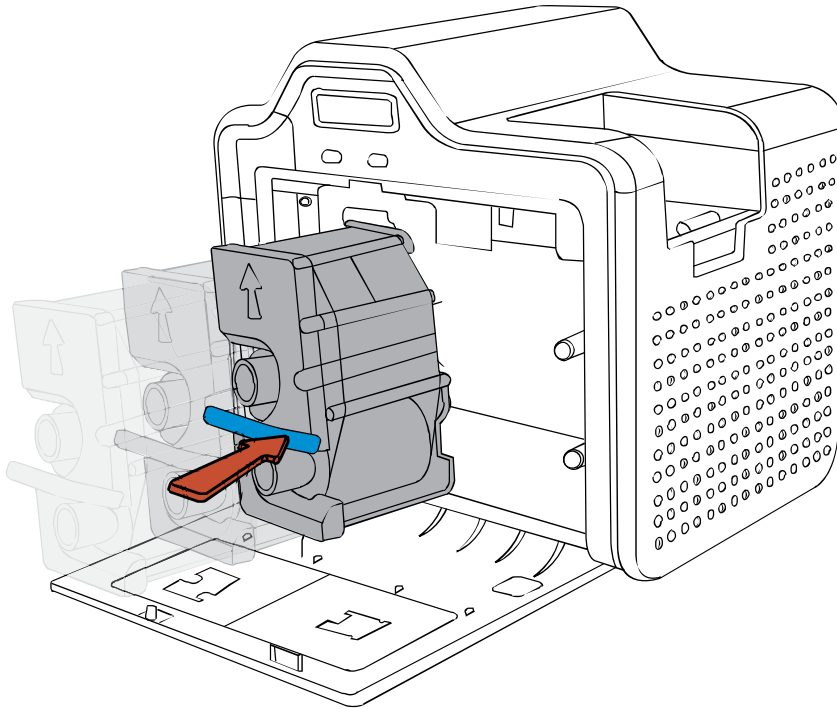
Loading the Clear Transfer Film (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Tighten the Film.



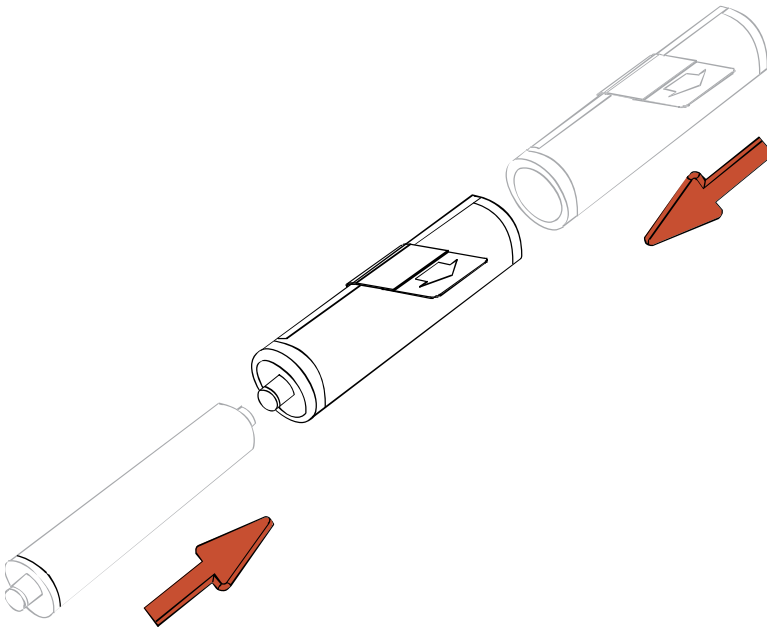
Loading the Clear Transfer Film (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Insert the Film Cartridge into the Printer until it clicks.



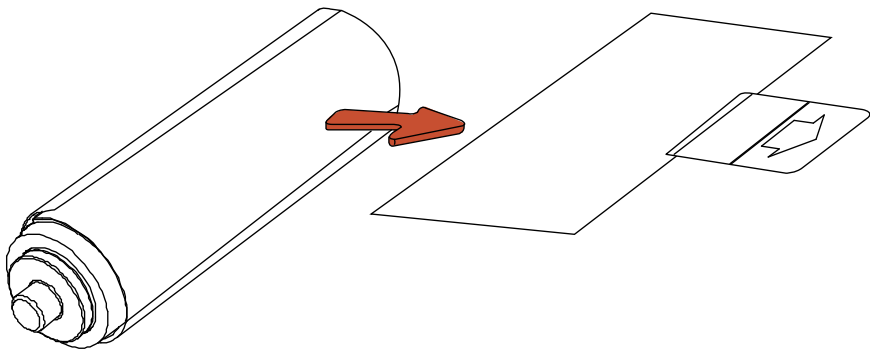
Inserting the Card Cleaning Roller

Step	Procedure
1	Remove the Card Cleaning Roller from the Print Ribbon packaging and insert the Cleaning Roller onto the black spindle from the supply pack.



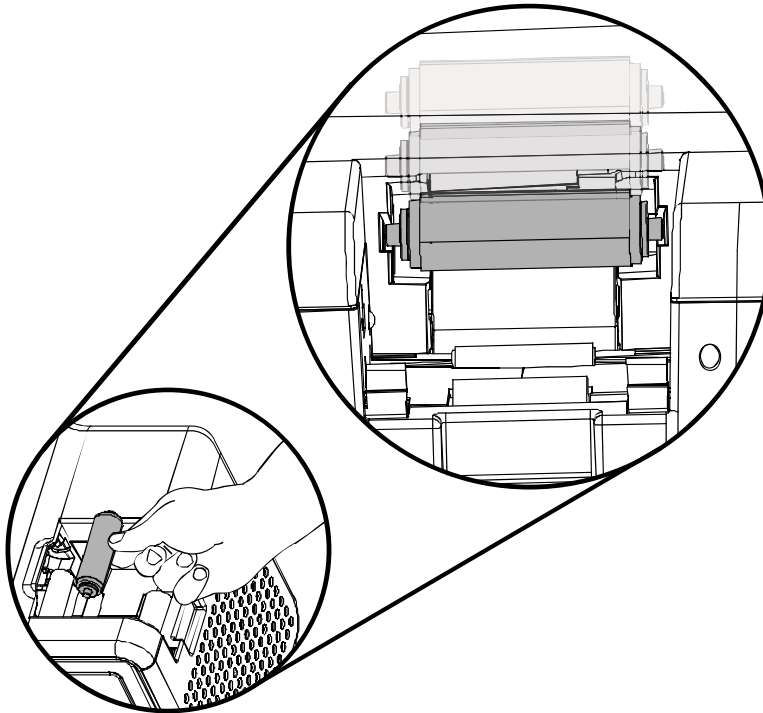
Inserting the Card Cleaning Roller (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Remove the protective sleeve from the Card Cleaning Roller.



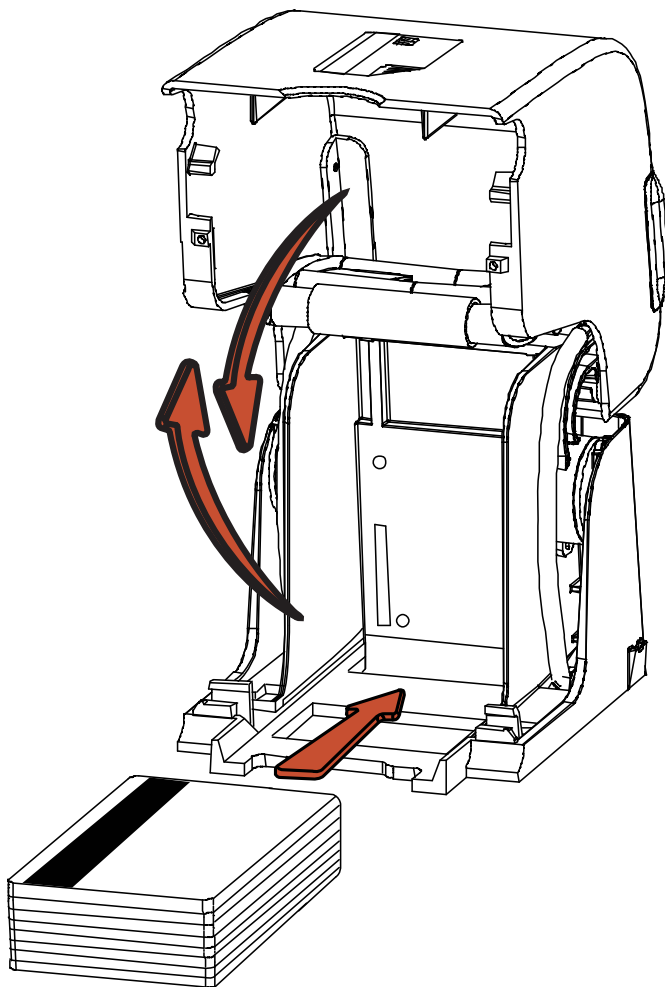
Inserting the Card Cleaning Roller (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Insert the Card Cleaning Roller into the card input area.



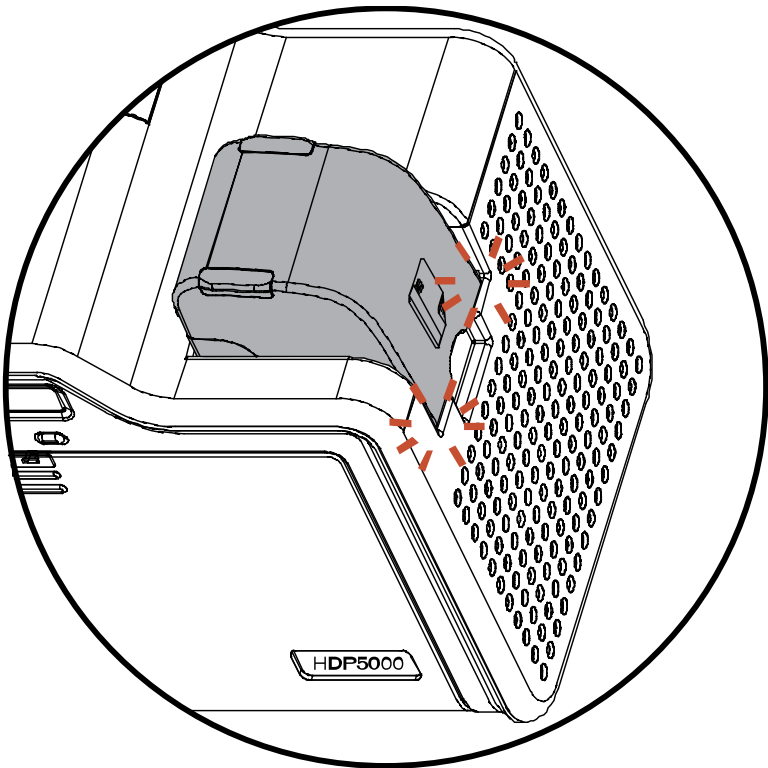
Loading the Blank Cards

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Load the blank cards into the Card Cartridge, as shown below.</p> <p>Important: The front of the card must face DOWN. The back of the card or the magnetic stripe on the card must face UP. The Smart Chip is loaded on the bottom.</p>



Loading the Blank Cards (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Place the Card Input Cartridge onto the Printer until it clicks.



Connecting Power to Printer



Caution: Do not remove the red Warning sticker across the USB connection. Do not plug in the USB cable until prompted to do so during the installation of the Printer Driver. See the [Installing the Printer Driver on Windows XP and Windows 2000](#) procedure.

Step	Procedure
1	The Printer connections are shown in the Displays A to D
2	Use the same procedure for both the Printer.

Display A - Connecting the AC power cable to the power supply.

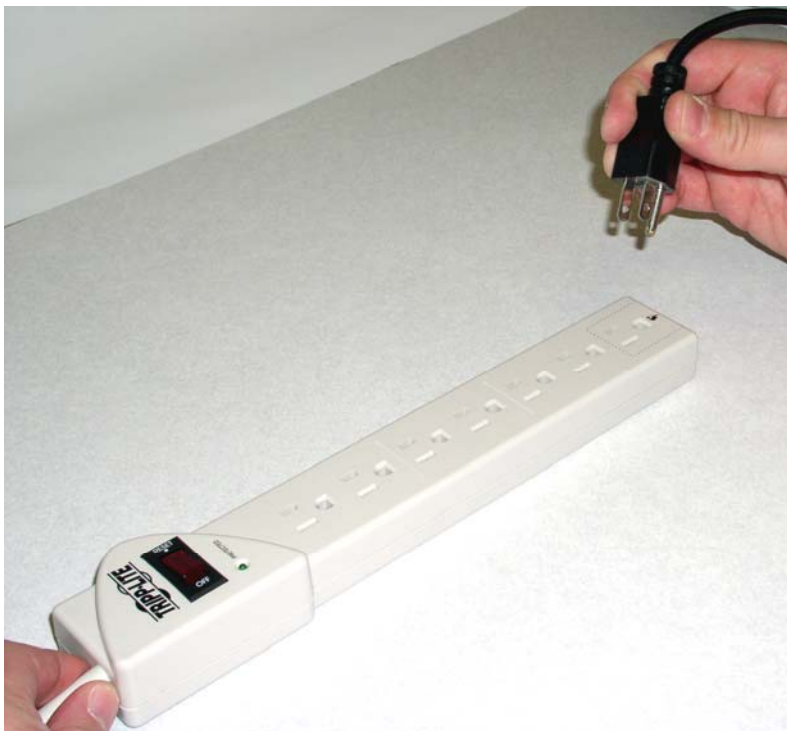


Connecting Power to Printer (continued)

Display B - Connecting the other end of the AC power cable to a Surge Protector. See both notes below.

Note No. 1: Instead of connecting the AC power cable directly into an AC outlet, it is recommended that a Surge Protector be used to protect against power surges.

Note No. 2: Some buildings have surge protection built into the electrical outlets. Please consult your building supervisor regarding this feature.



Connecting Power to Printer (continued)

Display C - Connecting the plug from the power supply to the Printer, as shown below.



Printer Driver Installation Procedures

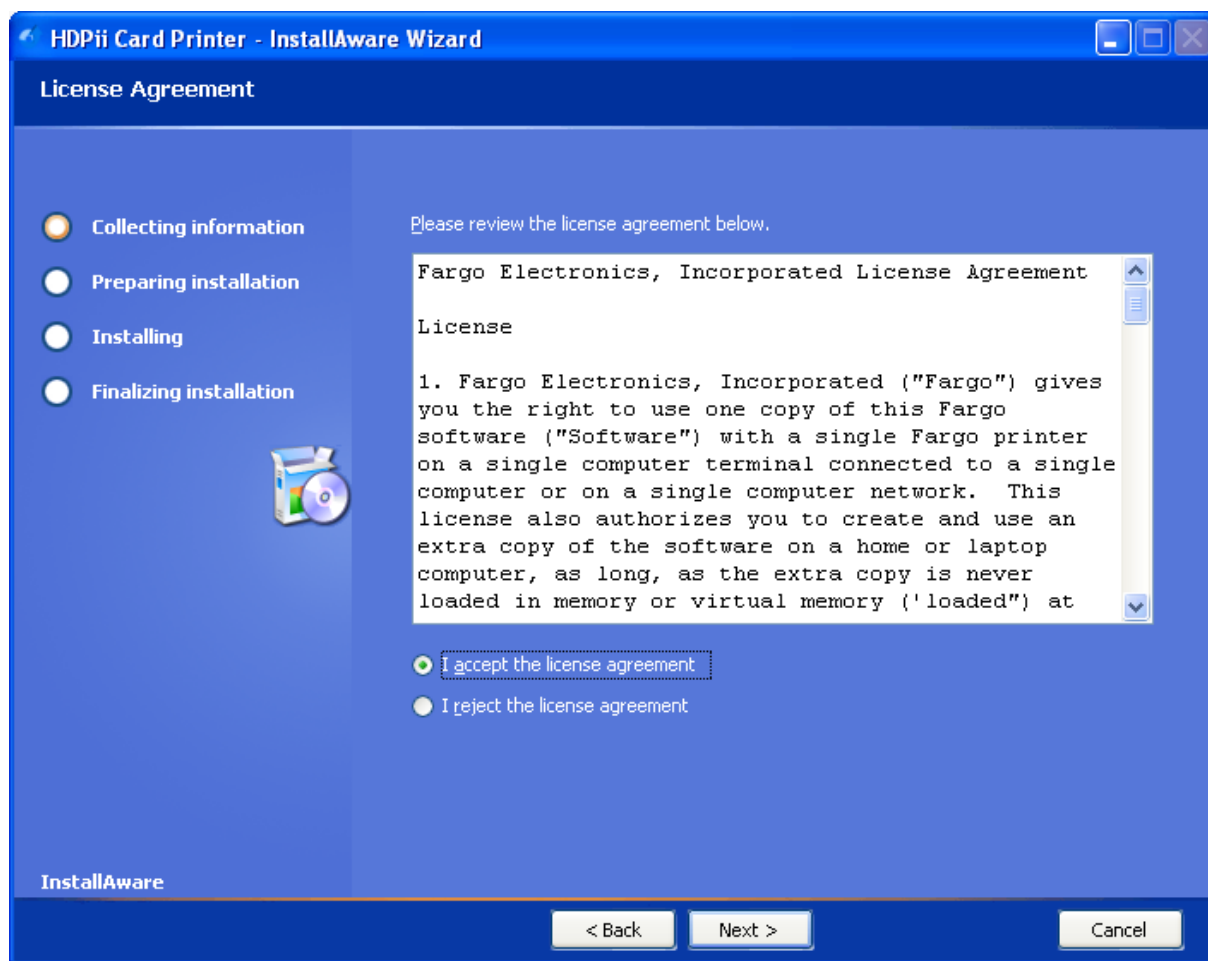
Installation Procedures

Installing the Printer Driver

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Close down all programs and insert the Software Installation CD into your computer's CD drive. After a few seconds, the CD's installer program will automatically open.</p> <p>Follow the CD's on-screen Procedures to complete installation.</p> <p>(Note: If the CD does not automatically open, use "My Computer" or "Windows Explorer" to view the contents of the CD. Then, double-click on the Setup.exe file listed on the CD.)</p> <p>See the next page.</p>

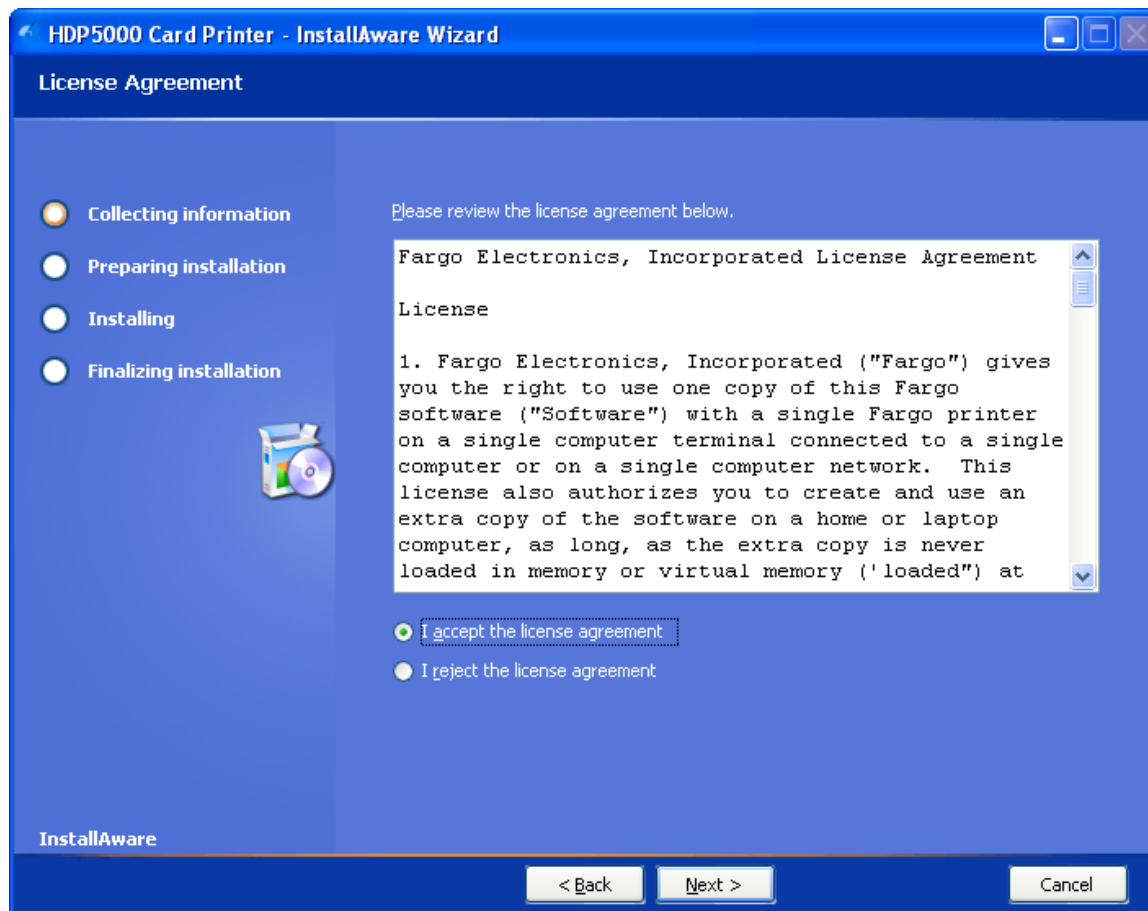
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Click on the Next button to continue with the installation.



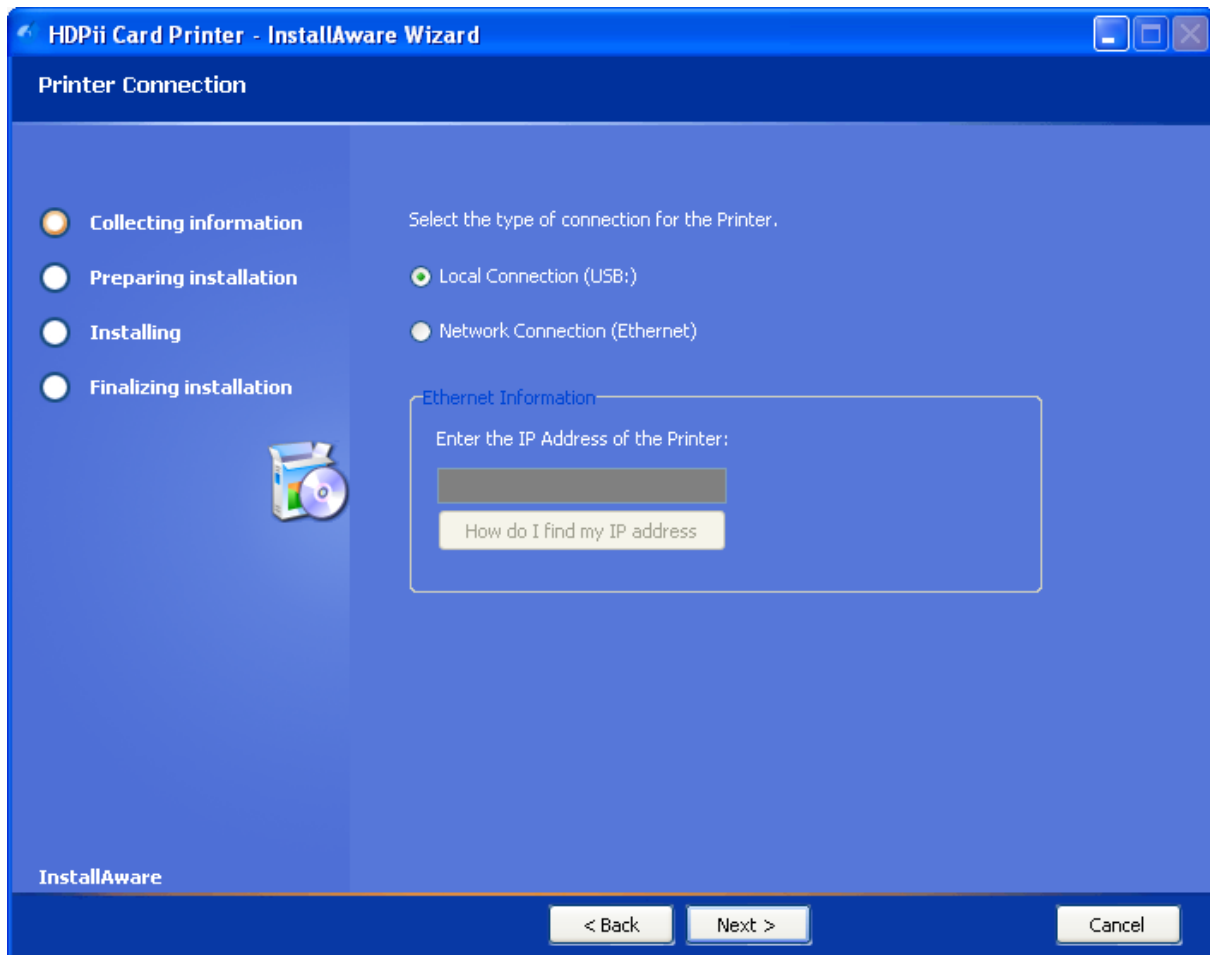
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	<ol style="list-style-type: none">Read the License Agreement. Select the I accept the terms of the license agreement option.Click on the Next button to continue with the installation.



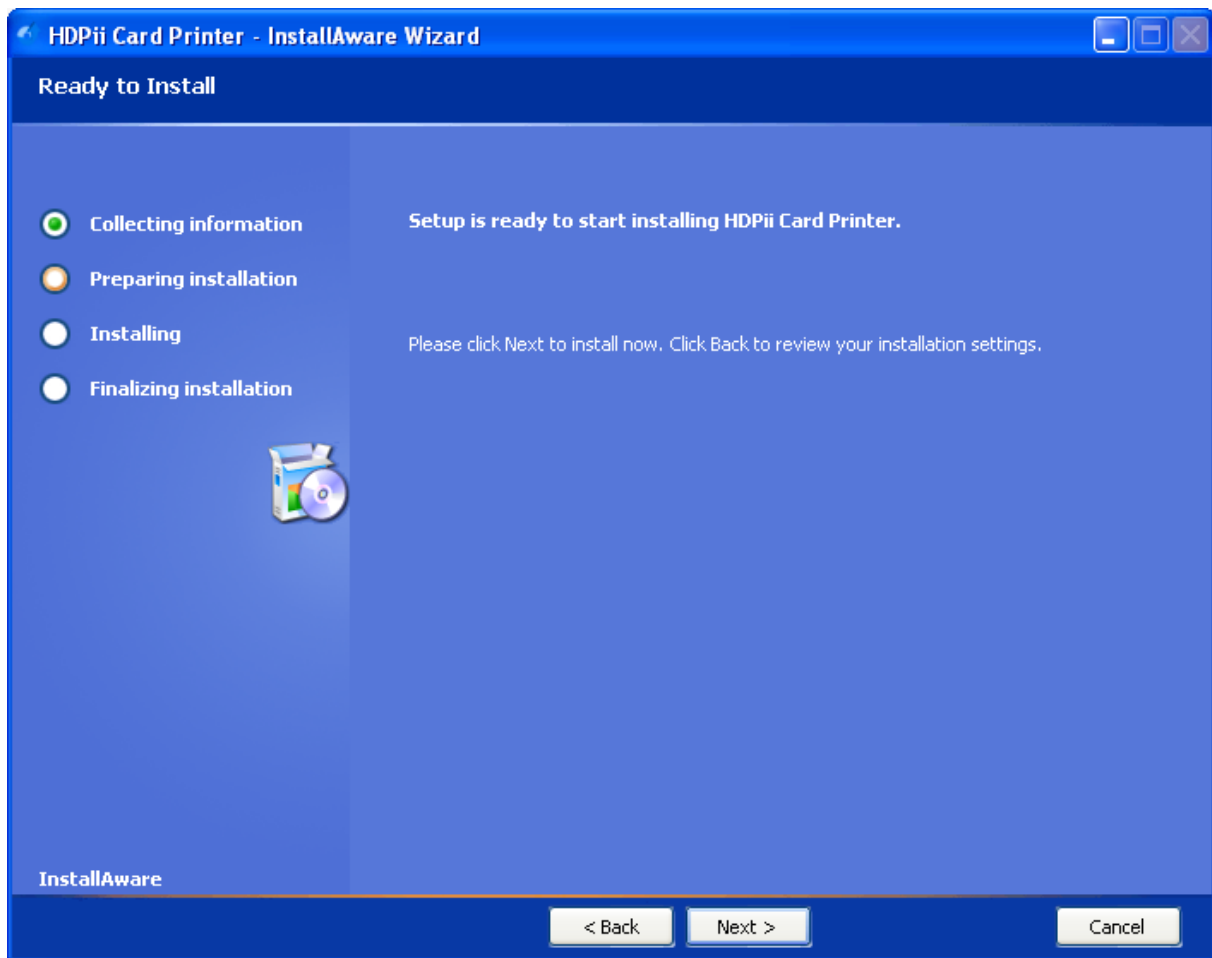
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	a. Select Local to install a USB Printer. OR b. Select Network and enter an IP Address for the Printer.



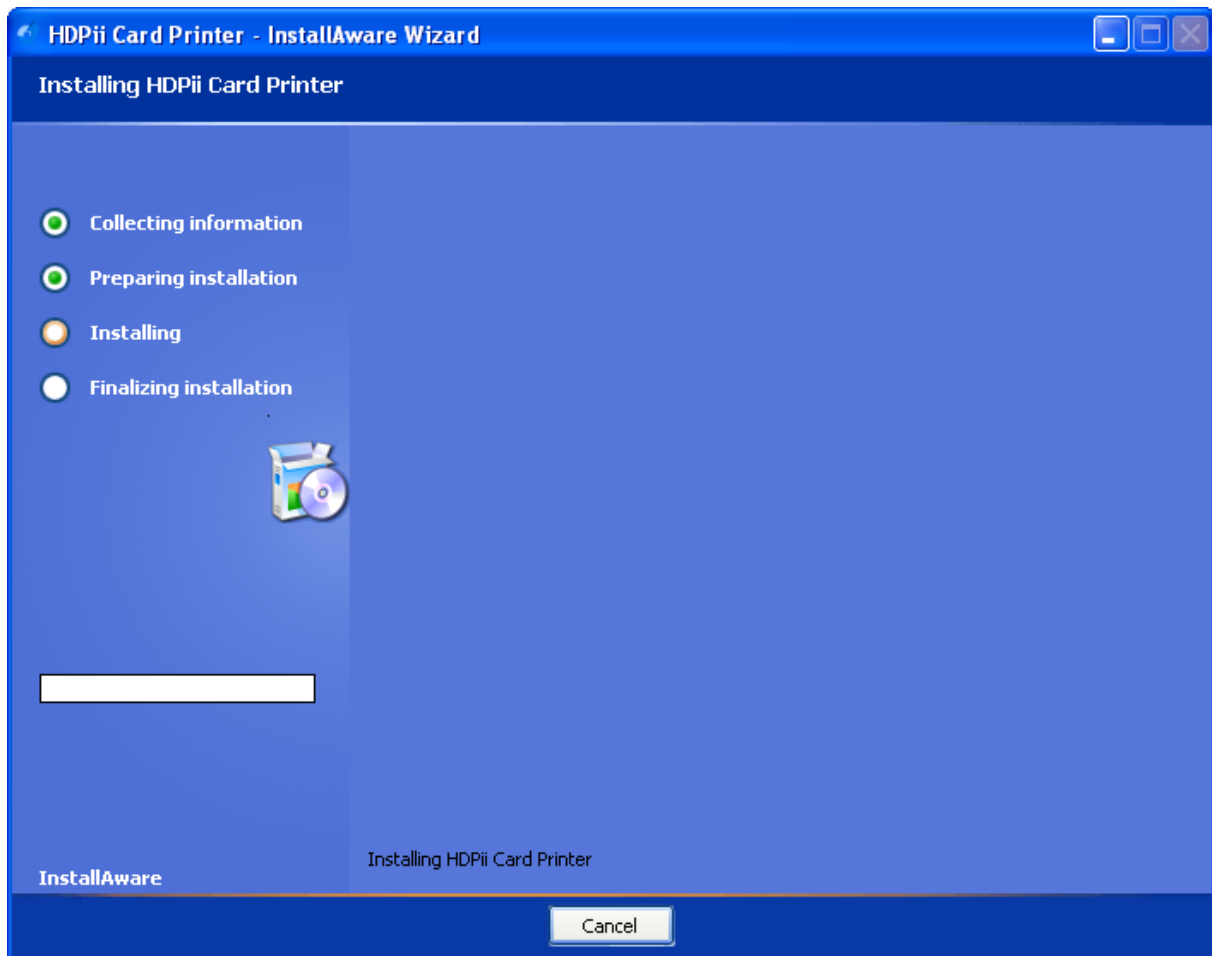
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
5	Click on the Next button to begin the installation.



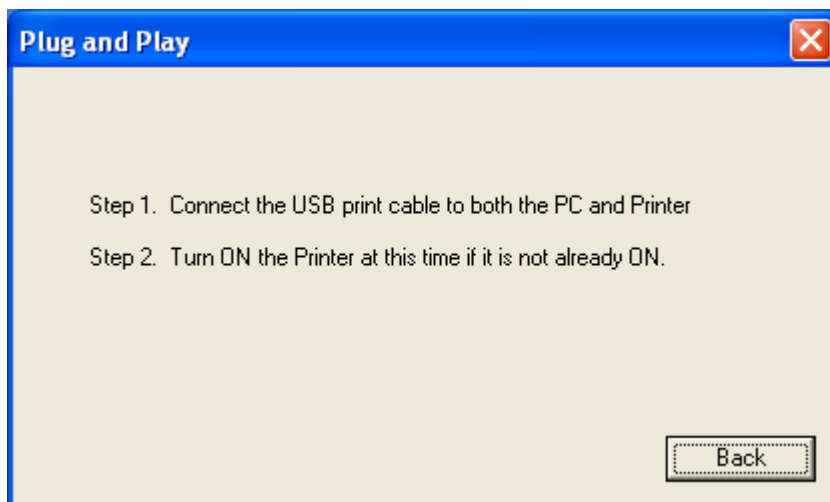
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
6	Wait during the installation.



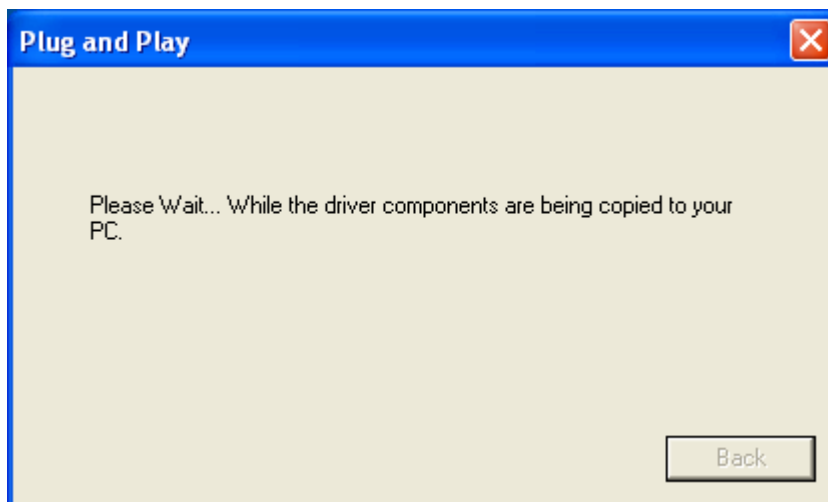
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
7	Applies to USB Printer installation: Connect the USB cable to both the PC and the Printer.



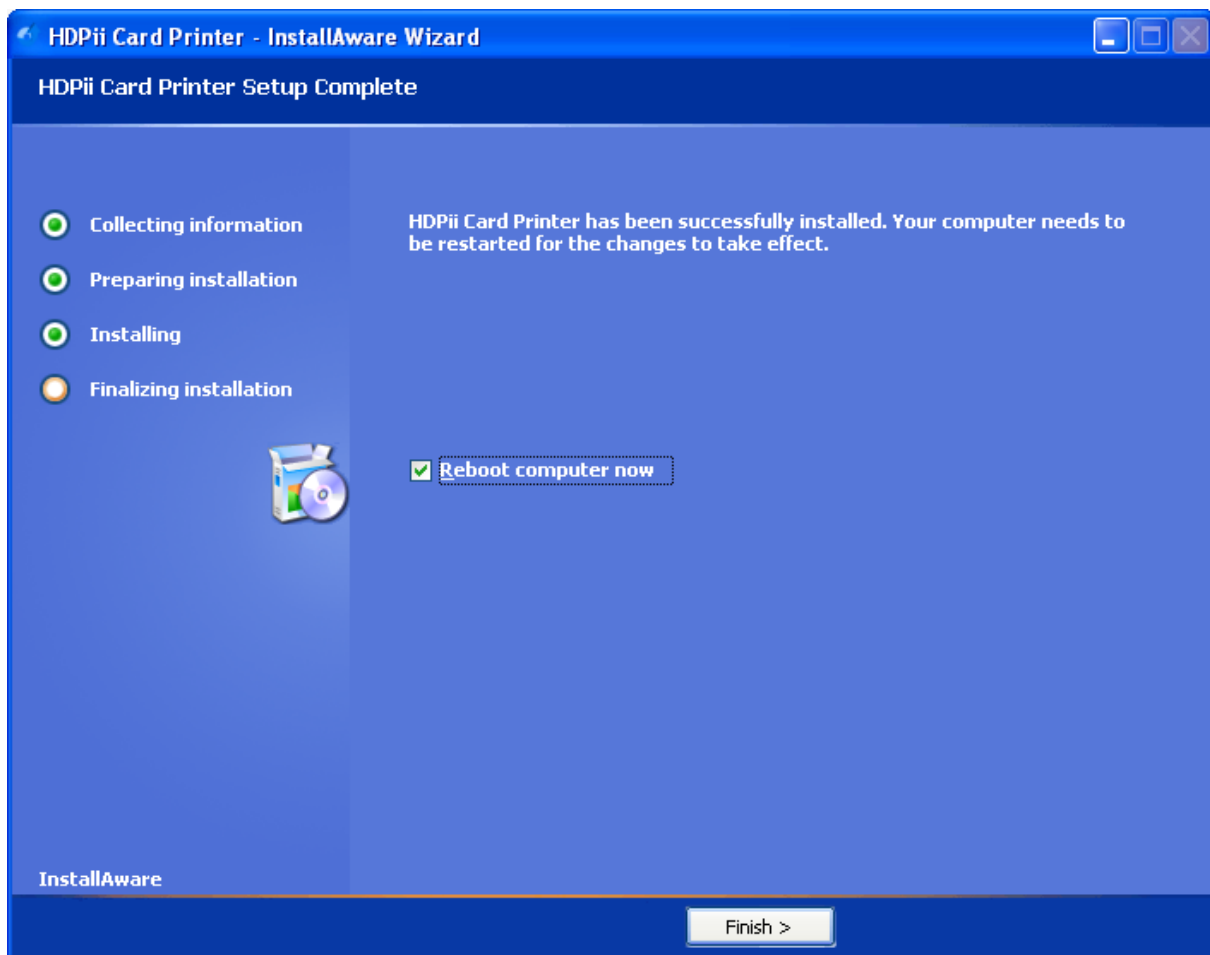
Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
8	<p>Applies to USB Printer installation:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Select the Printer Port. (Note: You have the option of selecting the port only IF you click the BACK button from the previous screen shot; otherwise, this is automatic.)Wait while the Driver components are being copied to your PC.



Installing the Printer Driver (continued)

Step	Procedure
9	Click the Finish button.
10	Reboot your computer.
11	You have completed this procedure.

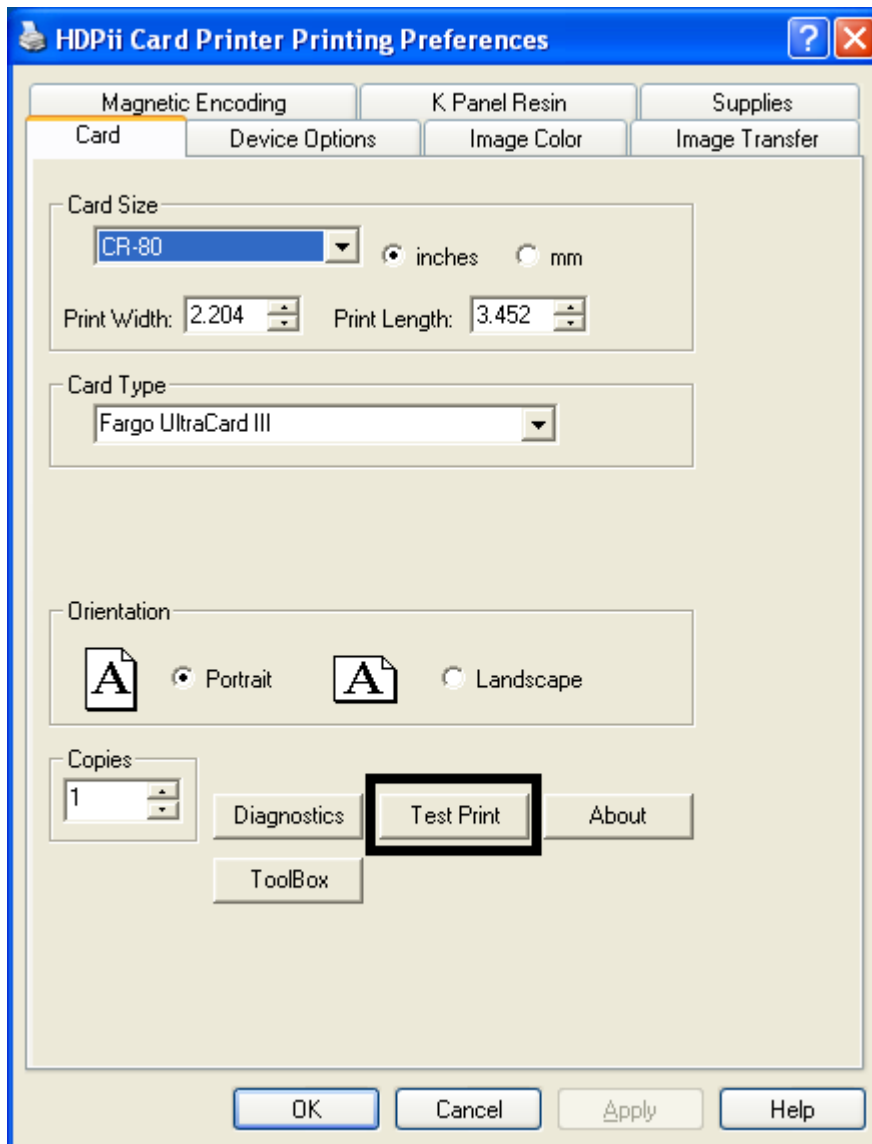


Printing a Test Print Image

Step	Procedure
1	Install a YMCK, YMCKI or YMCKK Ribbon in the Printer for the Test Print.
2	<p>Open the Driver settings.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">From your computer's startup menu, select Settings > Printers and Faxes (Windows XP) or > Printers (Windows 2000).Double click on the Card Printer under the Printer's window.Select Printing Preferences under the Printer drop-down menu. (Note: This will bring up the Printing Preferences window.)
3	<ol style="list-style-type: none">Select the Card tab, and then click on the Test Print button, as shown in Display A on the next page.When the Test Print button is selected, an image is copied to the Printer.



Printing a Test Print Image (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	This completes the High Definition Card Printer/Encoder Installation Guide.



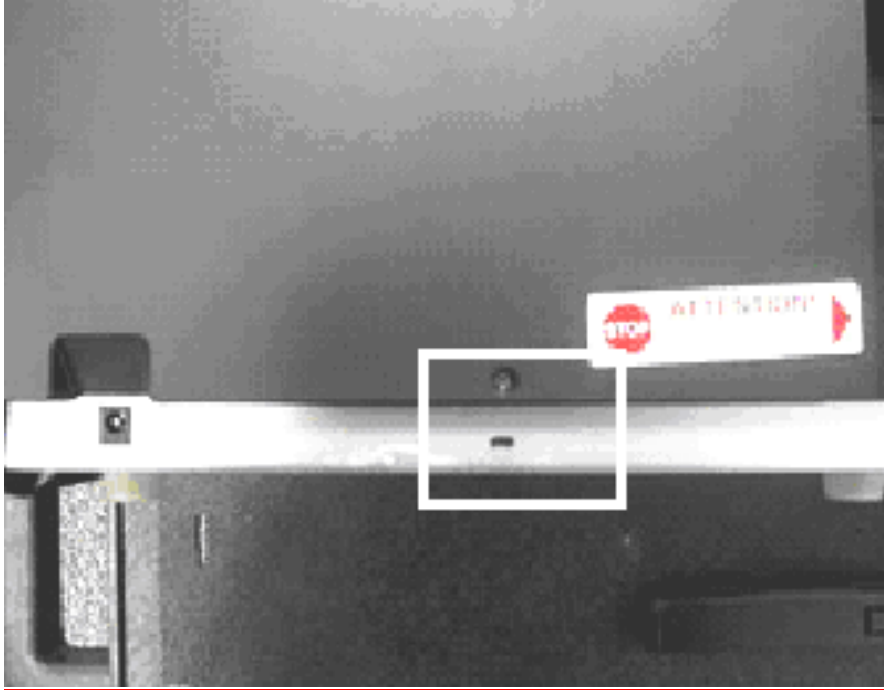
Section 4: Accessory Procedures

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Using the Security Lock Slot

Important: Compatible locks are not sold by Fargo Electronics; however, they are readily available from computer stores.



Using the Security Lock Slot on the (continued)

The Printer has a Security Lock Slot located in the back lip of the metal chassis to accommodate a standard laptop security lock.

- To prevent unauthorized removal of the Printer, attach an industry standard security cable to an immovable object and then lock the cable to the Security Lock Slot. (**Note:** Fargo does not sell any type of locking device, but provides this feature for your added security.)
- The lock slot has a plastic covering that needs to be penetrated by the lock. (**Note:** Simply push the lock end into the slot with adequate force to break the protective film.)

Follow the locking procedure recommended by the lock vendor.



Section 5: General Troubleshooting



The purpose of this section is to provide the User with specific procedures relating to the LCD Messages, Communication Errors, Card Feeding Errors, Encoding Errors, Printing Process Errors, Transfer Process Errors and Diagnosing the Image Problems for the Printer.

Important! Card Printers require highly specialized print Ribbons to function properly. To maximize Printer life, reliability, printed card quality and durability, you must use only Certified Supplies. For this reason, your Fargo warranty is void, where not prohibited by law, if you use non-Certified Supplies. To order additional materials, please contact your authorized reseller.

LCD Messages

The LCD display shows the current status of the Printer. Refer to the cause and solution tables in this section for all possible LCD messages. (**Note:** These tables display the LCD messages in alphabetical order. If the LCD message is communicating an error or requires an action, these tables will also offer a solution to what should be done.)

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Troubleshooting - LCD and Printer Error Message Tables

This section provides two troubleshooting tables for the LCD error messages and the Printer error messages. Each table uses a 3-column presentation to present a specific LCD or Printer error message, its cause and its solution.

- This allows the troubleshooter to identify the error and its cause, and then perform the procedure (provided in the solution column).
- This standard mode of identifying the problem and its solution should provide an efficient method of troubleshooting this printer.
- If you encounter problems beyond the capabilities of these two error message tables, you should contact www.fargosupport.com

How to use the LCD Error Message Table (example provided)

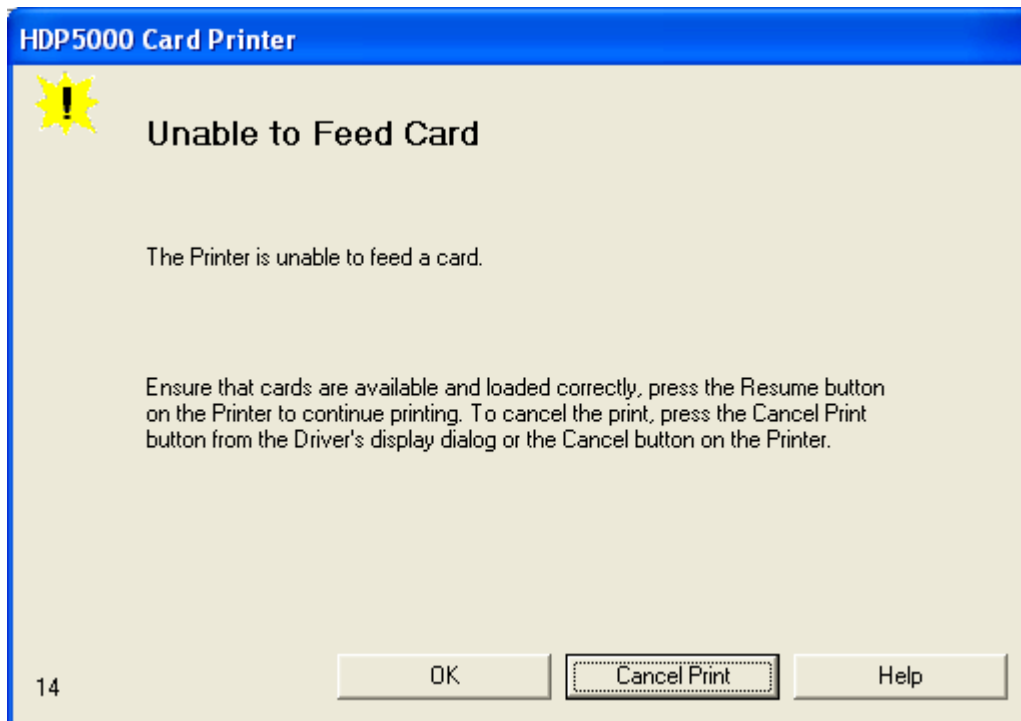
The PC Error Message in Column 1 (LCD Error Message) provides the Lower Left Corner Number. This number identifies the PC Error Message screenshot with its respective LCD Error Message.

- Note the correlation between Column 1 (below) and the PC Error Message window (below).
- This allows you to correlate the LCD Error Message with the PC Error Message (identifying number), then troubleshoot your Printer as needed.

Display – Single Example from the LCD Error Message Table

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unable to Feed Card (PC Error Message Nos. <u>14</u> and 81) Matches with the screenshot below.	The Printer is unable to feed a card from the Card Cartridge.	Verify there are cards in the cartridge. Verify cards are not stuck together or jammed, and they are the correct thickness.

Display – Unable to Feed Card (screenshot; Lower Left Corner Number, 14)



Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Calibrate Failed (PC Error Message No. 155 and 170)	Film or Ribbon calibration has failed.	Verify the film is installed correctly and there is not a Ribbon installed. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Calibrate Film (PC Error Message No. 159)	Film Sensors need to be calibrated.	Select Cancel and then perform the Film calibration procedure.
Calibrate Ribbon (PC Error Message Nos. 128 and 170)	The print Ribbon Sensor is out of calibration.	Select Cancel and then perform the Ribbon calibration procedure.
Card Feed Stop (PC Error Message No. 137)	The Front Cover was opened. This caused the card transfer to stop OR the pause button was selected.	Press Resume or Cancel .
Card Jam (PC Error Message Nos. 82, 112, and 200)	A card is jammed in the Print Station or card flipping area of the Printer.	Clear the jam.
Card Jam: Prox (PC Error Message No. 86)	A card is jammed in the PROX card encoding area of the Printer.	Clear the jam.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Card Jam: Smart (PC Error Message No. 85)	A card is jammed in the smart card encoding area of the Printer.	Clear the jam.
Card Jam: Trans (PC Error Message No. 83)	Card became jammed in the Printer during transfer.	Clear the jam.
Card Not Found (PC Error Message No. 69)	Card cannot be found in the Printer.	Verify card not jammed in Printer and select Cancel .
Check Film (PC Error Message No. 244)	The film is not able to move correctly. Check for jams/breaks.	Check for obstruction. If the problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Clean Printer (PC Error Message No. 71)	For best Printer performance, replace the Cleaning Roller Tape and clean the Printer's Feed Rollers and Printhead at this time.	See <u>Cleaning the Printer</u> .

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Cover is Open (PC Error Message No. 46)	The Cover was left open.	Ensure that the Cover is properly closed.
E-Card Encoder Startup Error (PC Error Message No. 141)	A problem was detected during Printer start-up.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
E-Card Startup Error (PC Error Message No. 141)	A problem was detected during Printer start-up.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
EEPROM Corrupt (PC Error Message Nos. 38, 39, 40, and 144)	EEPROM restored with factory default values.	If changes were made, then go into the setting values and reset these numbers.
Ejecting Card (PC Error Message No. 72)	The card has been ejected already.	Click OK to clear the message. The user might want to know that a card has been sent to the reject bin, or out of the printer, and is either incomplete or poses a security risk if not disposed of properly.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Empty Reject Bin (PC Error Message No. 265)	The reject bin is full.	Remove the large number of rejected cards from the reject bin. Click OK to clear the notification message. (Note: In some cases, rejected cards are incomplete or pose a security risk, and should be disposed of properly.)
Failed To Initialize (PC Error Message No. 141)	A problem was detected during Printer start-up.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Film Align Error (PC Error Message Nos. 26 and 176)	The film is not able to move correctly. Check for jams/breaks.	Check for obstruction. If the problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Film Break/Jam (PC Error Message No. 158)	The film is not able to move correctly. Check for jams/breaks.	Check for obstruction. If the problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Film Low (PC Error Message No. 156)	The film will soon run out.	If printing a large number of cards, replace the Film now or monitor the Printer until the Film is gone and install a new Film.
Film Out (PC Error Message Nos. 156 and 157)	The film has run out.	Install a new roll of film and press Resume to continue or Cancel to reset.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Film: Wrong Material (PC Error Message No. 173)	The Film is not installed properly or has been damaged.	Verify the correct film is installed in the film Cartridge.
Flipper Jam (PC Error Message Nos. 74 and 199)	A card is jammed in the card flipping area of the Printer.	<p>Open the Printer's Flipping Module Cover.</p> <p>Clear any cards in the Flipping Module by opening the Printers Cover and using the Forward and/or Back buttons located on the Printer's Front Cover.</p> <p>Ensure that the Output Module can rotate freely. Close the Printer's Flipping Module Cover.</p> <p>Press the Resume button on the Printer's Front Cover to continue printing.</p> <p>To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog.</p>
Head Loading (PC Error Message No. 111)	An unrecoverable error has occurred during printing.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Head Resistance (PC Error Message No. 6)	The EE setting in Driver for head resistance is out of range.	Enter a value for head resistance in the EE settings in the Driver. Reset the correct value according to the steps in the Troubleshooting Section. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Head Sensor Error (PC Error Message No. 8)	The Printhead Temperature Sensor is not functioning or is not connected properly. OR The Printhead is not cooling properly.	If the problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Head Voltage Error (PC Error Message Nos. 103 and 105)	A hardware fault has prevented setting the correct Printhead voltage.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Headlift Error (PC Error Message Nos. 102, 103, 104, and 105)	This is a problem with the Printhead Lift or Transfer Roller Headlift.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Heater Error (PC Error Message No. 161)	The Transfer Heater Roller is too hot.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Invalid Film (PC Error Message Nos. 94, 95, 96, 164, 165, and 166)	An unauthorized film is installed in the Printer.	Get the correct Film from your dealer.
Invalid Password (PC Error Message No. 136)	Printing disabled at this time.	Press Cancel to abort this print job and then check security settings at host computer.
Invalid Ribbon (PC Error Message No. 93)	An unauthorized Ribbon is installed in the Printer.	Get the correct Ribbon from your dealer.
Job Data Error (PC Error Message No. 106)	The print data sent to the Printer is corrupt or has been interrupted.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Mag Encoder Paused (PC Error Message No. 143)	The Magnetic Encoder is in a pause state.	
Mag Encoder Startup Error (PC Error Message No. 63 and 141)	A problem was detected during Printer start-up.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Mag Verify Error (PC Error Message No. 30)	Print could not verify MAG write. OR The magnetic stripe was not encoded properly.	Check the Cards and click on Cancel Print.
Multiple Feed (PC Error Message No. 70)	Multiple cards were fed into the Printer.	Remove all cards and try again.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
No E-card Encoder (PC Error Message No. 202)	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.
No Film (PC Error Message No. 28)	Film is not installed in the Printer. OR Film RFID tag is bad.	Install the Film and press Resume . To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.
No Flip Module (PC Error Message No. 201)	Two-sided job sent to a one-sided Printer.	Verify the Printer has flipper capabilities via the LCD Menu. If Output capabilities are present, ensure that the Print Both Sides option in the Driver is set correctly. Press the Resume button on the Printer's Front Cover to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
No iClass Encoder (PC Error Message No. 177)	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.
No Mag Module (PC Error Message No. 31)	MAG encoding job sent to Printer without a MAG encoder. You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	
No MiFare Encoder (PC Error Message No. 203)	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
No Prox Encoder (PC Error Message No. 32)	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
No Ribbon (PC Error Message No. 25)	No Ribbon is installed in the Printer. OR The Ribbon RFID tag is bad.	Install the correct Ribbon and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
No Smart Encoder (PC Error Message No. 33)	You are trying to send encoding data, but the Printer is not configured with this Encoder type.	To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
Output Hopper Full	The Sensor detects when the Output Hopper has been filled to prevent more cards from printing and causing a jam.	Check the Hopper and remove cards as needed. Close the Output Hopper. Press the Resume button.
Output Hopper Open	The Sensor detects when the Output Hopper has been opened. When the Hopper is opened, cards will not eject from the Output (to ensure cards do not eject into the chassis).	Close the Output Hopper. Press the Resume button.
Reject Output Hopper	The Sensor detects that the number of cards rejected is getting close to the 30-card capacity.	
Printing Error (PC Error Message No. 107)	An error was detected during printing.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Reboot Required (PC Error Message Nos. 9, 65, 67, and 163)	Unspecified system error detected by the Printer Firmware.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Reinsert Ribbon (PC Error Message No. 141)	The Ribbon must be reinserted for proper functioning of the Printer.	Reinsert the Ribbon or press Resume .
Remove Card (PC Error Message No. 68)	A card is jammed in the Print Station or card flipping area of the Printer.	Clear the jam and press Cancel .
Remove Ribbon (PC Error Message No. 139)	The print Ribbon is not installed properly or has been damaged.	Verify the correct Ribbon is installed in the Ribbon Cartridge. Remove it and replace it with the correct Ribbon.
Ribbon Break/Jam (PC Error Message No. 99, 108, and 109)	The Ribbon is not able to find the next panel correctly. Check for jams/breaks.	If jammed, clear the jam. If broken, repair by taping the Ribbon back on to the take-up core. Press Resume to continue or Cancel to abort.
Ribbon Low (PC Error Message No. 92)	The print Ribbon will soon run out.	If printing a large number of cards, replace the Ribbon now or monitor the Printer until the Ribbon is gone and install a new Ribbon.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Ribbon Miscue (PC Error Message No. 97)	The Ribbon is not able to find the next panel correctly. Check for jams/breaks.	If jammed, clear the jam. If broken repair by taping the Ribbon back on to the take-up core. Press Resume to continue or Cancel to abort.
Ribbon Out (PC Error Message No. 91, 100 and 101)	The print Ribbon has run out.	Install a new Ribbon and press Resume to continue.
Ribbon Tension (PC Error Message No. 98)	The Ribbon tensions may be out of range.	Check and adjust the setting through the TOOLBOX under the Advanced Settings tab. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance. Press Resume to continue or cancel to abort.
Ribbon: Wrong Material (PC Error Message No. 93, 122, and 172)	The print Ribbon is not installed properly or has been damaged.	Verify the correct Ribbon is installed in the Ribbon Cartridge.
System Fault (PC Error Message No. 164)	Unspecified system error is detected by the Printer Firmware.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.

Troubleshooting with the LCD Error Message Table (continued)

LCD Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unable to Feed (PC Error Message Nos. 14 and 81)	The Printer is unable to feed a card from the Card Cartridge	Verify there are cards in the Card Cartridge. Verify cards are not stuck together or jammed, and they are the correct thickness.
Utility Error (PC Error Message Nos. 129)	Command resulted in an error.	See <u>Resolving the Communication Errors</u> .
Waiting for Data (PC Error Message No. 147)	The Printer has stopped receiving data from the PC.	Reset the Printer and try again. If this problem persists, call for technical assistance.
Wrong Film (PC Error Message Nos. 162 and 163)	The print film installed in the Printer does not match the film type selected in the Printer Driver. OR A Self-test job cannot be printed with the print media installed.	Replace film in Printer with type specified in the Driver. A reboot is required.
Wrong Ribbon (PC Error Message No. 93)	The print Ribbon installed in the Printer does not match the Ribbon type selected in the Printer Driver. OR A Self-test job cannot be printed with the print media installed.	Replace Ribbon in Printer with type specified in the Driver.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
General Error	A general Printer error has occurred.	Press Cancel on the printer or click on Cancel Print .
Card Not Found	The Printer is unable to find the card.	Please check Printer for a card or other obstruction, remove the card and cancel the print by pressing the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog or the Cancel button, located on the Printer.
Cover is Open	The Printer cannot start printing because the Cover is open.	Close the Cover to continue printing.
Unable to Feed	The Printer is unable to feed a card from the Card Cartridge.	Ensure that cards are available and loaded correctly, press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Card Jam	A Card has become jammed in the Printer.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the Printer's Front Cover and remove the Print Ribbon and Film Cartridges. Clear any cards in the printer by using the Forward and/or Back Buttons located on the printer's LCD display. Re-insert the Ribbon and close the Printer's Front Cover. Press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To Cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.
Card Jam (Encoder)	A Card has become jammed in the Printer's Encoding station.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the Printer's Front Cover and remove the Print Ribbon. Open the Printer's Flipping Module Cover. Clear any cards in the Encoding Module by using the Forward and/or Back buttons located on the Printer's LCD display. Re-insert the Print Ribbon and close the Printer's Front Cover. Press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog or the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Card Jam (Output)	A Card has become jammed in the Printer's Flipper Table.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Open the Printer's Front Cover and the Output Module Cover.b. Clear any cards in the Flipper Table by using the Forward and/or Back buttons located on the Printer's LCD display.c. Close the Printer's Front Cover.d. Press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing.e. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog or the Cancel button on the Printer's LCD display.
Card Eject Error	The Printer is unable to eject a card.	<p>Please check Printer for a card jam or other obstruction and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing.</p> <p>To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog or the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.</p>

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Flipper Jam	The Flipper Table has jammed while either aligning itself or flipping a card.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the Printer's Output Module Cover. Clear any cards in the Output Module by using the Forward and/or Back buttons located on the Printer's Front Cover. Ensure that the Flipper Table can rotate freely. Close the Printer's Output Module Cover. Press the Resume button on the Printer's Front Cover to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog.
No Flipper	The Printer does not have flipping capabilities.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Verify the Printer has flipper capabilities via the LCD Menu. If Output capabilities are present, ensure that the Print Both Sides option in the driver is set correctly. Press the Resume button on the Printer's Front Cover to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog or press the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Ribbon RFID Error	The ribbon tag information is corrupted or incorrect.	Check that the Ribbon is installed properly. Cancel is the only option. Press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog, or the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.
Wrong Ribbon Installed	An incorrect ribbon has been installed, or a driver setting is incorrect.	Check that the ribbon is correct for the printer and job. Press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog, or the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.
No Ribbon Installed	No Print Ribbon is installed in the Printer.	Install the correct Ribbon and press Resume on the LCD display.
Ribbon Out	The Print Ribbon installed in the printer is empty.	Install a new Ribbon and press Resume on the LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Ribbon Break/Jam	A Ribbon break/jam has been detected inside the Printer.	<p>The printer has determined that the installed ribbon has either jammed or broken.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the Printer Cover and remove the Print Ribbon. If ribbon is jammed, remove jam and tighten ribbon. Clear any cards in the printer by using the Forward and/or Back buttons located on the Printer's LCD display. Tape the ends of the Ribbon together and wind any excess onto the Take-up Spool of the Print Ribbon. Re-install the Print Ribbon, close the Printer Cover and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.
Ribbon Sensor Error	The Printer cannot find the next panel on the Print Ribbon.	<p>Recalibrate the Ribbon Sensor using the Calibrate Ribbon Tab within the Toolbox.</p> <p>To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button on the Printer's LCD display.</p>

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Invalid Ribbon	An incorrect Print Ribbon has been installed in the Printer. (This is if you are using a SecureMark Ribbon).	<p>A non-SecureMark Ribbon is installed in a SecureMark Printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Replace with the appropriate SecureMark Ribbon and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing.To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.Install a Certified Print Ribbon and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing.To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Invalid Ribbon	The ribbon installed does not match the SecureMark configuration of the printer.	Install a Certified Print Ribbon and press the Resume button located on the Printer's LCD display to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button from the Driver's display dialog and the Cancel button located on the Printer's LCD display.
Invalid Ribbon	An incorrect Print Ribbon has been installed in the Printer.	Check that the ribbon is correct for the printer and retry. To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
Ribbon Error	The Print Ribbon caused a general error.	Press the Resume button located on the Printer to continue. To cancel, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
No Magnetic Encoder Installed	A print job with Magnetic encoding was sent with no Magnetic encoder installed in the printer.	Ensure that no encoding data is being sent with the print job and reprint the card.
Mag Verify Error	The printer is unable to verify encoded data.	Check the Cards and click on Cancel Print .
No Mag Strip Present	The Printer is unable to find a Magnetic stripe on the card.	Check the Cards and click on Cancel Print .
No Smart Card Encoder	No Smart Card Encoder is installed in the printer.	To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
No Prox Card Encoder	No Proximity Card Encoder is installed in the printer.	To cancel, click on Cancel Print .
Headlift Error	The Headlift Sensor is not detecting movement from the Headlift Cam.	Reboot the Printer by cycling power. To cancel, press the Cancel Print button.
Invalid Password	The Password entered is not a valid password.	Press OK to enter another password. To cancel, press the Cancel Print button.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table (continued)

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Print Film Out	The Print Film installed in the printer is empty.	Install new Film and press the Resume button to continue printing. To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.
Print Film is not Installed	No Print Film is installed in the Printer.	Install the Film and press Resume . To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.
Print Film Sensor Error	The Printer cannot find the next panel on the Print Film.	Check that the Print Film is installed properly and press Resume . To cancel the print, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.
Wrong Print Film Installed	An incorrect Print Film has been installed, or a driver setting is incorrect.	Ensure that the appropriate Print Film is installed and press the Resume button located on the Printer to continue printing. To cancel, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.

Troubleshooting with the Printer Error Message Table

Printer Error Message	Cause	Solution
Invalid Print Film Installed	The Print Film installed does not match the SecureMark configuration of the printer.	<p>A non-SecureMark Film is installed in a SecureMark Printer.</p> <p>Replace with the appropriate SecureMark Film and press the Resume button on the Printer to continue printing.</p> <p>To cancel, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button on the Printer.</p>
Print Film Error	The Print Film caused a general error.	<p>Ensure that the appropriate Print Film is installed and press the Resume button located on the Printer to continue printing.</p> <p>To cancel, press the Cancel Print button or the Cancel button located on the Printer.</p>

Communications Errors

Resolving the Communication Errors

Symptom(s): Incorrect output, communications error on PC or Printer, stalling, no response from Printer, no job printed, “paper out” error.

Step	Procedure
1	Confirm that the system meets the minimum requirements, as shown here: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IBM-PC or compatible.• Windows 32 bit 2000/XP, Pentium™ class 500 MHz computer with 256 MB of RAM or higher• 500 MB free hard disk space or higher• USB Port (Optional Ethernet connection)
2	Confirm the correct installation of the Printer Driver. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Close the software program and check the Printer Driver.b. Reboot the computer.c. Ensure the Printer Driver is installed correctly. (Note: This pertains especially if an obsolete Driver was recently removed.)d. Ensure the correct setup options within the Printer Driver are selected.e. Confirm that the Driver is current by checking at: www.fargo.com
3	Confirm the correct installation of the Flipper Table Module Assembly. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reboot the computer.b. Ensure that the Print Both Sides option in the Printer Driver is set correctly.c. Verify the Flipper Table Module Assembly is functioning properly by printing out cards in a test run.

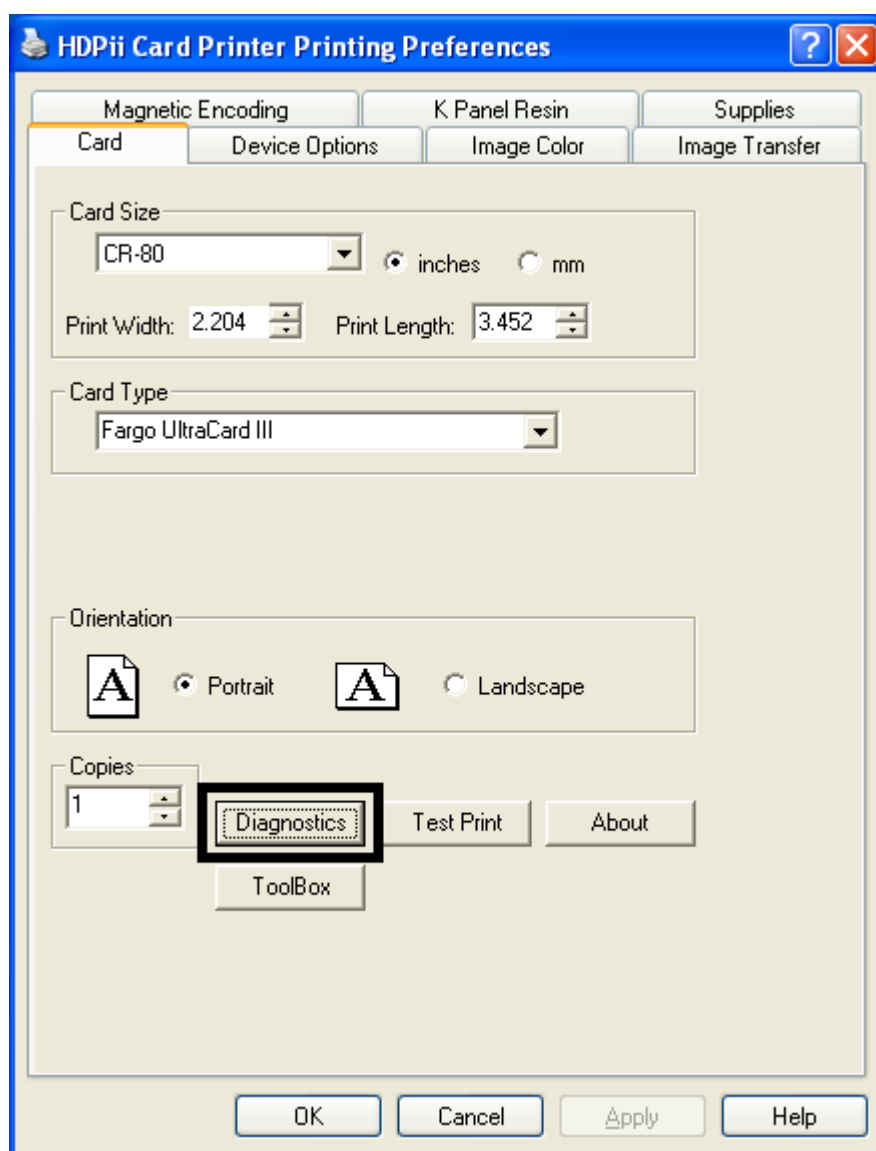
Resolving the Communication Errors (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	<p>Determine the problem with printing from the application.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Print a self-test from the Printer by pressing Options -> Menu-> Select -> Print on the printer's LCD to ensure that the Printer (itself) is functioning properly. See the next procedure. Print the Windows test page that is located in the General tab of the Driver. Use WordPad (a Windows 2000/XP word processing program in the Accessories Program Group). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Go to the File menu and select Page Setup. Click on the Printer button and select the Card Printer. Click OK and reset all four margins to zero. (Note: The WordPad will automatically replace the values with its minimum margins.) Open the program and type: "This is a Test." then, go to File on the menu bar and select Print.
5	<p>Determine whether there is adequate hard Drive space.</p> <p>(Note: A large volume of temporary files on the computer can cause communications errors.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Access the temporary files by following this process: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Search for all folders called TEMP. Once found, clear out the contents of the folders. If using Windows 2000/XP/2003 run the System Utility - Disk Defragmenter found in the Accessories folder of the Start Menu. Use a disk cleanup utility (such as Disk Cleanup found in the System Tools folder of the Start menu) or use a third party application.

Printing a Test Image

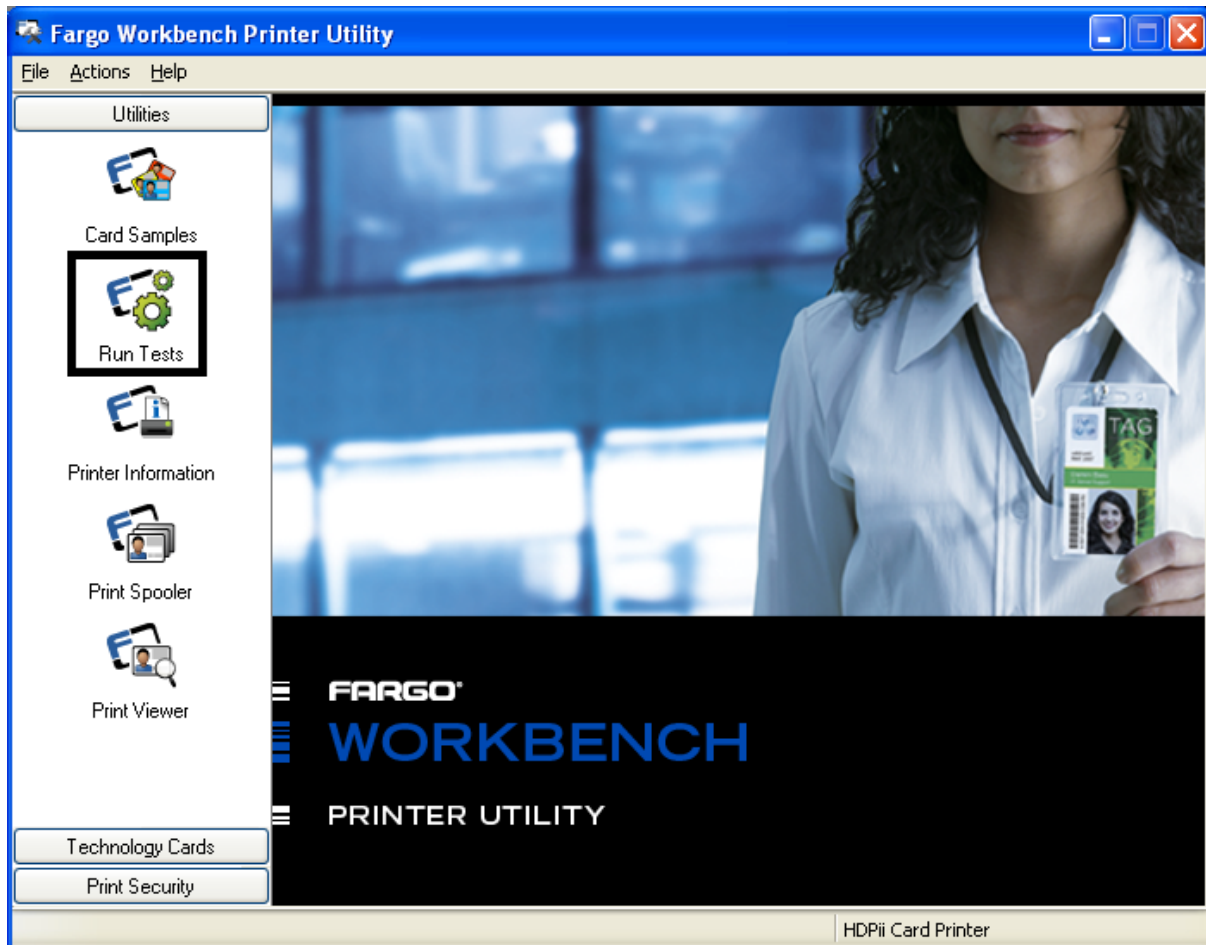
Step	Procedure
1	Open the Diagnostic Tool from the Driver. Choose Run Tests to select a preset test image. Select Self Tests . See Displays A and B, below. (Note: These images help to determine if the Printer is functioning properly.)
2	Scroll to the desired Self Test image from the Choose Test window options and press the Run Test button.

Display A – Click on the **Diagnostic** button.



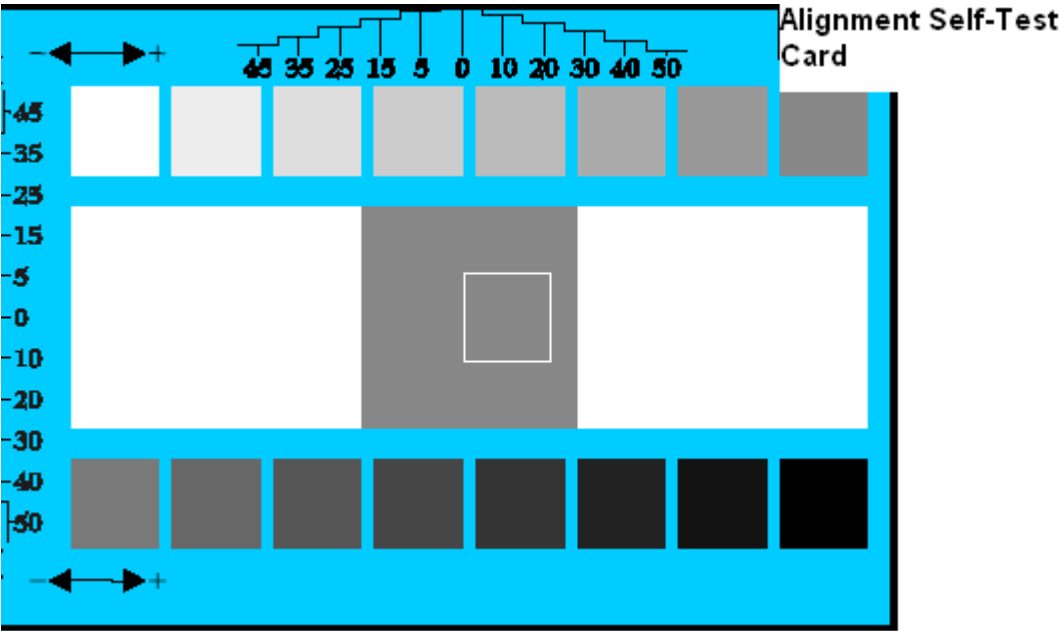
Printing a Test Image

Display B – Click on the **Run Tests** button. See the previous page.



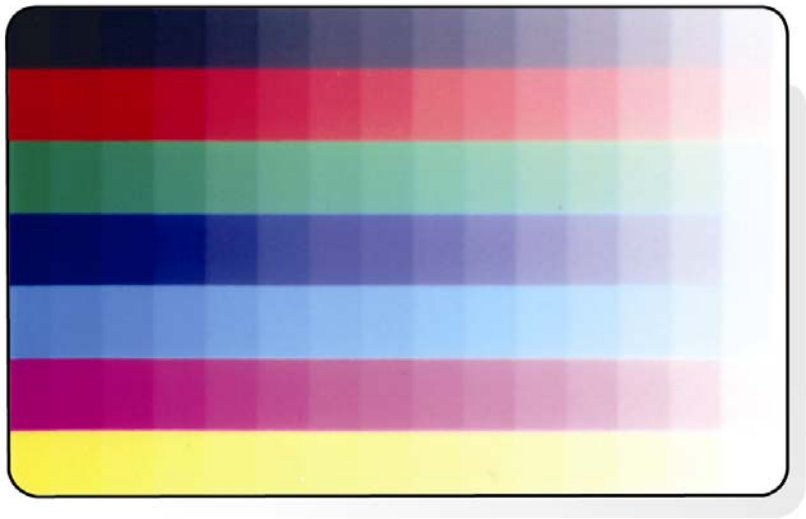
Reviewing the Alignment Self Test Card

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Use this card to determine Image Placement and confirm that the Printer is working properly. (Note: The image consists of sixteen (16) gray scale boxes and alignment arrows. The gray boxes are composed from a composite of YMC color panels.)</p> <p>Adjust the TOF and EOF settings to change image placement.</p>



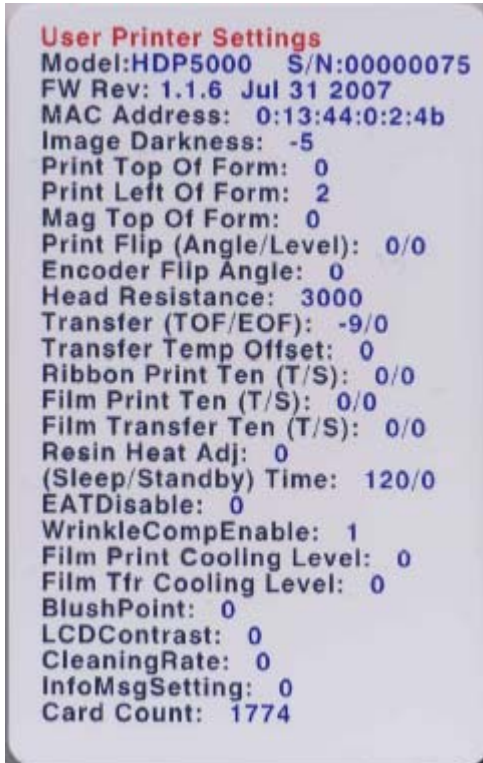
Reviewing the Color Bars Self Test

Step	Procedure
1	Use this card to confirm that image colors are properly reproduced. Image consists of sixteen graduated steps of RGB and YMCK. (Note: This print will provide maximum image size, giving complete card Coverage on a CR-80 sized card.)



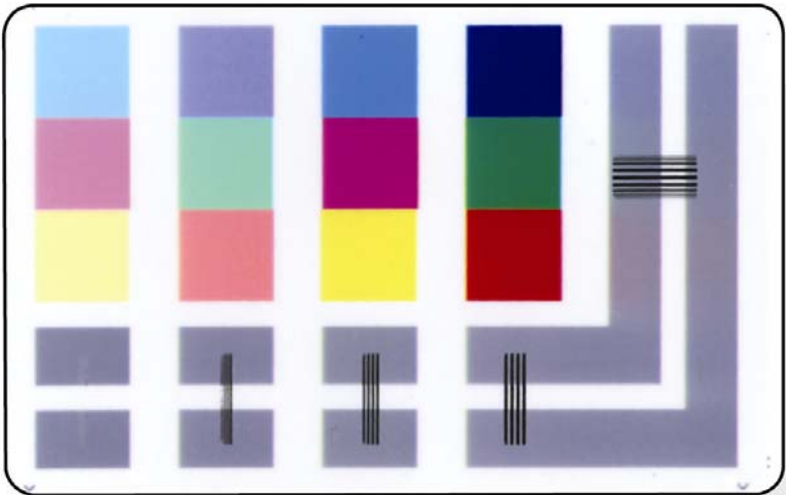
Reviewing the Device Settings Self Test

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Use this card to view the Printer settings and counts for Card Count (CC), Card Cleaning Count (TC) and others.</p> <p>The Card Count is the total number of cards the Printer has produced.</p>



Reviewing the YMCK Self Test

Step	Procedure
1	Use this card to confirm that image colors are properly reproduced. Image consists of sixteen graduated steps of RGB and YMCK. (Note: This print will provide maximum image size, giving complete card Coverage on a CR-80 sized card.)



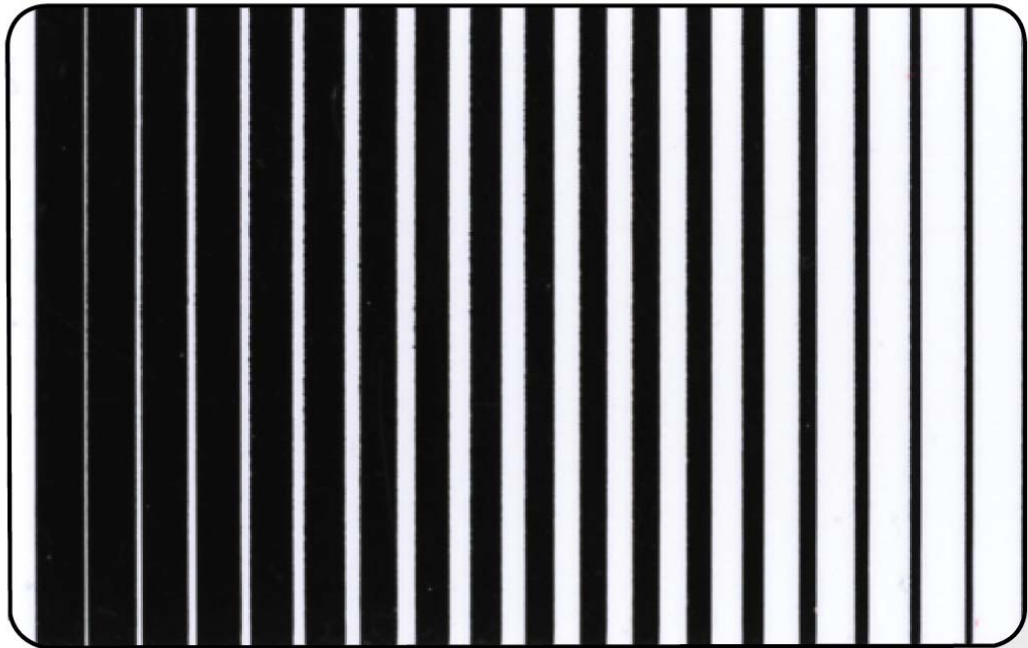
Reviewing the Magnetic Self Test

Step	Procedure
1	This option only applies if a Magnetic Encoding Module is installed in the Printer. (Note: The Printer will feed, encode and eject a card. Be sure to have high coercivity cards installed when running this test.)



Reviewing the Resin Self Test

Step	Procedure
1	Use this card to determine that the Resin Panel is printing properly.



Section 6: Ethernet Option Section

Introduction

The Ethernet option includes the Ethernet port and the internal Printer Server.

- **Printer Management:** The Printer Driver provides bi-directional status information so you can monitor and manage the Printer just as you would any other networked Printer.
- **Compatibility:** The Fargo Ethernet option provides compatibility with TCP/IP and 802.3 Ethernet protocols with an IEEE 802.3 10/100Base-T Ethernet female RJ45 connector.
- **Application:** The Ethernet Option applies to the Fargo High Definition Card Printer/Encoder. With the Ethernet Option properly installed and configured, these Printers are able to print in the same manner as a Printer directly connected to the PC via a USB interface.

Technical Specification - Ethernet Option

Here are the system requirements for Ethernet.



Caution: For safety purposes, Ethernet is not intended for a direct connection outside of the building.

Function	Requirement
Network	An IEEE 802.3 10/100 Base-T Ethernet network is required.
Printer	A Fargo Printer with the Ethernet option installed is required.
Printer Configuration	Since TCP/IP is used for the network communication, the Printer must be configured with an IP address and a subnet mask (before it can be seen on the network). An additional network setting for the Default Gateway can also be configured, which allows communication across the subnets.
Host Computer	A PC running Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows 2003. (Connected to the network) is required.
Host Printer Driver	The host PC must have installed the correct Printer Driver with Ethernet support. (Note: This Driver must be configured for printing to the IP address of the Printer.)

Functional Specification - Ethernet Option

The Fargo Ethernet option includes these features.

Feature	Description
Simultaneous Printing	Provides the ability to simultaneously print from multiple PCs to the network Printer.
Printer Feedback	Provides status information from the network Printer to the PC.
Web Pages	Provides easy Printer configuration with any web browser.
Log Messages	Provides logging of usage and error events via e-mail, UDP or TCP/IP.
Password Security	Provides security with passwords and configurable User permission levels.
Telnet	Provides a Telnet command line interpreter for Printer configuration.
SNMP	Provides an SNMP agent that supports MIB-II.
Upgrades	Provides support for Firmware upgrades over the network.
Troubleshooting	Provides a Ping client for network troubleshooting.

Network Services - Overview

The Ethernet option provides the services described in this section. (**Note:** Other additional services include a Ping client, address assignment and Printer discovery functions.)

Reviewing the Print Server

The Print Server provides printing services in the same manner as a Printer connected directly to a USB interface except that the Printer is connected through the local area network to the client PC. The Print Server must be properly configured in order to provide this printing capability.

- The Print Server is capable of queuing up to eight (8) client PCs while printing. Communications between each PC and the Ethernet-enabled Fargo Printer are implemented over a bi-directional TCP/IP interface.
- All clients are able to send print jobs to the Printer and monitor Printer jobs and errors with the standard Windows printing system using the Fargo Printer Driver installed on their local PC.

In this way, the User knows whether or not a print job has been successful. Also, the User knows what problems have been encountered while processing the print job. Printing using Ethernet works in a manner similar to the USB-connected PC/Printer.

Reviewing the Web Page Server

An HTTP service serves web pages that provide an interface through which to configure and monitor the Printer. (**Note:** Users may also monitor all print jobs that have been sent to the Printer from any client PC.)

Reviewing the Network Management Interface

The Ethernet enabled Printer operates as an SNMP agent to allow central administrators to monitor and configure the network interface and the Printer. (**Note:** A standard host MIB-II is implemented to maximize the utility of the Printer on the network.)

Reviewing the Telnet Server

The Ethernet interface has a command line interpreter. (**Note:** The User can connect to the Printer using a Telnet session on their PC, issue commands to the Printer and receive response from the Printer.)

The Telnet commands are primarily used for network administration, and they will not be used by most Users. (**Note:** These commands will query the state of the Printer and configure various settings for the Printer. These include network settings, logging setting, User names and User passwords.)

Network Management Interface

The SNMP interface is described below.

Interface	Description
SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Ethernet interface is a fully-manageable SNMP agent that supports MIB-II. The Ethernet interface is MIB II compliant, allowing SNMP managers to monitor protocol, network and routing statistics.

Telnet Command Line Interface

Initiating a Telnet Session

This procedure shows how to initiate a Telnet session from a PC in order to access the Telnet services provided by the Printer.

	Description
Initiating a Telnet session	<p>Follow these instructions to issue Telnet commands.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Identify the IP address of your Printer. (Note: See Switching to the Automatic IP Address Mode.) Initiate a Telnet session from a DOS window on your PC. At the DOS prompt, enter telnet [IP Address] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Example: C:\>telnet 192.168.11.12 All Telnet responses from the Printer will then be displayed in the Telnet session on the PC. All commands entered will be sent to the Telnet client in the Printer. Enter "help" or "?" to get an on-window list of supported Telnet commands.

```

C:\>telnet 10.1.210.240
Network Print Server <1.1.5>
login: root
Password:
Welcome root user
10.1.210.240:root>
  
```

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table

The following table describes available Telnet commands. (**Note:** You can enter partial full-word commands, and the Printer will respond with additional help. For example, you can enter “list”, and the Printer will respond with all subcommands to the list command.)

Telnet Command	Command Purpose	Command Format
?	Display help for Telnet commands.	?
help		
reset	Reset the Ethernet interface for the Printer/encoder.	reset
ping	Send a ping command to another IP address as a test of the Ethernet interface.	ping <IPADDR>

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command			Command Purpose	Command Format
list	all		Display all information about this Printer.	list all
	diff		Display all differences between current and stored network settings.	list diff
	uptime		Display how long since the interface was last reset.	list uptime
	sysinfo		Display information about the Printer (e.g., model, label, contact, location, Firmware version and date, and serial number).	list sysinfo
	ribbon		Display information about the installed Ribbon in the Printer.	list ribbon
	net		Display information about the current network settings of the Ethernet interface.	list net
	stored	net	Display information about the stored network settings of the Ethernet interface.	list stored net
	default	net	Display information about the default network settings of the Ethernet interface.	list default net
	user		Display information about the defined User names and their type (root or guest privileges).	list user

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command		Command Purpose	Command Format
	lpq	Display information about print jobs and their settings.	list lpq
	Printer	Display information about the Printer (e.g., model number, Firmware version and serial number).	list printer
	Printer	sm	Display information about the secure mark settings of the Printer. list printer sm

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command			Command Purpose	Command Format
set	sysinfo	contact	Set the contact string.	set sysinfo contact [<STRING>]
		location	Set the location string.	set sysinfo location [<STRING>]
		label	Set the label string.	set sysinfo label [<STRING>]
		from	Set all strings from default or current settings.	set sysinfo from default current
	syslog	name	Change the name of a system log path	set syslog <LOG_NAME> name <NEW_NAME>
		type	Change the type of a system log path. This starts or stops logging on start of jobs or on faults.	set syslog <LOG_NAME> type [[-]job] [[-]pfault]
		dest	Change the destination of a system log path. This may be set to none, e-mail, udp or tcp.	set syslog <LOG_NAME> dest none email udp tcp
		email	Change the e-mail address for e-mail notification for a system log path. It must specify a valid e-mail address.	set syslog <LOG_NAME> email <EMAIL>
		udp	Specify the IP address of the UPD system logging program.	set syslog <LOG_NAME> udp <IPADDRESS>
		from	Restore system log path settings from the default or current settings.	set syslog from default current

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command			Command Purpose	Command Format
set	user	add	Add a new User definition. The allows only two (2) User definitions.	set user add <NAME>
		del	Delete a User definition.	set user del <NAME>
		passwd	Define a new password for a User.	set user passwd <NAME> [<PASSWORD>]
		type	Specify a User as root or guest. Only root Users have administrative rights to change network interface settings.	set user type <NAME> root guest
		from	Restore User setting from default or stored settings.	set user from default stored

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command			Command Purpose	Command Format
store	net	addr	Store a new IP address.	store net addr <ADDRESS>
		mask	Store a new address mask.	store net mask <MASK>
		gateway	Store a new default gateway.	store net gateway <ADDRESS>
		dns	Store a new DNS server address.	store net dns <ADDRESS>
		domain	Store a new DNS domain suffix.	store net domain <STRING>
		opts	Enable or disable automatic address assignment using DHCP. Static (non-automatic) addresses will come from the stored or default settings, depending on the other settings.	To enable automatic address assignment: store net opts dhcp To disable automatic address assignment: store net opts -dhcp
		from	Restore the network settings from either the default settings or the current settings.	store net from default current
	ifc	mode	Specify the Ethernet interface mode as: automatic, full or half duplex; 10 or 100 mHz. (NOTE: 100 mHz. is not supported by the Printer).	store ifc mode auto 10half 10full 100half 100full
		from	Set the Ethernet mode settings from the default or current settings.	store ifc from default current

Reviewing the Telnet Command Table (continued)

Telnet Command	Command Purpose	Command Format
save	Save all current settings as the stored settings in the permanent memory.	save
load	Take the settings from the stored memory and make them the current settings.	load
lpstat	Display information about the Printer status. This includes the status and device response. See the Printer web page description.	lpstat
cancel	Cancel a specific print job from the print queue.	cancel 10
quit	Stop the current Telnet session.	quit

Ethernet Web Pages – Standard Procedures

Reviewing Web page security

You can use the web pages from your Fargo Ethernet-connected Printer to view several attributes about the Printer. Users must have administrative rights, and they must enter the correct password to alter settings of the Printer. See the Reviewing the Web Page Server section.

Logging In

When a User attempts to change any setting, they are asked for a User name and password. (**Note:** The Guest Users can only view settings.)

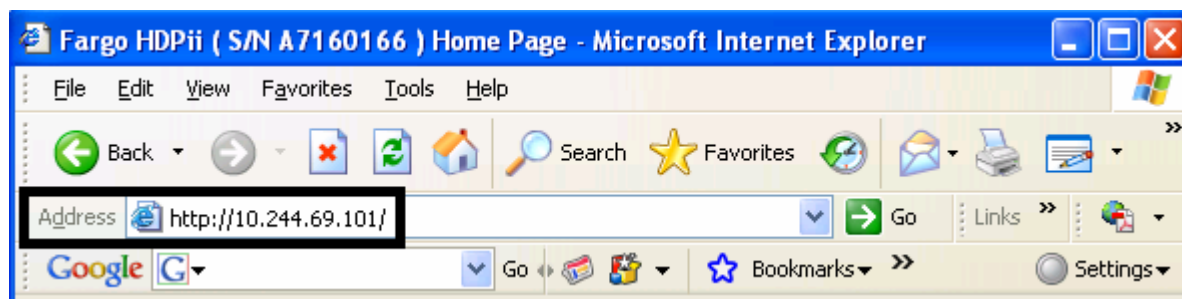
Step	Procedure
1	Enter the correct User name: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The default administrative User name is root.• The default non-administrative User name is guest.• Non-administrative Users can only view settings.
2	Enter the correct password: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The default password is an empty string. If the password has not been changed, leave the field blank.• See Password page procedure for changing passwords.
3	Press Enter or click on the OK button.
4	If the name and password is not accepted, another login prompt will appear on screen. (Note: Repeat this procedure with the correct User name and password.)



Accessing the Home page

Step	Procedure
1	Open a window for your network browser application on your local PC.
2	Find the IP address of the Printer. (Note: See Accessing the IP Address as needed to get this from the LCD of the Printer.)
3	Enter the IP address of the Printer you want to access into the address bar of the browser. (Note: The IP address will change for your printer installation.)
4	Press Enter or click on GO .
5	View the Home page. The Home Page displays general information about the Printer. See the next page.

Display A – See Procedural Steps 2 and 3 (above)



Reviewing the Home Page

This section provides a display of the Home Page.



Reviewing the Home Page Categories and Fields (table)

You can view these categories and fields in the following table.

Category	Field	Purpose
Fixed for Printer	Serial Number	Displays the unique fixed serial number of the Printer.
	Hardware Address	Displays the unique fixed hardware address (MAC) of the Printer, which is the unique Ethernet device identifier.
Set by User (May be configured via Telnet or from the Administration web page.)	Label	Indicates the label that the User assigns to the Printer. This label is reported to the DHCP server as the Host Name (that may be used by the DNS server to resolve the IP address of the Printer). If left blank, the Printer will use a unique label based on the MAC address of the Printer.
	Location	Indicates the location string that the User assigns to the Printer.
	Contact	Indicates the contact person string that the User assigns to the Printer.
Set by Firmware	Printer Firmware Version	Displays the current Firmware version.
	Boot Loader Firmware Version (Printer only)	Displays the current boot loader Firmware version.

Configuring the Network Settings

The procedures needed to configure the network settings are presented in this section.

Accessing the Network Settings page

The Network page displays the current network settings and allows the User to change the settings.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Network link from any web page of the Printer.

Home
Network | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | [System Log](#) | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)

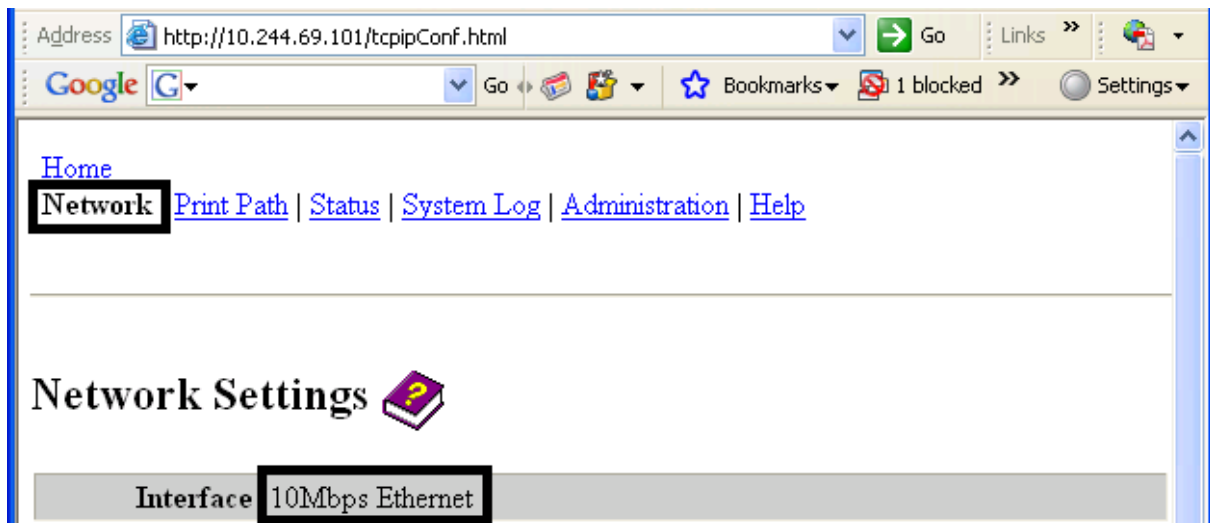
Network Settings ?

Interface	10Mbps Ethernet	
Current Settings (Dynamic)	IP Address	10.244.69.101
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
	Default Gateway	10.244.69.3
	DNS Server Address	10.244.69.20
	DNS Domain Suffix	mn.fargo.com
Stored Settings	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically <input type="radio"/> Use the following IP address:	
	IP Address	<input type="text" value="10.1.129.75"/>
	Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.192"/>
	Default Gateway	<input type="text" value="10.1.129.65"/>
	DNS Server Address	<input type="text"/>
	DNS Domain Suffix	<input type="text"/>

Note: Changes only take effect after [reboot](#).

Reviewing the Interface

The Interface display indicates the network speed supported by the Printer.



Reviewing the Current Settings

The Current Settings page section displays the current active network settings for the Printer.

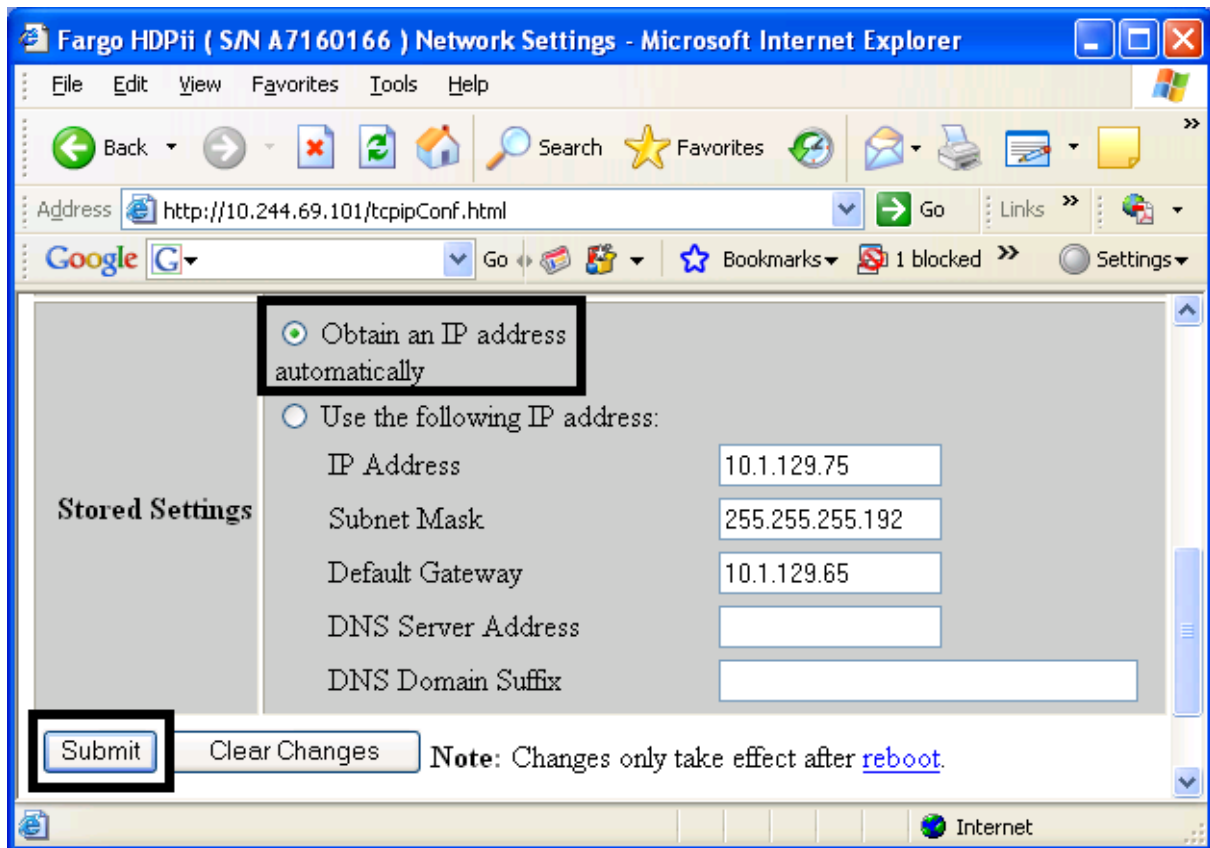
- These are also labeled as “Dynamic” if they were provided by DHCP or “Static” if they came from the Stored Settings.
- The current settings will be “Dynamic” only if **Obtain an IP address automatically** was selected when the Printer was restarted last.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the address bar displaying `http://10.244.69.101/tcpipConf.html`. The browser's address bar, search bar, and navigation buttons are visible. The page content includes a navigation menu with links: [Home](#), [Network](#) (highlighted with a black box), [Print Path](#), [Status](#), [System Log](#), [Administration](#), and [Help](#). Below the navigation menu is the section title **Network Settings** followed by a question mark icon. A table displays the current network settings for the 10Mbps Ethernet interface. The table has two main sections: 'Interface' and 'Current Settings (Dynamic)'. The 'Current Settings (Dynamic)' section lists the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, DNS Server Address, and DNS Domain Suffix.

Interface	10Mbps Ethernet	
Current Settings (Dynamic)	IP Address	10.244.69.101
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
	Default Gateway	10.244.69.3
	DNS Server Address	10.244.69.20
	DNS Domain Suffix	mn.fargo.com

Switching to the Automatic IP Address Mode

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Network link from any web page of the Printer.
2	Select the Obtain an IP address automatically radio button to enable the DHCP/BOOTP, which automatically assigns the network settings. Even with this button selected, the User can enter Stored Settings, and the Stored Settings will remain in memory. See below. (Note: This is the default method.)
3	Click on the Submit button to save this setting.
4	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)
5	Reboot the Printer to affect this change.



Changing to the Static IP Address Mode

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Network link from any web page of the Printer.
2	Select the Use the following IP address radio button, which prepares the Printer to use network settings (that the User has manually set). These manual settings will then be used the next time the Printer is rebooted.
3	Enter the network settings which are required for Ethernet communications from within the same subnet. With only these entries the User cannot print from a subnet (other than on the subnet on which the Printer is connected). These required settings are the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IP Address• Subnet Mask
4	Enter the optional network settings for Ethernet communications across a router from other subnets, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default Gateway
5	Enter the optional network settings for DNS. These are the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DNS Server Address• DNS Domain Suffix
6	Select the Submit button to save these changes to stored settings in the memory of the Printer. (Note: These settings will not be lost if the power is removed from the Printer.)

Continued on the next page

Changing to the static IP address mode (continued)

Step	Procedure
7	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)
8	Reboot the Printer to effect this change. See the Reviewing Web page security procedure.

reboot.' The 'Submit' button is highlighted with a black border."/>

Fargo HDPii (S/N A7160166) Network Settings - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Back Forward Stop Home Search Favorites Reload Print Mail Links

Address http://10.244.69.101/tcpipConf.html Go

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

Stored Settings

☐ Obtain an IP address automatically

☒ Use the following IP address:

IP Address 10.1.129.75

Subnet Mask 255.255.255.192

Default Gateway 10.1.129.65

DNS Server Address

DNS Domain Suffix

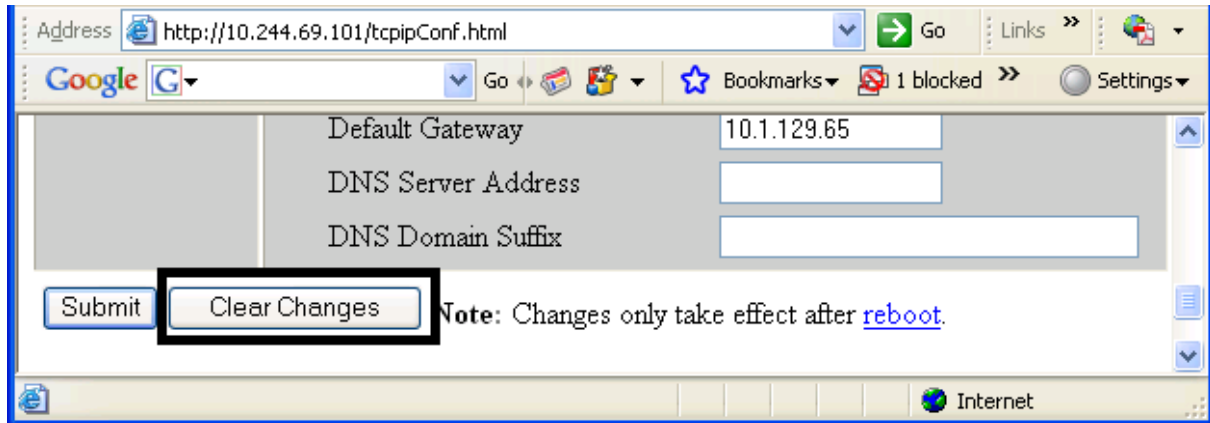
Submit Clear Changes

Note: Changes only take effect after [reboot](#).

Internet

Using the Clear Changes button

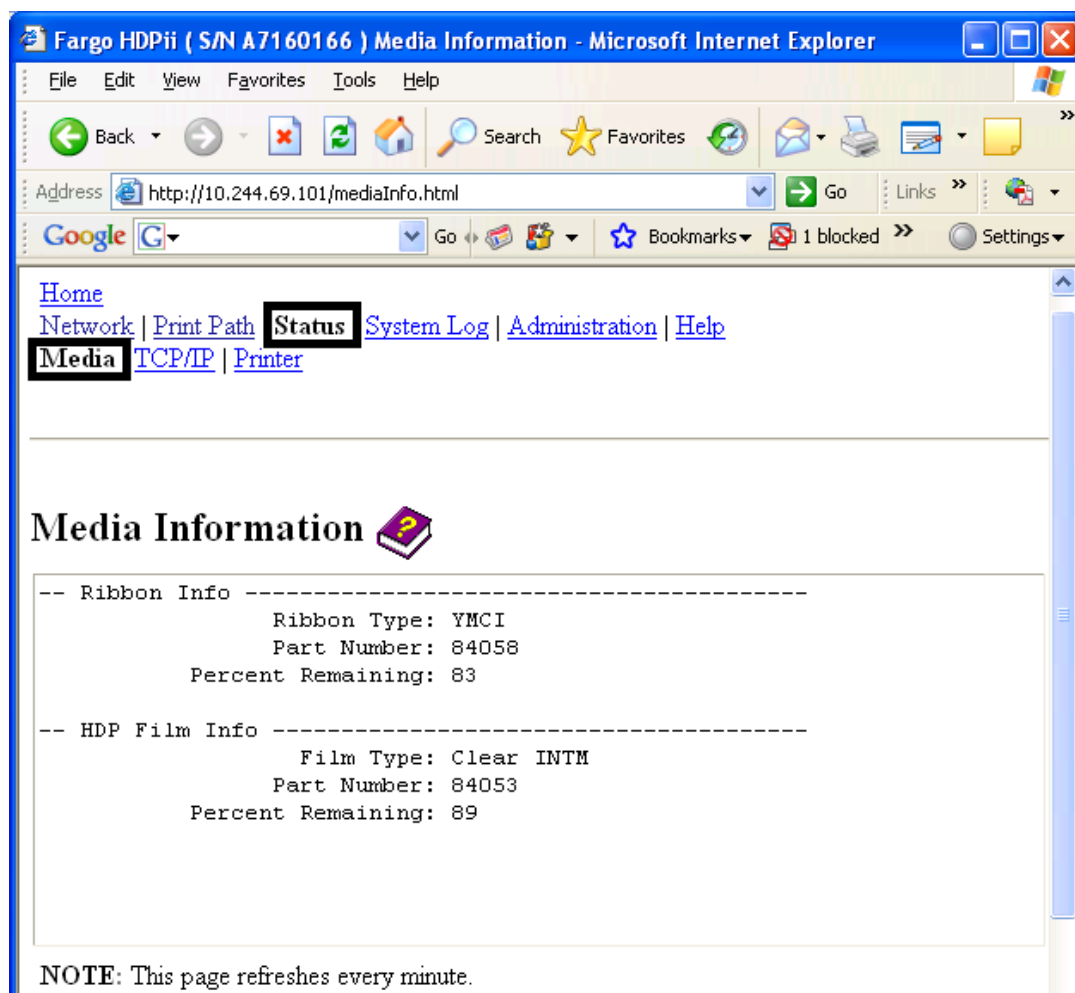
Step	Procedure
1	Click on the Clear Changes button to delete the information in the textboxes in Stored Settings area. See the lower left corner of this display.



Using the Media Information page

This page displays Media information about the Ribbon and Film (currently installed in the Printer).

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Status link from any web page of the Printer.
2	Select the Media page link.
3	View currently-installed Ribbon information pertaining to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Part Number • SecureMark Part Number • Percent Remaining • Ribbon Type



Using the TCP/IP page

The TCP/IP page displays the TCP/IP Status of each Printer connection, which are not configurable. See the next two pages for displays.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Status link from any web page of the Printer.
2	Select the TCP/IP page link.
3	View information on all current network connections in the TCP connections area.

Continued on the next page

Using the TCP/IP page

See the [Using the TCP/IP page](#) procedure.

Fargo HDPii (S/N A7160166) TCP/IP Status - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Back Forward Stop Home Search Favorites Reload Print Mail Links Settings

Address <http://10.244.69.101/tcpipStatus.html> Go

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) | [Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | **Status** | [System Log](#) | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)
[Media](#) | **TCP/IP** | [Printer](#)

TCP/IP Status

TCP Connections

```

-- TCP SOCKETS -----
SD  PORT  PROTOCOL  RMT HOST      STATE
1   23    Telnet    (N/A)         LISTEN
2   80    HTTP      (N/A)         LISTEN
3   4010   SysLog    (N/A)         LISTEN
4   4011   SysLog    (N/A)         LISTEN
5   4012   SysLog    (N/A)         LISTEN
6   9100   RAW       (N/A)         LISTEN
7   4020   CMD       (N/A)         LISTEN
8   5400   CPSPData  (N/A)         LISTEN
9   5402   CPSCmd    (N/A)         LISTEN
34  80     HTTP      10.244.68.145 ESTABLISHED

-- UDP SOCKETS -----
SD  PORT  PROTOCOL  RMT HOST      STATE
0   9     MDMP      (N/A)         LISTEN

```

NOTE: This page refreshes every minute.

<http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0> Internet

Using the Printer page

You can use the Printer page to review current information about the Printer device settings and print jobs. Device settings include the following:

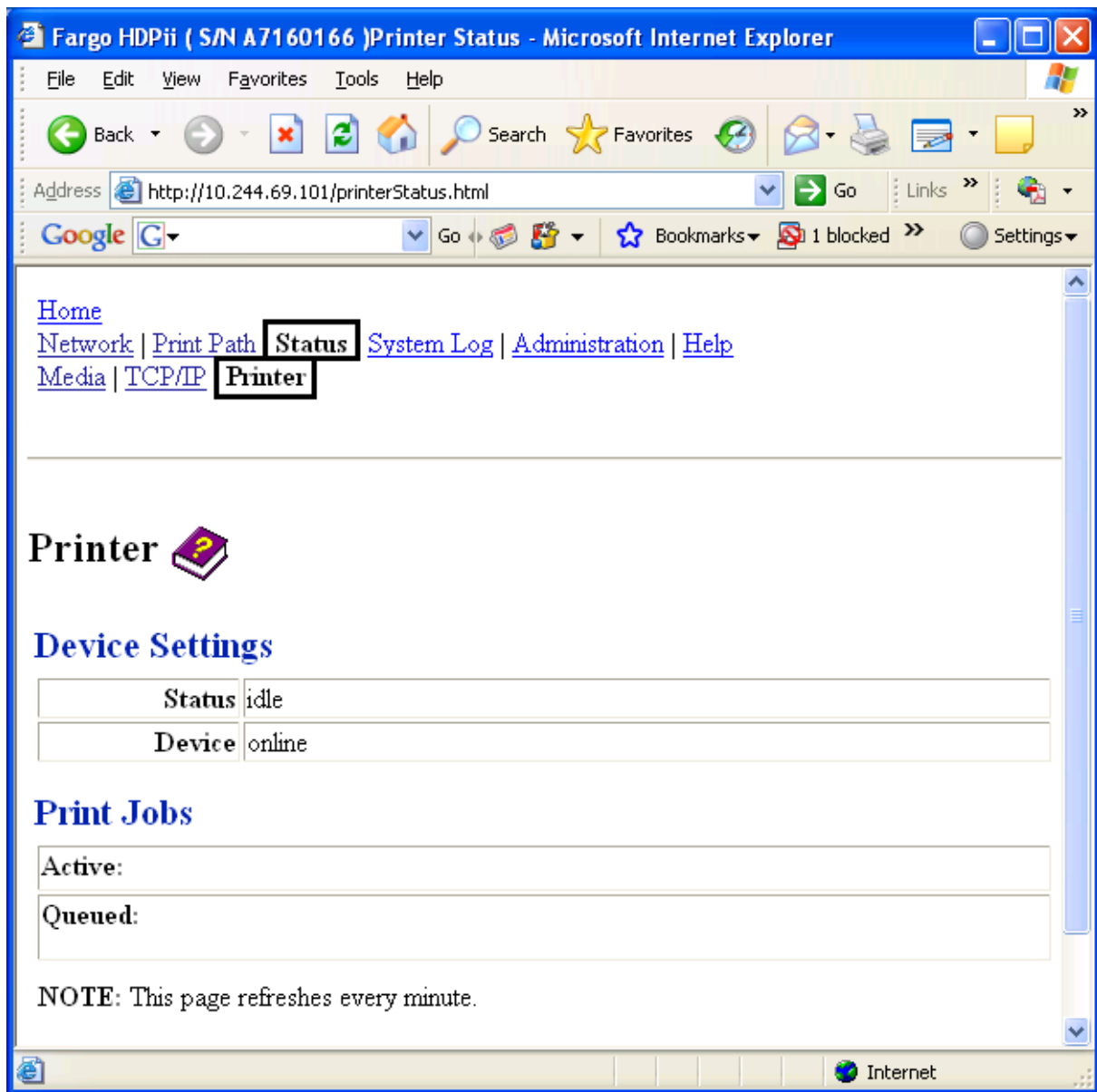
- The **status** which displays information about the current print job.
- The **device** which displays information about the Printer.

The fields are described below. See the next page to view the entire Printer page.

Field	Status	Description
status	Idle	Indicates that no print job is active.
	Printing	Indicates that the job is being sent to the Printer.
	printing – waiting	Indicates that the communication is being slowed by print operations.
	printing – blocked	Indicates that the communication has been stopped by some condition.
	canceled	Indicates that the current job was canceled and is being rerouted .
device	online	Indicates it is ready to print.
	offline	Indicates that the Cover is open or the Printer is not ready to print.
	Printer – error	Indicates that an error is detected.
	Busy	Indicates that printing is in progress.
Print Jobs		<p>This is a display of the current print jobs that have been sent to the Printer. (Note: The current job that is being received by the interface is displayed as the active job.)</p> <p>Cancel a specific print job by selecting the appropriate Cancel button, which appears when a print job is queued.</p>

Reviewing the Printer page (continued)

See the previous page for descriptions of the fields.



Using the System Log page

The System Log page displays the current system log settings and allows the User to change the settings. (**Note:** These settings configure how system logging occurs. There are two logs.)

Fargo HDPii (S/N A7160166) System Log - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Back Forward Stop Home Search Favorites Reload Print Mail Links

Address http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0 Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#)
[Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | **System Log** | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)
log1 | [log2](#)

System Log ?

Log Name	<input type="text" value="log1"/>
Log Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Print Job Started <input type="checkbox"/> Printer Error
Log Destination	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Email <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. userid@domain.com) <input type="radio"/> UDP Syslog <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name) <input type="radio"/> TCP Connection Port: 4010

Internet

Changing the Log Name

By default the names are log1 and log2. However, you can rename them from this page.

(**Note:** This also updates the link to the corresponding web page.)

Step	Procedure
1	Select the System Log link.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2). See the previous page.
3	Enter a new log name in textbox.

Continued on the next page

Changing the Log Name

Step	Procedure
4	Click on the Submit button to save this change.
5	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)

Fargo HDPii (S/N A7160166) System Log - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Back Forward Stop Home Search Favorites Reload Print Mail New Tab

Address http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0 Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) | [Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | **System Log** | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)

log1 | [log2](#)

System Log ?

Log Name log1

Log Type

☐ Print Job Started

☐ Printer Error

Log Destination

☒ None

☐ Email (e.g. userid@domain.com)

☐ UDP Syslog (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name)

☐ TCP Connection Port: 4010

Submit Clear Changes

Selecting the Log Type

Step	Procedure
1	Select the System Log link. See the next page.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2).
3	Select the Print Job Started checkbox to generate the log entries for each Print Job Started.

Continued on the next page

Selecting the Log Type

Step	Procedure
4	Select the Printer Error checkbox to generate the log entries for each Printer Error.
5	Select the Submit button.
6	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)

Address <http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0> Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) | [Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | **[System Log](#)** | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)

log1 [log2](#)

System Log

Log Name

Log Type

☐ Print Job Started

☐ Printer Error

Log Destination

☒ None

☐ Email (e.g. userid@domain.com)

☐ UDP Syslog (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name)

☐ TCP Connection Port: 4010

Submit Clear Changes

Selecting the Log Destination

Specify one destination for the log.

Step	Procedure – No event logging.
1	Select the System Log link.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2).
3	Select the None radio button when no log is required. (Note: This is the default.)

Continued on the next page

Selecting the Log Destination

Step	Procedure – No event logging.
4	Select Submit .
5	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.

Address <http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0> Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) | [Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | **System Log** | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)

log1 [log2](#)

System Log

Log Name	<input type="text" value="log1"/>	
Log Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Print Job Started <input type="checkbox"/> Printer Error	
Log Destination	<div> <input checked="" type="radio"/> None </div> <div> <input type="radio"/> Email <input type="text" value="userid@domain.com"/> (e.g. userid@domain.com) </div> <div> <input type="radio"/> UDP Syslog <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name) </div> <div> <input type="radio"/> TCP Connection <input type="text" value="Port: 4010"/> </div>	
<input type="button" value="Submit"/> <input type="button" value="Clear Changes"/>		

Setting up Email Event logging

Follow this procedure to enable logging using email notification:

Step	Procedure – Specify email logging.
1	Select the System Log link.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2).
3	Select the Email radio button to choose email log notification.

Continued on the next page

Setting up Email Event logging

Step	Procedure – Specify email logging.
4	Enter a valid e-mail address in the associated textbox.
5	Select Submit .
6	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)

Address <http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0> Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) [Network](#) [Print Path](#) [Status](#) **System Log** [Administration](#) [Help](#)

log1 [log2](#)

System Log ?

Log Name	<input type="text" value="log1"/>
Log Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Print Job Started <input type="checkbox"/> Printer Error
Log Destination	<input type="radio"/> None <input checked="" type="radio"/> Email <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. userid@domain.com) <input type="radio"/> UDP Syslog <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name) <input type="radio"/> TCP Connection Port: 4010

Submit Clear Changes

Specifying UDP Event logging

Follow this procedure to enable logging to a UDP Syslog program.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the System Log link. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The messages will be sent via UDP packets to the Syslog port (514) of the specified host.• It is up to the host program to listen to these messages for processing.• A syslog host program is necessary to use this method, such as, Kiwi Syslog Daemon or WinSysLog.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2).
3	Select the UDP Syslog radio button.
4	Enter a valid IP address or domain name.

Continued on the next page

Specifying UDP Event logging

Step	Procedure
5	Select Submit .
6	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Back Forward Stop Home Search Favorites Reload Mail Print New Tab Links

Address http://10.244.69.139/logpathConf.html?0 Go

[Home](#) [Network](#) [Print Path](#) [Status](#) **System Log** [Administration](#) [Help](#)

log1 [log2](#)

System Log ?

Log Name	<input type="text" value="log1"/>	
Log Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Print Job Started <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Printer Error	
Log Destination	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Email <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. userid@domain.com) <input checked="" type="radio"/> UDP Syslog <input type="text" value=""/> (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name) <input type="radio"/> TCP Connection Port: 4010	

Submit Clear Changes

Specifying TCP Event logging

Follow this procedure to send logging messages to a pre-existing IP connection made on the TCP port.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the System Log link.
2	Select the link for the log name you want to view or configure (the default choices are log1 or log2).
3	Select the TCP Connection radio button.

Continued on the next page

Specifying TCP Event logging

Step	Procedure
4	Select Submit .
5	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.

Address: <http://10.244.69.101/logpathConf.html?0> Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) | [Network](#) | [Print Path](#) | [Status](#) | **System Log** | [Administration](#) | [Help](#)

log1 [log2](#)

System Log

Log Name	<input type="text" value="log1"/>
Log Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Print Job Started <input type="checkbox"/> Printer Error
Log Destination	<input type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Email <input type="text" value="userid@domain.com"/> (e.g. userid@domain.com) <input type="radio"/> UDP Syslog <input type="text" value="192.168.0.1 or domain name"/> (e.g. 192.168.0.1 or domain name) <input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP Connection Port: 4010

Submit Clear Changes

Specifying TCP Event logging (continued)

Step	Procedure
6	<p>Use a host program such as Telnet to receive these TCP logging messages (Note: Other programs such as HyperTerminal are also used to monitor TCP connections). See below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Telnet Client: You can use a Telnet client connected to the TCP port (log1 = 4010, log2 = 4011) rather than the default Telnet port (23).• Telnet Session: If there is a Printer at IP address 192.37.23.155 (and you have configured log1 for TCP logging), then you could initiate a Telnet session from a DOS window of a PC by entering Telnet 192.37.23.155 4010.• Log Messages: All system log messages would then be displayed in that Telnet session window. (Note: This is a one way connection for logging only. Any input to the Printer on this connection is ignored.)

Using the Administration pages

The purpose of the Administration pages is to allow the User to upgrade, reboot, modify passwords and enter User-specified system information strings.

Using the System Information page

The System Information page displays the current system information and allows the User to change the system information (which appears on the Home page). See the [Using the Home page](#) for definitions.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Administration link.
2	Select the link for the System web page.

Continued on the next page

Using the System Information page (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	To change an attribute, type the new entry in one of these boxes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Label textbox• Location textbox• Contact textbox
4	Select the Submit button.
5	Login as a root User if you are so prompted. Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.

Address <http://10.244.69.101/adminConf.html> Go Links

Google G Go Bookmarks 1 blocked Settings

[Home](#) [Network](#) [Print Path](#) [Status](#) [System Log](#) **Administration** [Help](#)

System [Passwords](#) [Reboot](#)

System Information

Label	FRG0002dca
Location	
Contact	

Submit Clear Changes

Changing the Root Password

The Passwords page allows the User to change the passwords needed to login as a User. Changes to all settings require a login. (**Note:** However, these changes are only protected by password after the password has been set. Users can only be added or removed using Telnet commands.)

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Administration link.
2	Select the Passwords link to get to the Password web page.
3	Enter the current password in the Root Password Old textbox or leave it blank if no password has been previously set.
4	Enter the new password in the Root Password New textbox or leave it blank if you want to remove the old password.
5	Re-enter the new password in the Root Password Confirm textbox or leave it blank if you want to remove the old password.
6	Select the Submit button.
7	Log in as a root User (using the password) if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)

Using the Reboot pages

Rebooting the restarts the complete Printer, which includes the Print Server.

Rebooting the Printer

The Reboot page allows the User to reboot or reset the Printer and/or enter the upgrade mode.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Administration link.
2	Log in as a root User (using the password) if you are so prompted. (Note: Any change of setting will only be accepted after you have successfully logged in.)
3	Select the Reboot link.

Continued on the next page

Rebooting the Printer

Step	Procedure
4	Select the Reboot button.
5	Click Yes when prompted.
6	Wait for the Printer to reboot and display the home page. See the Reviewing the Home Page display.

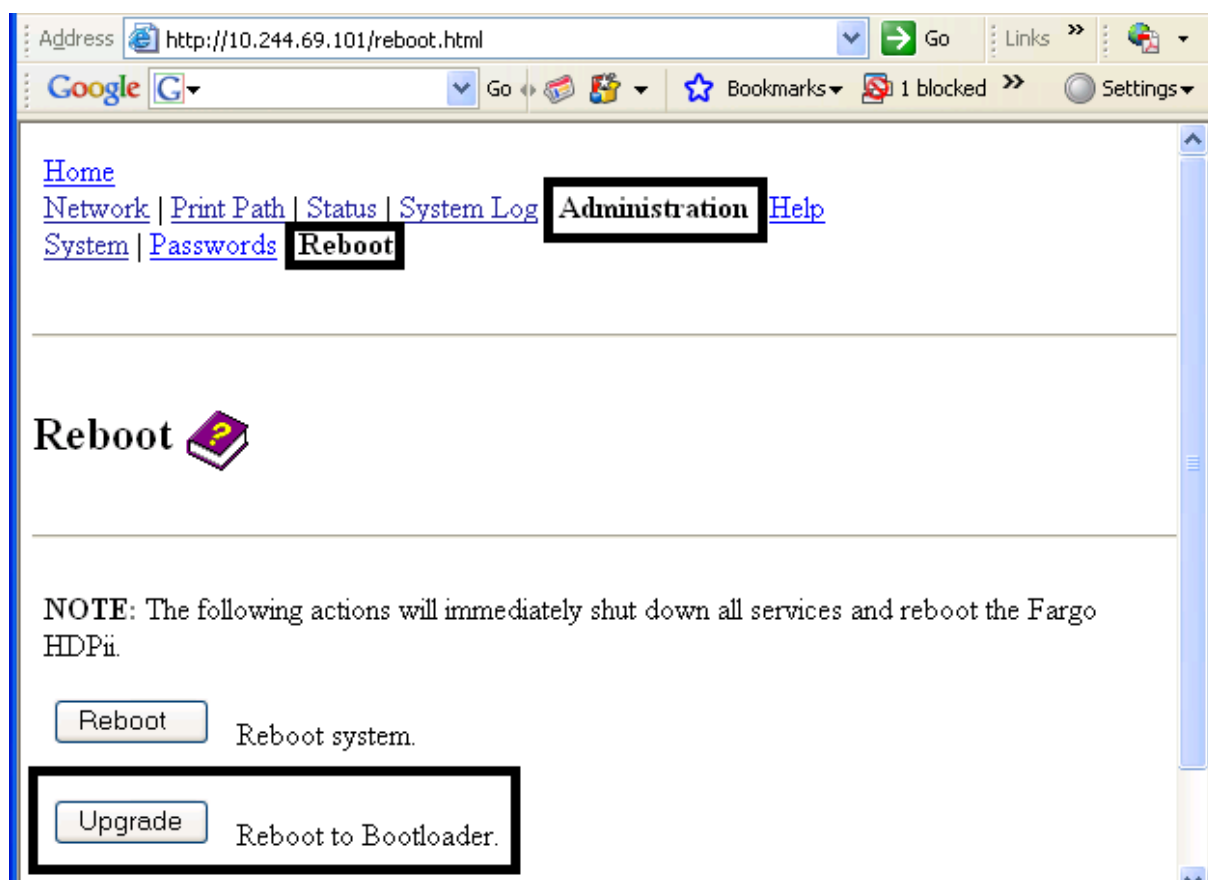


Upgrading the Main Firmware

The Upgrade page allows the User to upload new Firmware to the Printer. For the Printer/encoder, this Upgrade page provides for upgrading the main Printer Firmware which includes the Print Server Firmware.

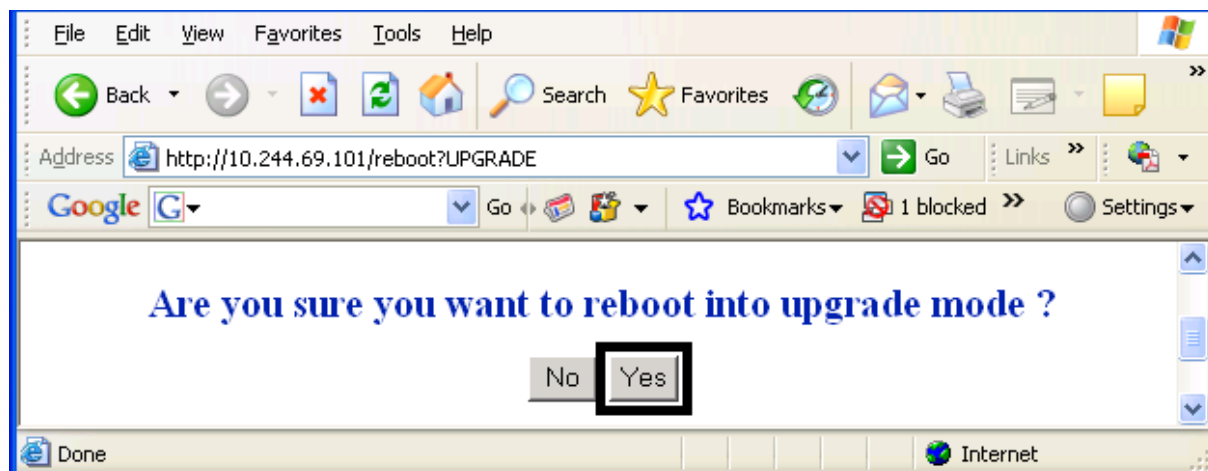
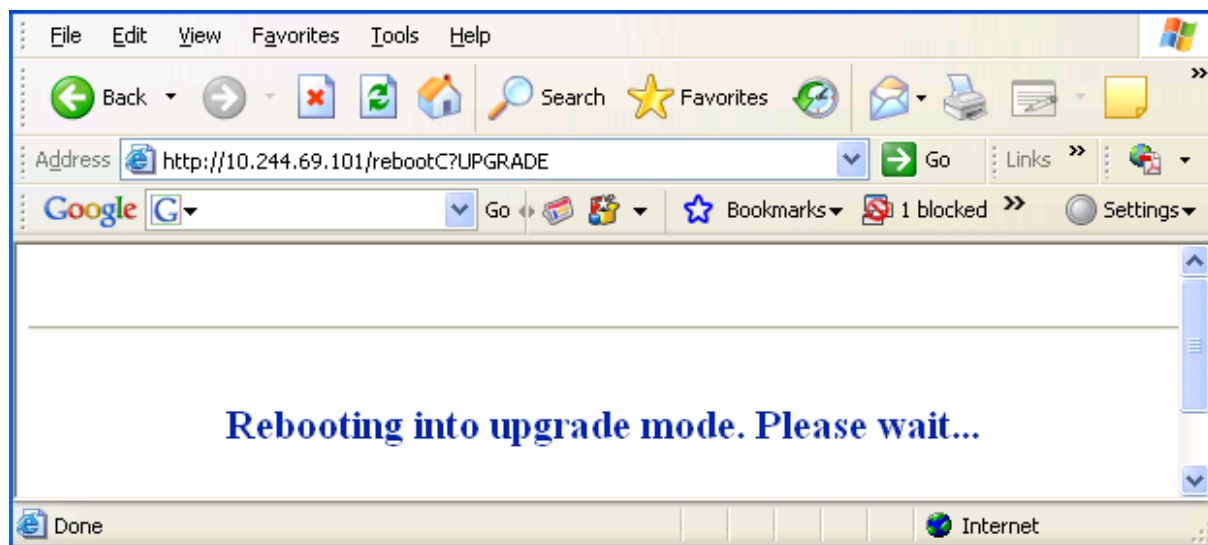
It is only available to the after the Printer has been rebooted into the upgrade mode.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Administration link.
2	Go to Step 7 if the Upgrade link is shown.
3	Select the Reboot link if the Upgrade link is not shown.



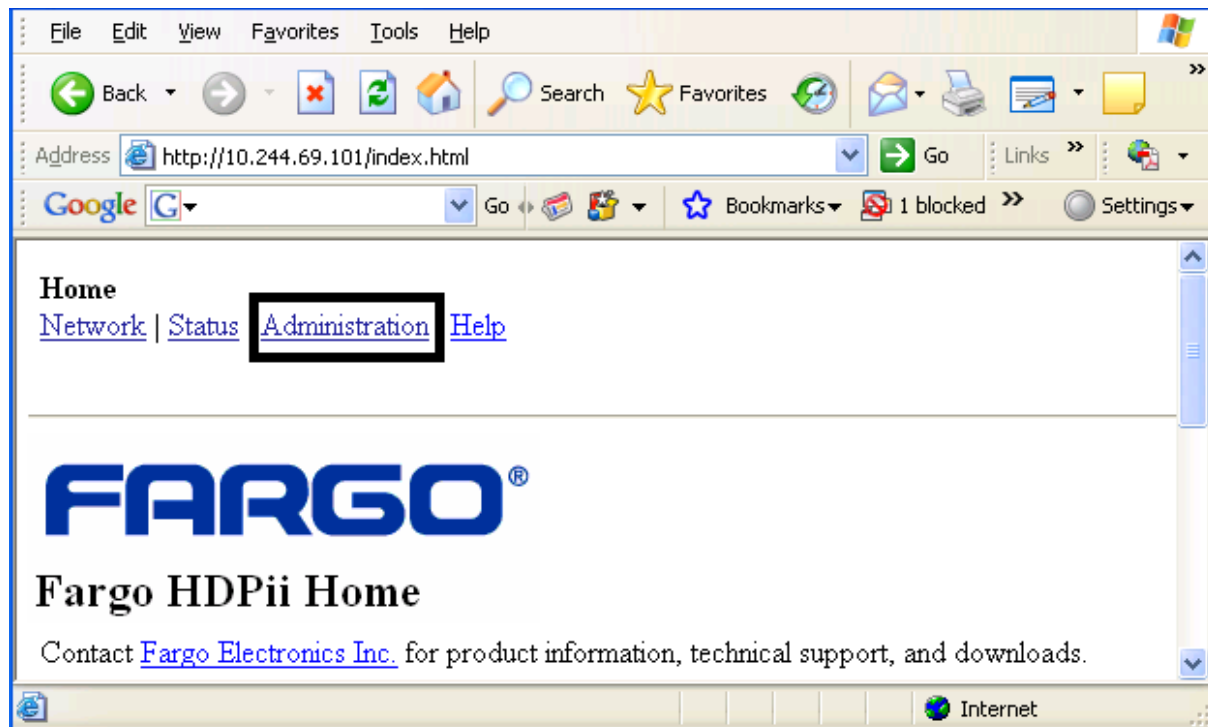
Upgrading the Main Firmware (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	Select the Upgrade button to get Printer into the upgrade mode.
5	Select the Yes button and wait for reboot, as shown below in Displays A and B.

Display A – Rebooting into the Upgrade Mode**Display B – Waiting for the Upgrade Mode**

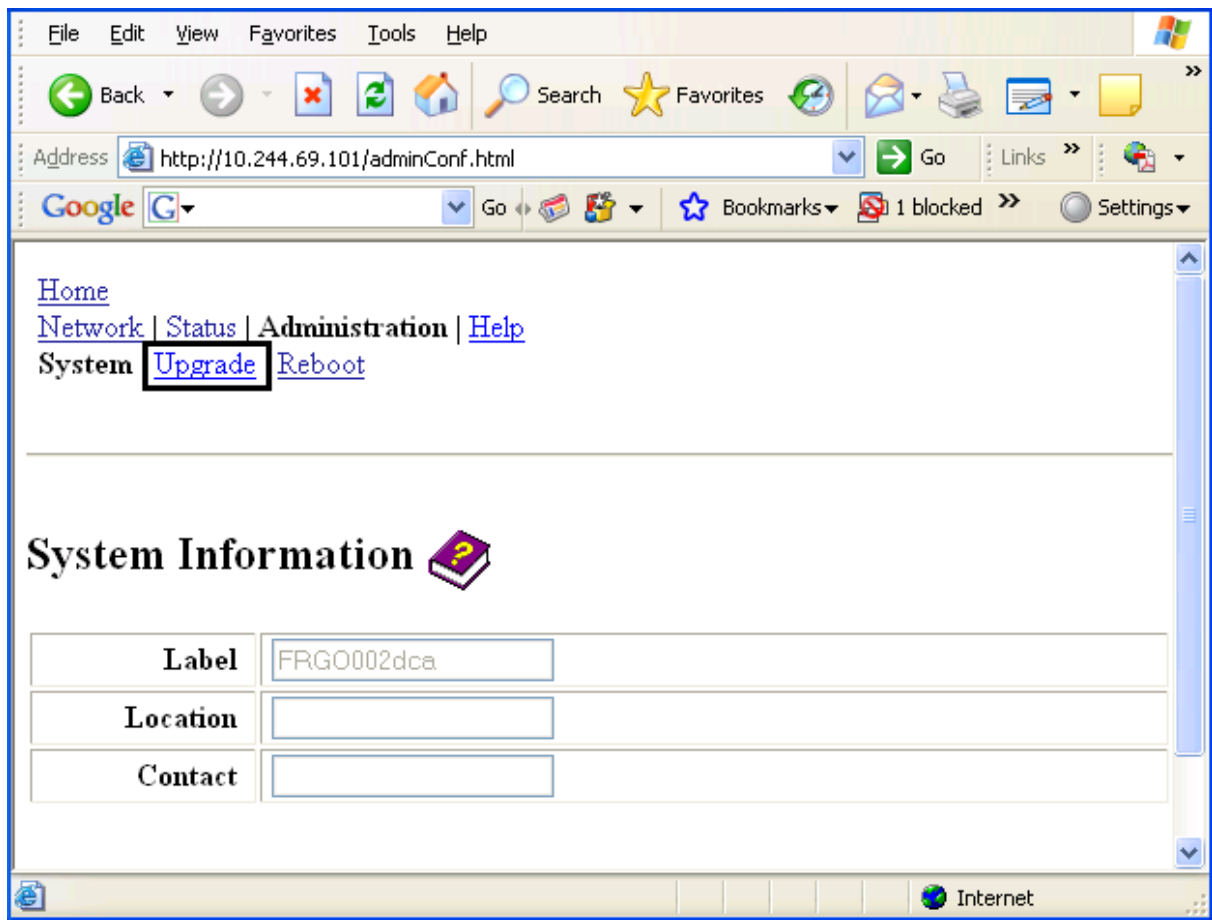
Upgrading the Main Firmware (continued)

Step	Procedure
6	Select Administration when the Home page appears. See Display A below.
7	Select Upgrade to get to the upgrade page. See Display B below.

Display A – Selecting Administration

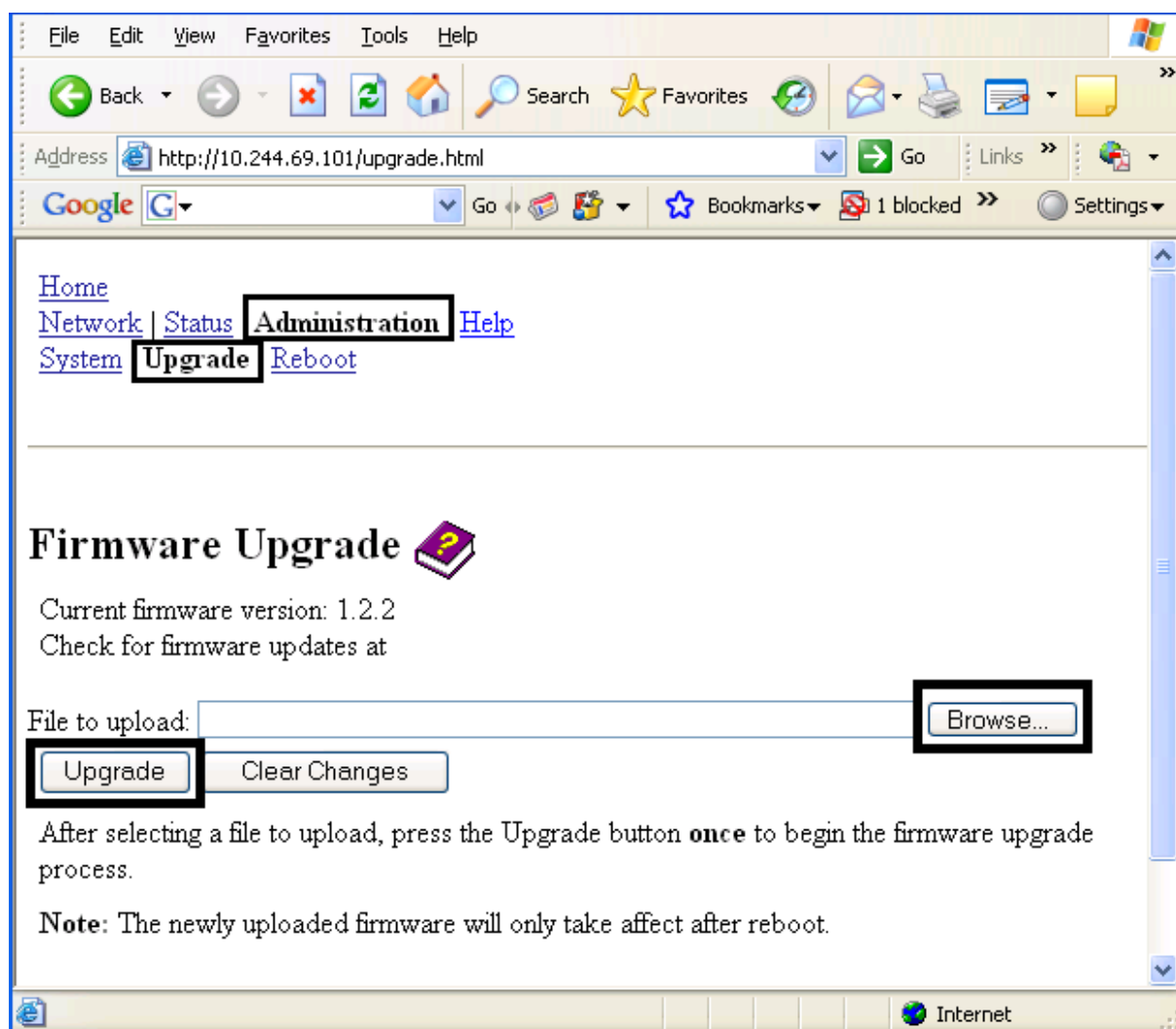
Upgrading the Main Firmware (continued)

Display B – Selecting Upgrade



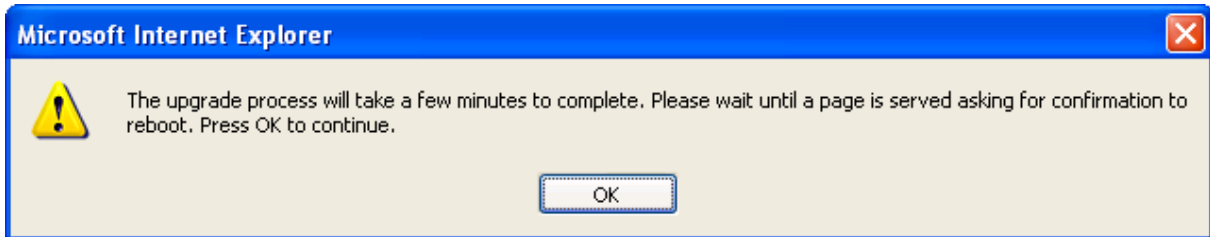
Upgrading the Main Firmware (continued)

Step	Procedure
8	Select the Browse button. See Display A below.
9	Navigate to and select the appropriate file to upload.
10	Select the Upgrade button to start the Firmware upload. See Display A below.
11	Select Reboot when requested. See Display B below.

Display A – Selecting the Browse and Upgrade buttons.

Upgrading the Main Firmware (continued)

Display B – Continuing to reboot

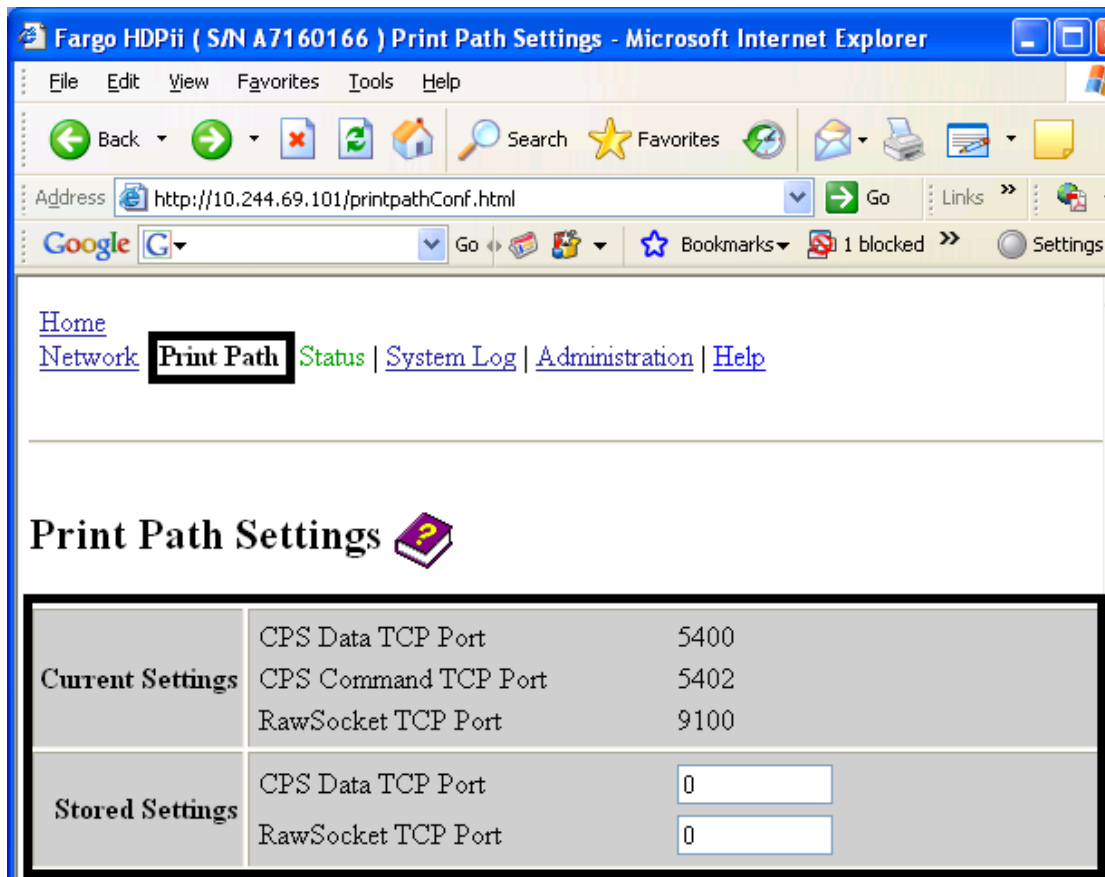


Using the Print Path page

The purpose of the Print Path page is to allow the User to view or change the TCP port numbers used to communicate to the printer.

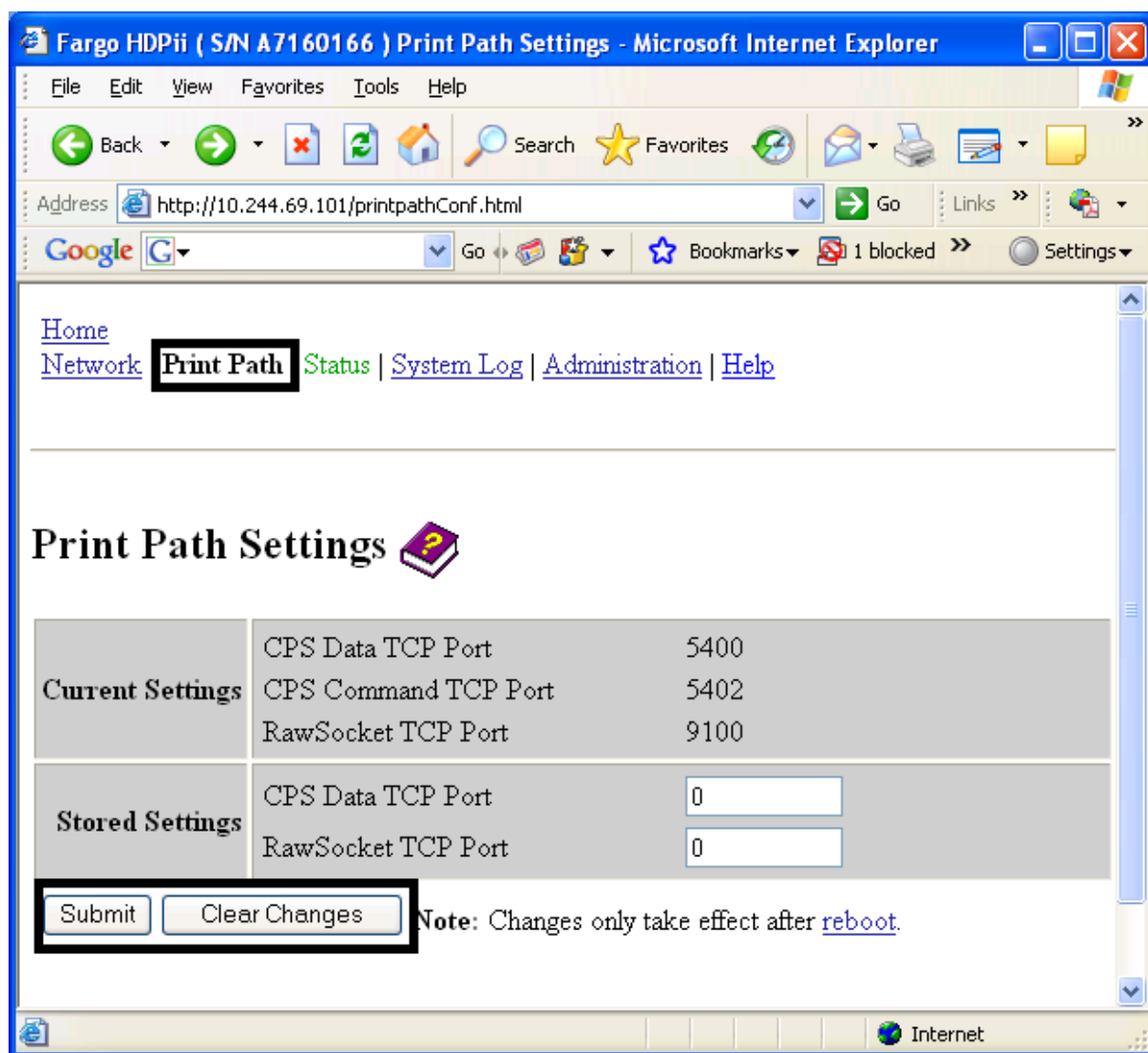
- If these settings are left to the default entry of 0 then the default ports of 9100, 5400 and 5402 will be used for the **RawSocket TCP Port**, the **CPS Data TCP Port** and the **CPS Command TCP Port** respectively.
- The **CPS Command TCP Port** is dependent on the setting of the **CPS Data TCP Port** and always two units higher.

Step	Procedure
1	Select the Print Path link.
2	View the active configuration of the printer in the Current Settings area on this page.
3	New port numbers may be entered into the Stored Settings area in the text boxes provided on this page.



Using the Print Path page (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	Select the Submit button to save these changes to stored settings in the memory of the Printer. (Note: These settings will not be lost if the power is removed from the Printer.)
5	Select the Clear Changes button to delete these changes from this page.



Using the Help page

The Help page displays the **Help** information.

Step	Procedure
1	Open this web page at the appropriate location by clicking on the Help book icon at the top of each page. See previous page.
2	Review the web interface for the Ethernet-enabled Printer.

Additional Procedures

Accessing the Ethernet Status LEDs

The Ethernet Status LEDs can be found on the back of Printers.

Reviewing the LED Table

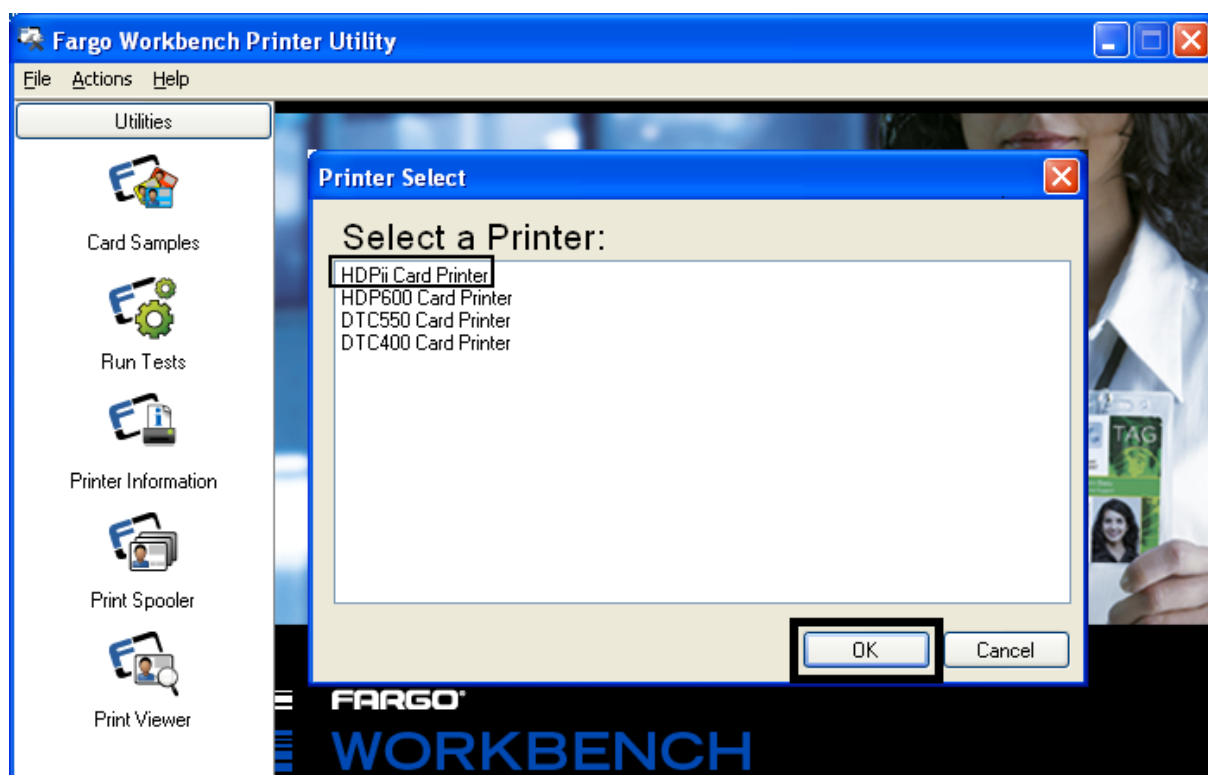
LED	Flash Rate	Indicates
Green LED (Left)	On	The Network link is present.
	Off	The Network link is not present.
Amber LED (Right)	Off	There is NO network traffic to this IP address.
	Blinking	There is Network traffic to this IP address.

Upgrading the Main Firmware with the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility

The Main Printer Firmware upgrades are done with the same procedure as the USB-connected Printer.

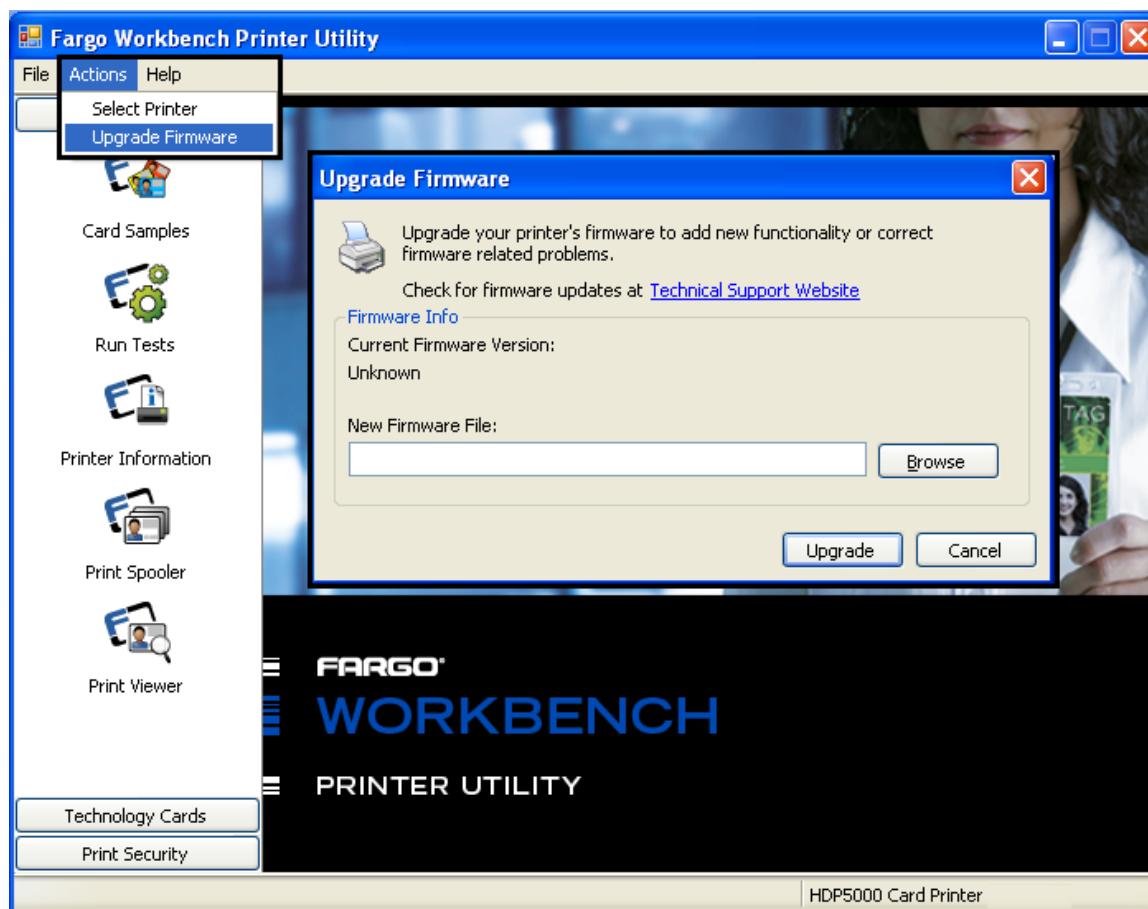
- The PC doing the upgrade must have a Driver installed for the Fargo Printer to be upgraded.
- Alternatively, a User can upgrade the Main Printer Firmware by using the Upgrade web page.

Step	Procedure
1	Run the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility by selecting from the start menu the following: Start -> Programs -> Fargo -> Fargo Workbench Printer Utility -> Fargo Workbench
2	Click on Actions > Select Printer in the Menu Bar to bring up the Printer Select dialog, as shown below.



Upgrading the Main Firmware with the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Access the Upgrade Firmware window from the Actions Menu, as shown below.
4	Select the New Firmware File by clicking Browse and selecting the Firmware file from the appropriate folder.
5	Begin the upgrade by clicking Upgrade , as shown below. Refer to the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility User Guide at this time.



Restoring the Factory Settings for Ethernet

There may be times when you are unable to use the current configuration of the Ethernet interface. (**Note:** This could be because you have lost the password for your Printer or you just cannot get it to work properly.)

Resetting the settings

The has a menu selection that allows the User names and passwords to revert to default. To reset these settings, select:

Menu: Setup Printer : Network Settings : Reset Passwords.

Changing the LCD Network Settings

The Printer/encoder will display new menu entries when (a) the Ethernet option is installed and (b) the Printer has established communications to a host device.

- You can use these procedures to change network settings by using the new LCD menus.

Accessing the Network Setup Menu

Step	Procedure
1	Apply power to the Printer.
2	Ensure that the Printer is connected to your network.
3	Wait up to one (1) minute to allow the Printer to configure the IP address.
4	Select Options on the LCD.
5	Select Menu on the LCD.
6	Select the Next button on the LCD until the Network Settings menu entry appears.
7	Press Select when Network Settings appears on the LCD.

Changing the DHCP Setting

Step	Procedure
1	See the Accessing the Network Setup Menu procedure to access the Network Settings menu : Options -> MENU -> Next -> Network Settings
2	Select Next on the LCD to view the DHCP menu entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DHCP Enabled indicates that the automatic IP assignment is selected. DHCP Disabled indicates that the static IP assignment is selected.
3	Press the Change button to switch the DHCP setting.
4	If you change the setting, you will be prompted to reboot the Printer.

Changing the ANEG setting

The ANEG status indicates the current setting of the network configuration of the Ethernet interface.

- This value can be set explicitly by the User to force the Ethernet interface configuration in cases where auto negotiation fails.
- Failure of the automatic network configuration can cause slow data transmission, longer print times or network connection problems.

Follow the procedure provided below.

Step	Procedure
1	See the Accessing the Network Setup Menu procedure to access the Network Settings menu (Options ->Menu -> Next -> Network Settings).
2	Select Next on the LCD to view the ANEG: menu entry.
3	Press the Change button to change the auto negotiation setting for the Printer, which will rotate between the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ANEG: AUTO: Allows the auto negotiation between the Printer and the host Ethernet interface. ANEG: Full Dup: Forces the full duplex communications between the Printer and the host Ethernet interface. ANEG: Half Dup: Forces the half duplex communications between the Printer and the host Ethernet interface.
4	If you change the setting, you will be prompted to reboot the Printer.

Saving addresses

Step	Procedure.
1	See the Accessing the Network Setup Menu procedure to access the Network Settings menu: Options -> MENU -> Next -> Network Settings
2	Select Next on the LCD to view the Save Addresses menu entry.
3	Press the Select button to save the current network settings (IP address, GW, SN Mask) as the stored settings which will be used when automatic address assignment using DHCP is disabled.





Resetting Passwords

Step	Procedure
1	See the Accessing the Network Setup Menu procedure to access the Network Settings menu: Options -> Menu -> Next -> Network Settings
2	Select Next on the LCD to view the Reset Passwords menu entry.
3	Press the Select button to reset the User passwords to the default settings of empty strings. (Note: This can be used when the passwords are not known.)

Accessing the IP Address

Follow this procedure:

Step	Process
1	Press Info in Display A (below) to continue with the procedure.
2	Press Next several times to access Display C (IP:).
3	Press Next one more time, and the IP: address LCD screen will appear. See Display D as an example.
4	Your IP address is identified in the final LCD screen. You have completed the procedure.

Display A – Printer Ready (first step)	Display B – (second step)
	
Display C – IP: (third step)	Display D – IP: Address (fourth step)
	

Ethernet Printer Troubleshooting Procedures

Troubleshooting procedures

If you are having trouble connecting to your Ethernet Printer or printing to it, you should go through each of the following procedures.

Step	Procedure
1	Follow the Verifying the Printer Connection procedure on the next page.
2	Follow the Verifying the Printer IP address procedure on the next page.
3	Follow the Verifying that your PC can access the Printer using the ping command procedure.
4	Verify that you are choosing the correct Printer Driver. (Note: The Driver must match the model of the Printer.)
5	Verify that the port configuration of the PC Printer Driver is set to communicate to the Printer over the correct IP address. See Frequently-asked Questions .
6	Follow the Printing a test page procedure.

Verifying the Printer Connection

Step	Procedure
1	Ensure that your Printer has a valid network connection.
2	Verify that the has the green LED on solidly and the amber LED is flashing with network activity.
3	If the LEDs do not indicate connection, verify the network connection with another device.
4	If the connection is OK, then something may be wrong with the Ethernet option installation. See the Ethernet Setup and Printer Driver Installation procedure.

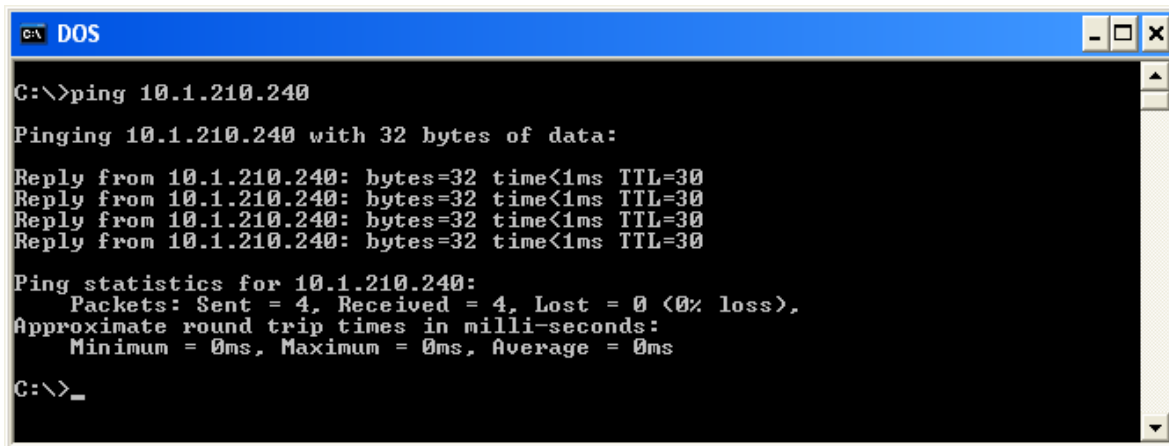
Verifying the Printer IP address

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Check the LCD for a valid IP address (0.0.0.0 is not valid).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the IP address is valid go to step 4.• If the IP address is not valid go to step 2.
2	<p>If your network is using DHCP, then verify that the Printer has not been configured to use a static address (unless you have a known unused static IP address assigned to this Printer).</p>
3	<p>If you are using a static IP address, verify that there is no other device using the same address by removing your Fargo Printer and ping to the desired address.</p> <p>If any device responds, then you must find a different available IP address.</p>
4	<p>If the Printer reports an IP address, verify that it matches subnet of the network where it is connected.</p> <p>If your Printer has DHPC disabled, then the static IP address may have been previously set for a different subnet.</p>

Verifying that your PC can access the Printer using the ping command

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Follow these instructions to issue a ping command to the Printer:</p> <p>At a DOS prompt, enter ping [IP Address]</p> <p>Example: C:\>ping 210.1.10.240</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the ping response is successful, move on to the next troubleshooting procedure. See Display A below. • If the ping response is not successful, continue to step 2 of this procedure. See Display B below.

Display A - Example of sending a ping to the Printer with a successful response



```

C:\>ping 10.1.210.240

Pinging 10.1.210.240 with 32 bytes of data:

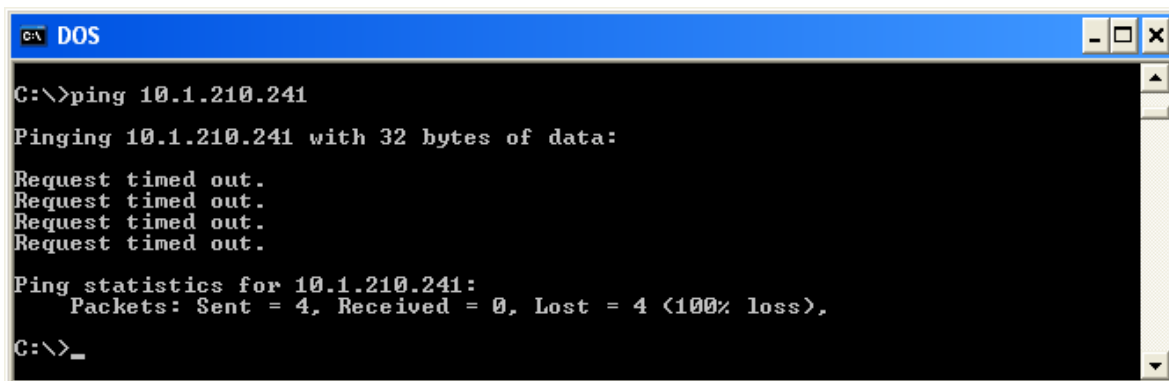
Reply from 10.1.210.240: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=30
Reply from 10.1.210.240: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=30
Reply from 10.1.210.240: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=30
Reply from 10.1.210.240: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=30

Ping statistics for 10.1.210.240:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\>_

```

Display B - Example of ping timeout to an invalid IP address



```

C:\>ping 10.1.210.241

Pinging 10.1.210.241 with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 10.1.210.241:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),

C:\>_

```

**Verifying that your PC can access the Printer using the ping command
(continued)**

Step	Procedure
2	Verify that the PC and the Printer are connected to the same network.
3	<p>You may be on different subnets of your network and some of the network settings for the Printer are not correct. See your network administrator about this.</p> <p>(Note: The subnet mask must be the same as other devices on the network, and that the unique IP address is part of the network specified by the subnet mask.)</p>

Printing a test page

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Try printing a test page from the Printer Driver properties window.</p> <p>See Frequently-asked Questions.</p>
2	<p>If you cannot print a test page, then consider the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• There may be an error at the Printer.• There may be a job in the Windows print queue which has stalled.• The Printer may be paused or set to operate offline in the Windows print queue.

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions

Question	Answer
How do I know if my Printer has the Ethernet option installed?	All models come with Ethernet installed as standard equipment.
What PC operating systems work with my Ethernet Printer?	The Windows 2000/ XP / Server 2003 operating systems work with your Ethernet Printer.
How do I connect my Printer to my network?	You can connect from the RJ45 network connection on the back of your Printer to an available connection on your network (not directly to your PC). You can use a good CAT-5 or better cable to make this connection.
How can I find the MAC address of my Ethernet Printer?	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you know the IP address of your Printer, you can see the MAC address on the home web page of the Print Server. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you do not know the IP address or the Printer does not work with a usable IP address, then the MAC Address can be found by two methods. These are:<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The MAC address is listed in the data printed on the "Printer Settings" self-test card.2. The Fargo IP-Tracer software tool on the driver CD can be used to find the MAC address of the printer. (Note: This can be installed and used to locate all the Fargo compatible Printers on your network.)

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions (continued)

Question	Answer
How can I find the IP address of my Ethernet Printer?	You can find it in the LCD of the Printer if the Ethernet option is functioning properly. Select Info , then select Next several times until the IP address is shown.
Can I print from my PC to multiple Ethernet Printers?	Yes. Use the Windows “Add Printer Wizard” to create a new printer instance for the additional printer. This may require adding a new “Remote TCP/IP Card Printer Port” configured to communicate to the new printer at the proper IP address. See the appropriate Windows documentation for additional help.
Can multiple PC’s print to my Ethernet Printer?	Yes. Each PC must install the Printer Driver software for the specific Fargo Ethernet-enabled Printer and connect to the intended Printer, using the correct IP address.
Can I print from my PC to an Ethernet Printer on a different network segment?	Yes. If you know the IP address of the Printer on any segment of your network, you will be able to print to it.
Can I use Fargo IP-Tracer to locate Printers on a different network segment?	No. The IP-Tracer can only locate Fargo-compatible Printers located in the same network segment (as the PC running IP-Tracer).

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions (continued)

Question	Answer
How do I upgrade the Printer Firmware in my Ethernet-enabled Printer?	<p>Follow this procedure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Run the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility from the start menu: Go to the Start -> Programs -> Fargo -> Fargo Workbench Printer Utility -> Fargo Workbench. 2. Select the Fargo Printer to upgrade from the drop-down box. 3. Go to the Firmware Updates tab. 4. If you need to download the update file from the Internet, select the Download Firmware button. 5. Choose the update file with the Select Firmware button. 6. Put your Printer into the upgrade mode. See the instructions for your specific Fargo Printer. 7. Select the Send Firmware button.
How do I upgrade the Print Server Firmware for my Printer?	<p>Since the Print Server is integrated into the main print Firmware on the Printer, there is not a separate Firmware upgrade for the Printer Server. (Note: Therefore, the upgrades are done with the main Printer Firmware.)</p>
What is the default User name and password for the Printer?	<p>The default passwords are blank (e.g., an empty string).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The default Users are as follows: root as the administrative User and guest as a non-administrative User. • The supports two (2) Users.

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions (continued)

Question	Answer
What if I lose the password for my Printer or it is not accepted?	The has a menu selection that allows the User names and passwords to revert to default: Options > Menu > Network Settings > Reset Passwords
What do I do if the IP address of my Printer is being changed by my network?	Follow this procedure: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Contact your network administrator. Ask that your current IP address be reserved or ask that they provide a specific IP address that you can use to configure the Ethernet interface. OR2. Choose an IP address that you know will not be used by any other PC, server or network device. Use those settings to configure your Printer with static network settings. (Caution: Do not do this unless you know that these settings will always be available.)

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions (continued)

Question	Answer
How do I reconfigure my PC Printer Driver to connect to a different Printer or different IP address?	<p>Use the Windows “Add Printer Wizard” to create a printer instance to communicate to the printer at the new IP address.</p> <p>This may require adding a new “Remote TCP/IP Card Printer Port” configured to communicate to the printer at the proper IP address.</p> <p>See the appropriate Windows documentation for additional help.</p>
How can I verify/change what IP address my installed Printer Driver is expecting to find my Printer?	<p>Follow this procedure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open the Printer Driver properties window.2. Select Start -> Settings -> Printers and Faxes -> [your Printer Driver] -> Properties.3. From the Ports tab, select Configure Port. The Host name will indicate IP address of the connected Printer. (Note: If this does not match your Printer’s IP address, you can change it from this window.)4. Enter the correct IP address.5. Select OK.6. Select Apply.7. Select Close.

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions (continued)

Question	Answer
How do I configure my Printer's IP settings?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> By default, the Printer is configured for dynamic IP address assignment. That is, it will try to get its IP address and other settings from your network. If it is given valid network settings, it will use them. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can choose to configure the Printer, using a static IP address and network settings. (Note: This can be entered using the Network web page of the Printer or the Fargo IP Tracer program.)
How do I choose a static IP address for my Ethernet Printer?	<p>You can use the web pages if you know the current IP address. See the <u>Accessing the Home Page</u> procedure.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>You can use Fargo IP-Tracer which allows you to find Fargo-compatible Printers and specify their addresses.</p> <p>The also allows you to save the current network settings as static settings via the LCD menu (Options: Menu: Network Settings: Save Addresses).</p> <p>(Note: You can save static addresses. However, they are not used until you reconfigure the Printer to use those static addresses and reboot the Printer.)</p>
How do I set the Printer to work with a static IP address?	<p>You can use the web pages if you know the current IP address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Use the following IP address button on the Network web page. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use Fargo IP-Tracer, which allows you to find Fargo compatible Printers and specify their addresses. <p>The also allows you to use the LCD menus to save the current IP addresses as static (see above) and then switch DHCP (dynamic IP address selection) to DISABLED:</p> <p>Options: Menu : Network Settings: DHCP: Change</p>

Continued on the next page

Reviewing Frequently-asked Questions

Question	Answer
What do the LEDs by the Ethernet connection on the back of the Printer indicate?	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• On the Printer: The green LED indicates a valid Ethernet connection. The amber LED indicates network activity.
How do I print a test page from Windows to verify the Ethernet configuration of the Printer and Printer Driver?	<p>Follow this procedure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open the Printer Driver properties window.2. Select Start -> Settings -> Printers and Faxes -> [your Printer Driver name (e.g., Card Printer)] -> Properties.3. Ensure that the printing preferences are set correctly for the Ribbon installed in your Printer. Then select the Print Test Page button.

Glossary of Terms

Term	Purpose
MAC (Media Access Control)	The unique numeric value address associated with a network device that gives the device a unique identity. This address is assigned by the device manufacturer to ensure its uniqueness.
TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)	The Network protocol that allows reliable network communications between devices.
IP (Internet Protocol)	The Network protocol that identifies devices and messages by addresses so that communications can occur between devices on different local networks.
TCP/IP	Network communications using TCP and IP protocols.
ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol)	The Basic message protocol for the internet.
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)	The protocol used by a network to automatically assign network settings to connected devices so that they will work together.
DNS (Domain Name System)	Defines the Network protocol that allows devices to find IP addresses from a network name server.
DNS Server Address	This is the address of the server that provides the translation from a descriptive name to an IP address.
DNS Domain Suffix	This is the suffix to be added to the domain name to make a complete name.



Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Purpose
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	This is protocol for the network management services. This protocol provides a means for network compliant devices, called agents, to store data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and return this data to the SNMP requesters.
MIB (Management Information Base)	A formal description of the way an agent can be accessed using SNMP and the functions that can be managed.
Network Settings	The basic network parameters needed to configure the network interface. (Note: These include the IP Address, the Subnet Mask, the Default Gateway, the DNS Server Address and the DNS Domain Suffix.)
IP addresses	Specifies the current IP addresses that are 32-bit values that are normally expresses in dotted-quad format. (Note: This address must not be the same as another device on the same local network.)
Subnet mask	Specifies a 32-bit value that routers use to send a message to the correct subnet.
Default gateway	Specifies the address of the router (in a network using subnets) that forwards traffic to a destination outside of the subnet of the transmitting device.
Telnet	This is a common terminal emulation program that allows a User to send commands to a TCP/IP connected device and receive the responses.
UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	Defines a protocol for sending and receiving messages on a network.
Syslog	The standard method for logging system events.
Root User	A User with administrative rights to change any Printer settings.
Guest User	A User without rights to change Printer settings.
Ping	A common utility or command that sends a message to network devices asking for a return message. (Note: This is used to diagnose if the device is on the network or to troubleshoot the connection.)

Section 7: Printer Adjustments

The purpose of this section is to provide the User with specific information on Printer adjustment procedures.

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Important! Card Printers require highly specialized Print Ribbons to function properly. To maximize Printer life, reliability, printed card quality and durability, you must use only Certified Supplies. For this reason, your Fargo warranty is void, where not prohibited by law, if you use non-Certified Supplies. To order additional materials, please contact your authorized reseller.

Printing on Alternate Card Stocks

Selecting the Right Cards and optimizing the Print Process

In order to optimize the Card Printer's capabilities for cards with hard-to-print surfaces, we recommend evaluating the card stock selection before installation of the Printer.

The variability in cards based on:

- **Different surface textures and different sources of raw materials:** This may require different Film transfer parameters.
- **Varied methods of assembling IC smart cards and proximity cards:** These particular adhesives used to glue a smart chip to a plastic card may react differently to a Transfer Roller's pressure and temperature.
- **Cleanliness of card stock:** The process does not eliminate the need to use clean card stock. The best-looking card always starts with the cleanest card surface. Dirt and debris on a card can show up as blemishes on the card surface and may reduce the life of the image itself.

Selecting the Appropriate Printer Driver settings

You have these card selections (to choose from):

- Fargo UltraCard III (Default Card Type)
- Fargo Ultracard
- HID ISO Prox – Standard (13xx)
- HID ISO Prox – Composite (15xx)
- HID Identity – Standard (IDx20A)
- HID Identity – Composite (HTx20E)
- HID iCLASS – Standard (20xx)
- HID iCLASS – Composite (21xx)
- HID FlexSmart –Standard (14x0)
- HID FlexSmart –Composite (14x6)
- HID FlexSmart Prox – Std (14x1)
- HID FlexSmart Prox – Comp (14x7)
- Indala FlexISO – Standard (FPIISO)
- Indala FLexISO XT-Composite (FPIXT)
- Custom 1
- Custom 2

In addition, you have these selections (to choose from):

- **Defaults:** The Printer Driver software has default Transfer Temperature and Dwell Time settings that deliver the best transfer for these card types. These defaults automatically configure based on the card type, Ribbon type and whether printing single- or dual-sided.
- **Card Type Selection:** Before printing, if using these standard Fargo card types, check to make sure that the appropriate card type option selected from the Card tab of the Printer Driver:
- **Proper Settings:** It is very important to note that not all card types will be accommodated by these default settings. In some cases, experimentation may be needed to find the proper settings.

Selecting the Appropriate Printer Driver settings

For the cases where custom settings are required, the Printer Driver's Card Type option also includes **Custom 1 and Custom 2** options.

- **Settings:** These settings allow designating a unique Card Type name, which then saves custom Image Transfer settings.
- **Custom 1:** For example, Custom 1 could be changed to read as My Cards. Custom transfer settings would then be available whenever this Card Type option is selected and would be saved each time the Printer Driver setup window is closed.
- **Custom Card stock:** To determine the proper settings for custom card stock, Fargo recommends the Tape adhesion Test.

Conducting the Tape Adhesion Test

It is important to conduct tape adhesion tests because Fargo cannot be certain which transfer temperature and Dwell Time will work best (when printing cards other than UltraCard III). (**Note:** The optimal transfer settings may vary from card type to card type.)



Caution: Inadequate time and temperature could produce cards that are more vulnerable to accelerated wear and dye migration. Use sufficient time and temperature to transfer Film to the card to ensure a long lasting, durable card.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Test the adhesion quality of the Film to the card by printing sample cards and completing an adhesive tape test.</p> <p>(Note: The Institute for Interconnecting and Packaging Electronic Circuits (IPC) outlines a pressure sensitive tape test that evaluates adhesion quality. Refer to their IPC-TM-650-3.7.1D test Guide, Section 3.7, Number 1.)</p>
2	Select the UltraCard IIIs-Glossy PVC if the card is glossy and print a test card.
3	<p>a. Apply a strip of ½ (12mm) wide Scotch-type clear adhesive tape (such as 3M brand 600), at least 2 (50mm) long, firmly across the surface of the card, pressing out all air bubbles with a fingertip.</p> <p>b. Remove the tape by smoothly and rapidly (approximately 2 inches/second (50mm/sec)) pulling it up at a perpendicular (90 degree) angle to the card.</p> <p>(Note: The IPC recommends a minimum of three tests for each card type evaluation.)</p>

Continued on the next page

Conducting the Tape adhesion Test (continued)

See the previous page.



Conducting the Tape adhesion Test (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	<p>Visually examine the card and the strip of tape pulled from the card, to see if any portion of the Film was removed from the card.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If any residue (e.g., oil or grease from fingertips) is present on the card surface, the evaluation results may be affected. • If the printed, transferred Film particles (a) pull away from the card and (b) adhere to the tape, this indicates that inadequate adhesion of the Film to the card. Increased heat and Dwell Times are necessary to resolve this problem. <p>Samples 1, 2 and 3 show a representation of the adhesion level you can expect.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Result 1: Sample 1 shows a significant transfer to the tape and is an absolute failure. • Result 2: Sample 2 shows that <u>very slight</u> transfer to the tape can be acceptable without sacrificing overall image durability on matte finish cards. • Result 3: Sample 3 shows no transfer to the Tape and is an Absolute Pass.
5	<p>If the tape test indicates inadequate adhesion, increase the heat setting by 5 degrees, print another card and try the tape test again.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Once the temperature has been increased 4 times (20 degrees), reset temperature to default and increase the Dwell Time by .5 second. • Repeat this process until adequate adhesion is achieved. • Ensure that the cards (in use) have a surface roughness (Ra) of 60 micro inches or less. <p>This information should be available from the card manufacturer.</p>

Printer Driver Options

Installing Printer Driver Updates

Occasionally, new Printer Driver versions are released which have new or updated features.

- Before installing an updated Printer Driver version, always delete the existing Printer Driver version from the system.
- To do this, select Start, Programs and point to the Fargo folder.
- Then, select the **Uninstall Printer Driver** icon for the specific Printer model (as shown here).

Step	Procedure
1	Once the existing Printer Driver is deleted, the updated version can be installed. (Note: The best way to get Printer Driver updates is to download them from the Fargo website.)
2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> To download the latest Printer Driver version, click on the Printer Driver's highlighted .exe file name on the web site. You will then be prompted to Save this program to disk. Fargo's downloadable Printer Driver files have names ending in .exe and are self-extracting Zip archives. (Note: A Zip archive is a package, containing one or more files. It has been zipped to make it smaller and provide easy downloading of numerous files simultaneously. An archive that is self-extracting is capable of unzipping itself.) Click OK, then choose the folder in which you would like to save the Printer Driver file. (Note: You may want to save it in an empty folder to prevent mingling its files with others already on the computer.) Once the file has completely downloaded to the computer, unzip the contents of the file by simply double-clicking on it. (Note: The archive will unzip itself, revealing its contents as a new list of files within the folder.)
3	To install, click the Start button, point to Settings and select Printers .
4	Double-click on the Add Printer icon.

Continued on the next page

Installing Printer Driver Updates

Step	Procedure
5	Follow the on-screen instructions to begin installation. See <u>Printer Driver Installation</u> . (Note: When prompted, click on the Have Disk button; the Install From Disk window will appear.)
6	Click on Browse , navigate to the folder containing the Printer Driver files you just downloaded and unzipped and click on OK . Click on OK again to close the Install From Disk window and then click on NEXT .
7	Follow the remainder of the on-screen instructions to complete installation. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When prompted, do not have Windows print a test print.• This is because you most likely performed a Printer self test while you were setting up the Printer.• Once installed, the Card Printer icon will appear in the Printer's folder.

Setting Up the Printer Driver

Once the appropriate Printer Driver for the computer has been installed, you will need to set the Driver up with the proper print options. To open the Printer Driver setup window, please refer to the following steps for the specific operating system:

Setting up Windows 2000/XP/2003

Step	Procedure
1	Click the Start button, point to Settings and select Printers .
2	Click on the icon with the right mouse button. Select Printing Preferences... if using Windows 2000/XP/2003. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you would like to permanently save the Printer Driver settings so you will not need to change them again, do so through the main Printer Driver setup window described above.• Although most applications do allow you to change these same Printer Driver options from their own Print screens, the settings may not be permanently saved.
3	To change or verify the appropriate Printer Driver options for the print job, please refer to the topics describing each of the Printer Driver's tabs.

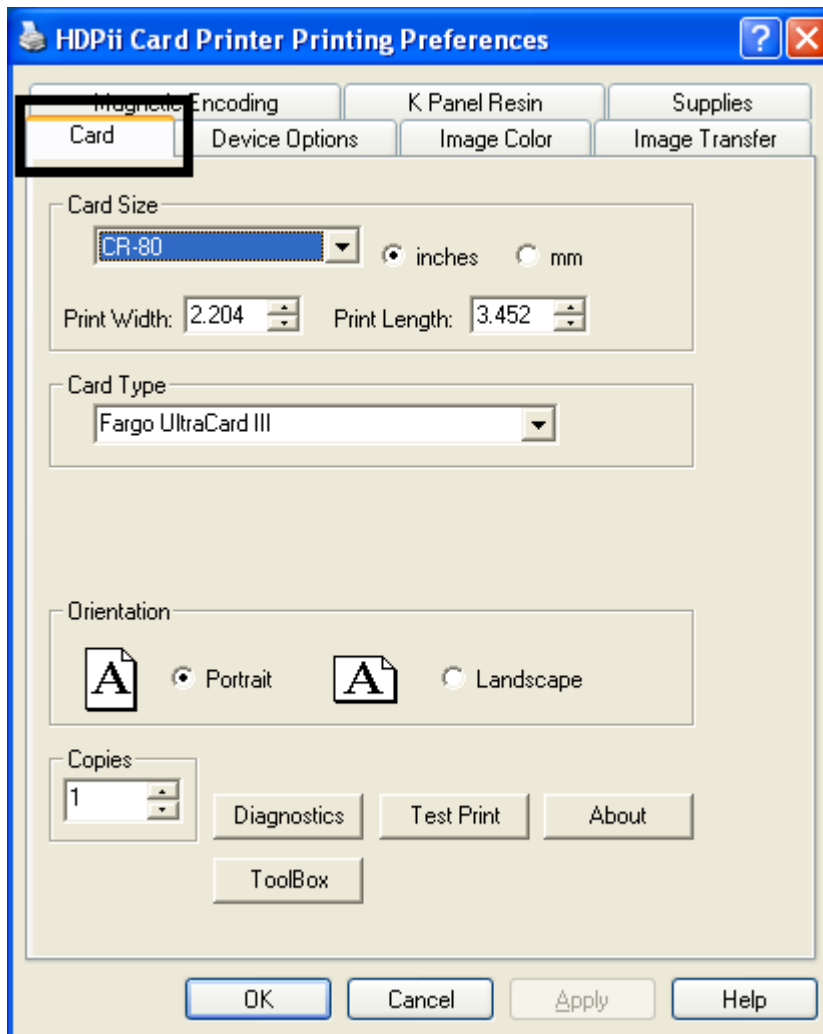
Using the OK, Cancel and Help buttons

Here are the descriptions:

- **OK button:** Closes dialog box and saves Driver configuration changes that have occurred since Driver dialog box has been opened.
- **Cancel button:** Closes dialog box and cancels Driver configuration changes that have occurred since Driver dialog box has been opened.
- **Help button:** Launches Help indexed to help for the corresponding active tab.
- **Apply button:** Not active for the user.

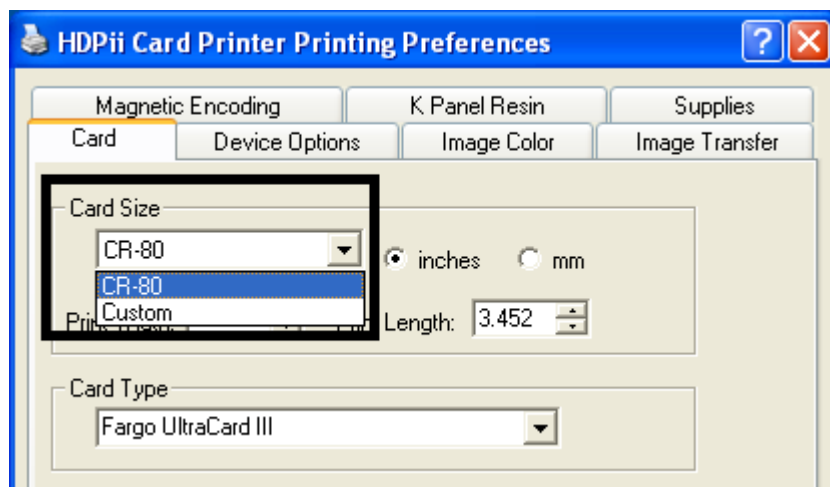
Using the Card tab

Use this option to control specific Printer functions.




Selecting the Card Size

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the appropriate card option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CR-80: This selection is the default form size for the Printer. This will print a 2.125 X 3.374 image including a .04 over-bleed on each of the 4 sides making the overall form size 2.204 X 3.452 (56 X 87.7 mm). Custom: This selection is used to create a custom form size from 1.0 x 3.0 to 2.204 to 3.452 (25.4 X 76.2 mm to 56 X 87.7 mm). <p>The dimensions of the total print area for each card size will appear in the Print Width and Print Length boxes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> These print area dimensions are .04" (1mm) larger than the actual card size. This is so the Printer can overprint images to ensure they will appear Edge-to-Edge when transferred to the card. For this reason, when designing a card format, always set the card size or page size within the card design program to the exact Print Length and Width dimensions listed in the Printer Driver.)



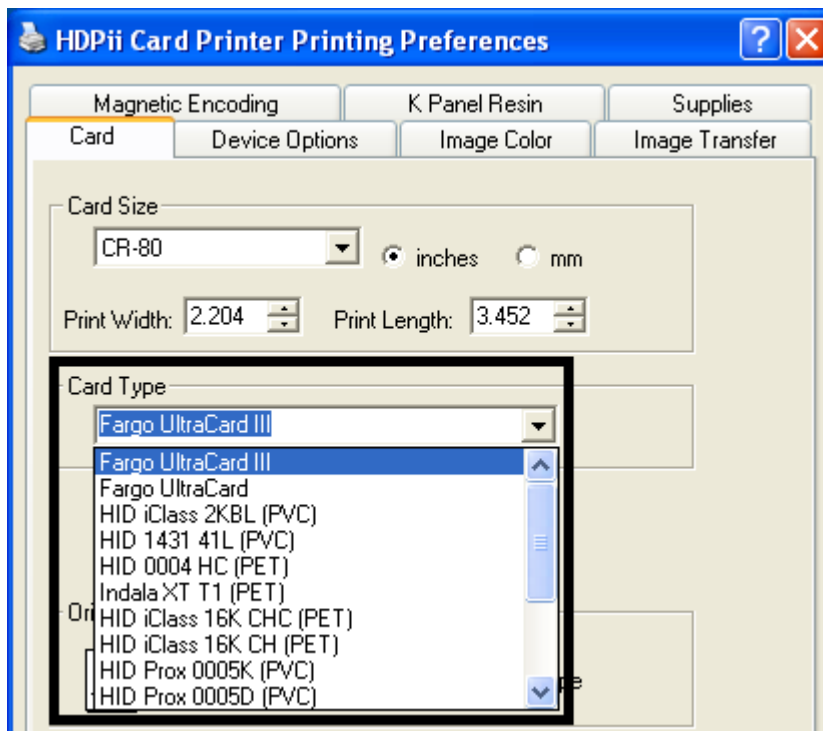
Selecting the Card Type

Select the appropriate card type according to the composition of the card stock.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>You have these selections (to choose from):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fargo UltraCard III (Default Card Type) • Fargo UltraCard • HID ISO Prox – Standard (13xx) • HID ISO Prox – Composite (15xx) • HID Identity – Standard (IDx20A) • HID Identity – Composite (HTx20E) • HID iCLASS – Standard (20xx) • HID iCLASS – Composite (21xx) • HID FlexSmart –Standard 14x0) • HID FlexSmart –Composite (14x6) • HID FlexSmart Prox – Std (14x1) • HID FlexSmart Prox – Comp (14x7) • Indala FlexISO – Standard (FPISO) • Indala FLexISO XT-Composite (FPIXT) • Custom 1 • Custom 2 <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p>Caution: If the appropriate option is not selected, the wrong Dwell Time and temperature may be used during the image transfer process, which may result in poor adhesion of the Film or warping of the card.)</p> </div> </div>

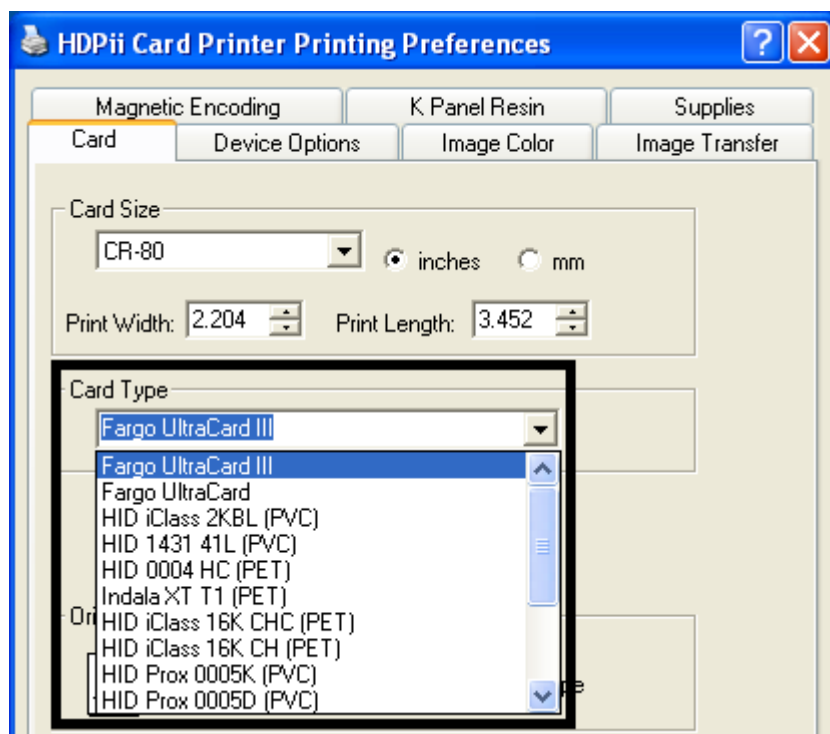
Selecting the Card Type

See the previous page.



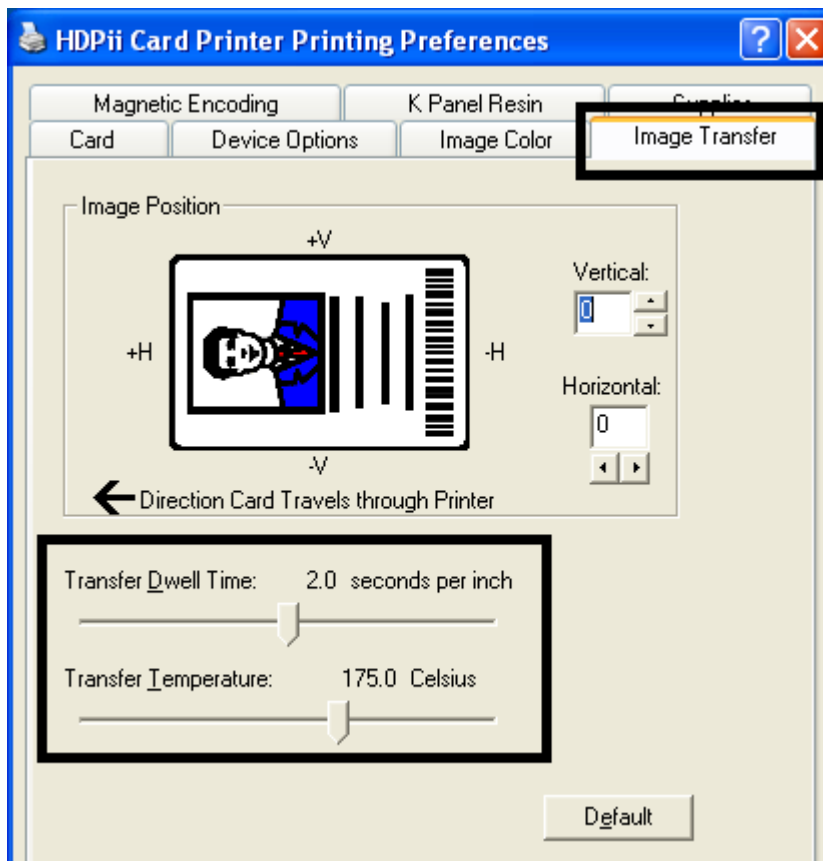
Selecting the Card Type (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	<p>If using a card stock other than listed, use the Custom 1 options to save custom Dwell Time and dwell temperature controls on the Image Transfer tab.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click on the Custom options and enter a name for the card stock. Click on the Image Transfer tab to adjust the Dwell Time and temperature sliders to the appropriate settings. See the next page. (Note: These settings will be saved for the custom card type when the Printer Driver setup window is closed.)



Selecting the Card Type (continued)

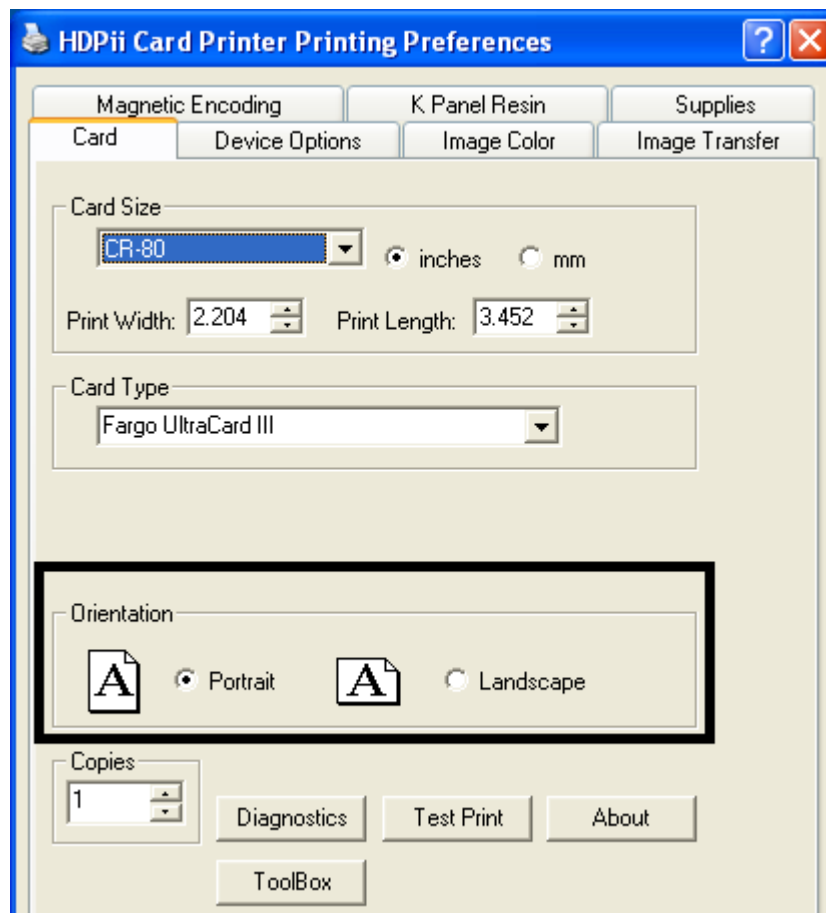
Please see Step 2b on the previous page.



Setting the Orientation

Select either the **Portrait** or **Landscape** radio buttons for Orientation.

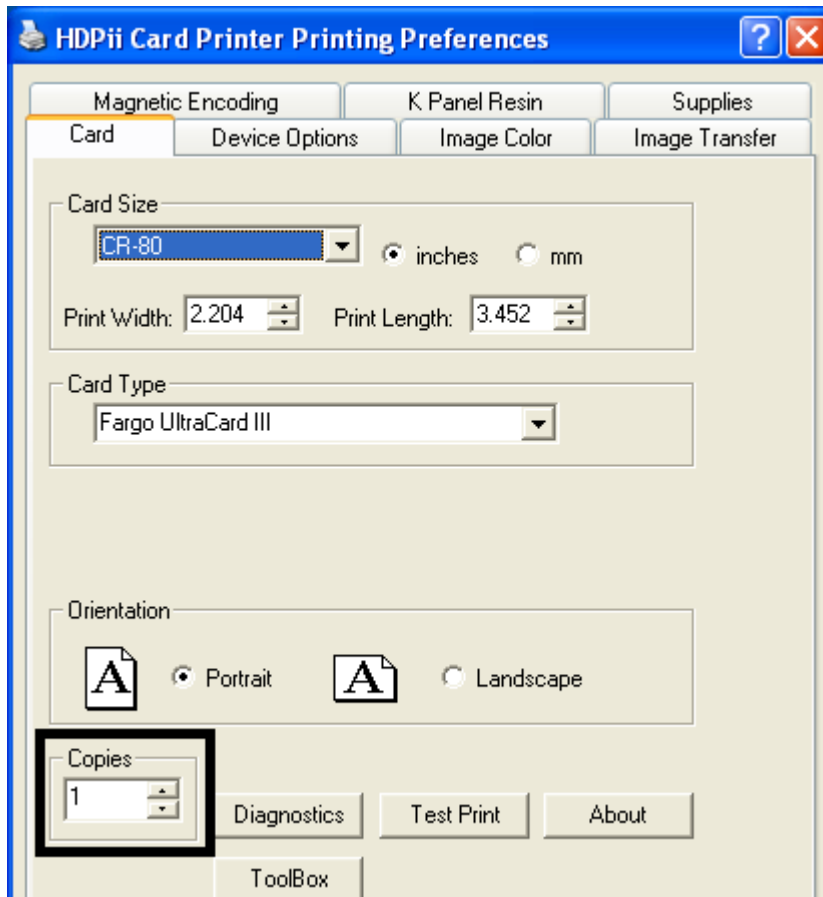
Step	Procedure
1	Select Portrait to cause the card to print in a vertical orientation. OR Select Landscape to cause the card to print in a horizontal orientation.



Specifying the number of Copies

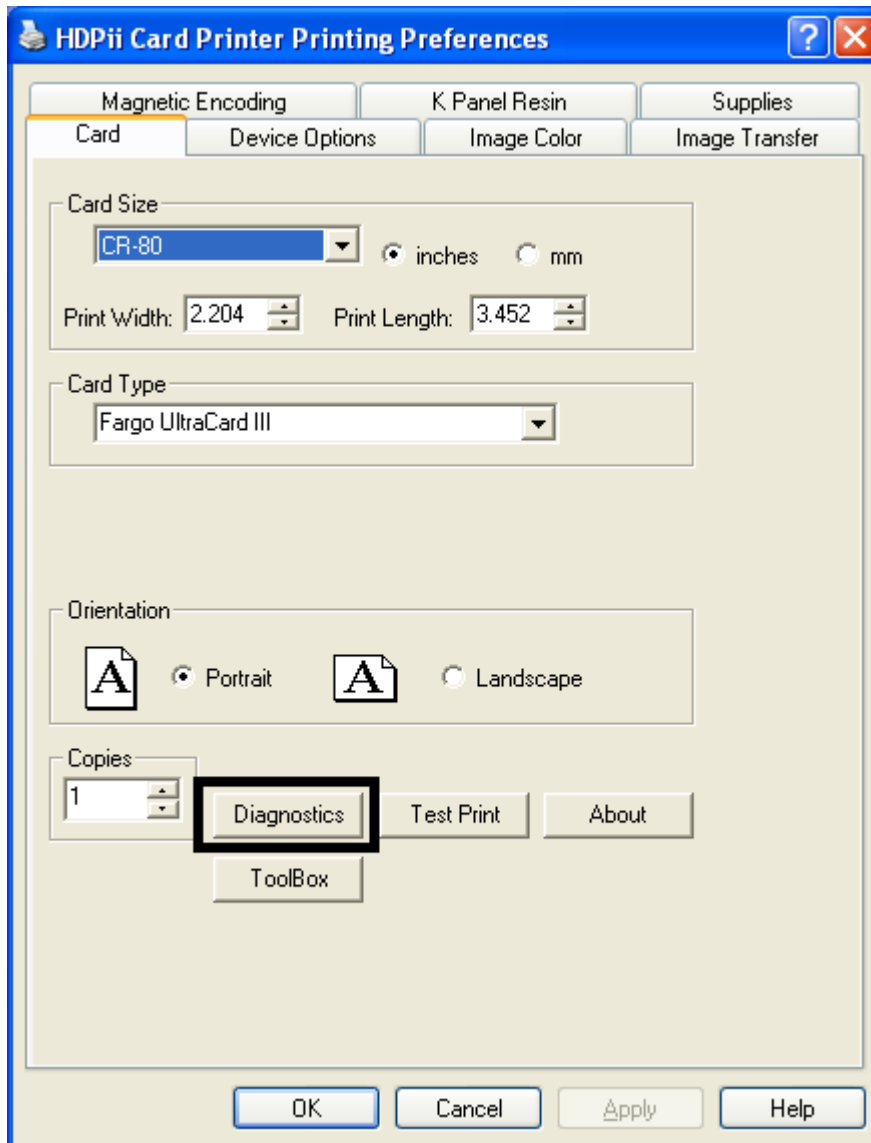
Specifies the number of copies to be printed.

- The upper limit is 10000 and the lower limit is 1.



Selecting the Diagnostics button

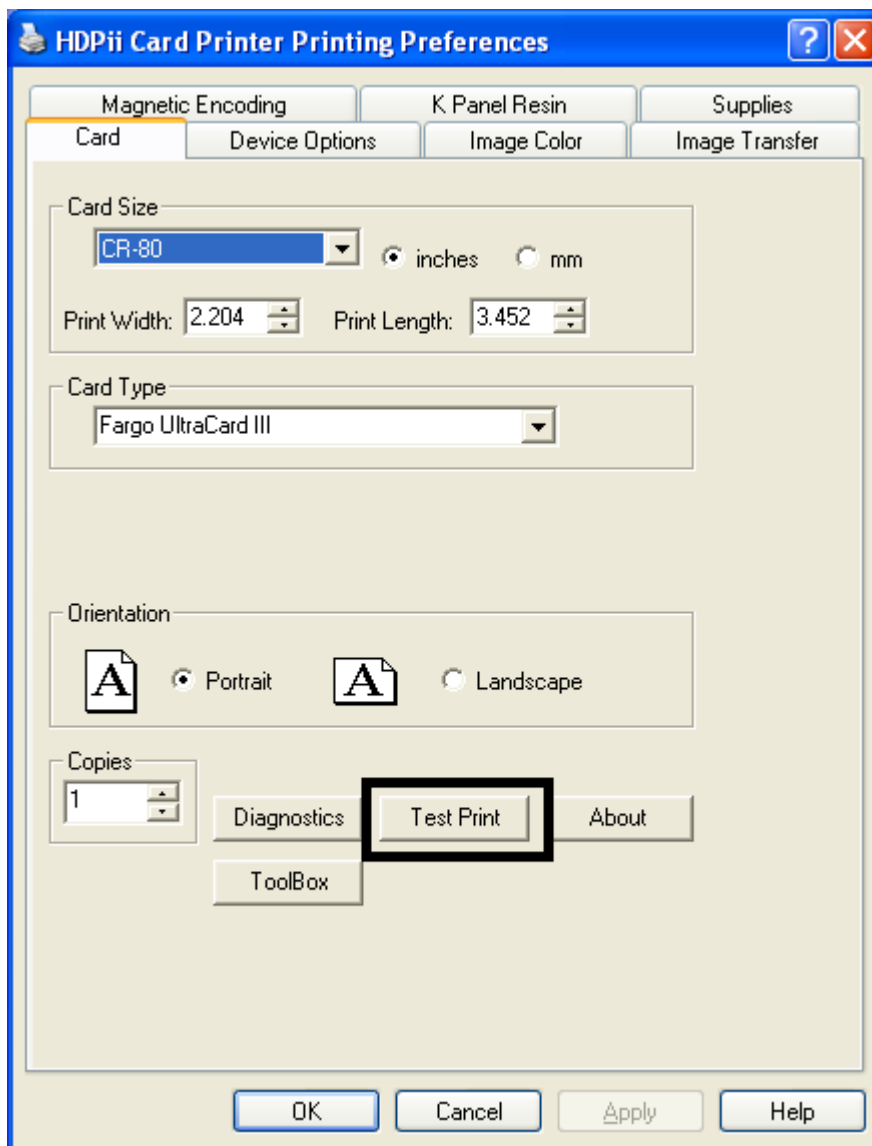
This will launch the Diagnostic tool (if installed).



Selecting the Test Print button

When selected, a test PRN file will be sent to the Printer. See below. This file will print a Full Color plus Resin print on the front side of the card and a Resin or black only image on the backside. This image is the same as what is supplied in the Printer's Supply Pack.

- For YMCK, the PRN file is full color and resin on front only.
- For YMCKK, the PRN file is full color front with resin on front and then the back is resin.
- For YMC, the PRN file is full color and front only.
- For YMCKH, the PRN file is full color with resin and front only.
- For YMCKI, the PRN file is full color, with resin, and with an inhibit area on the front only.



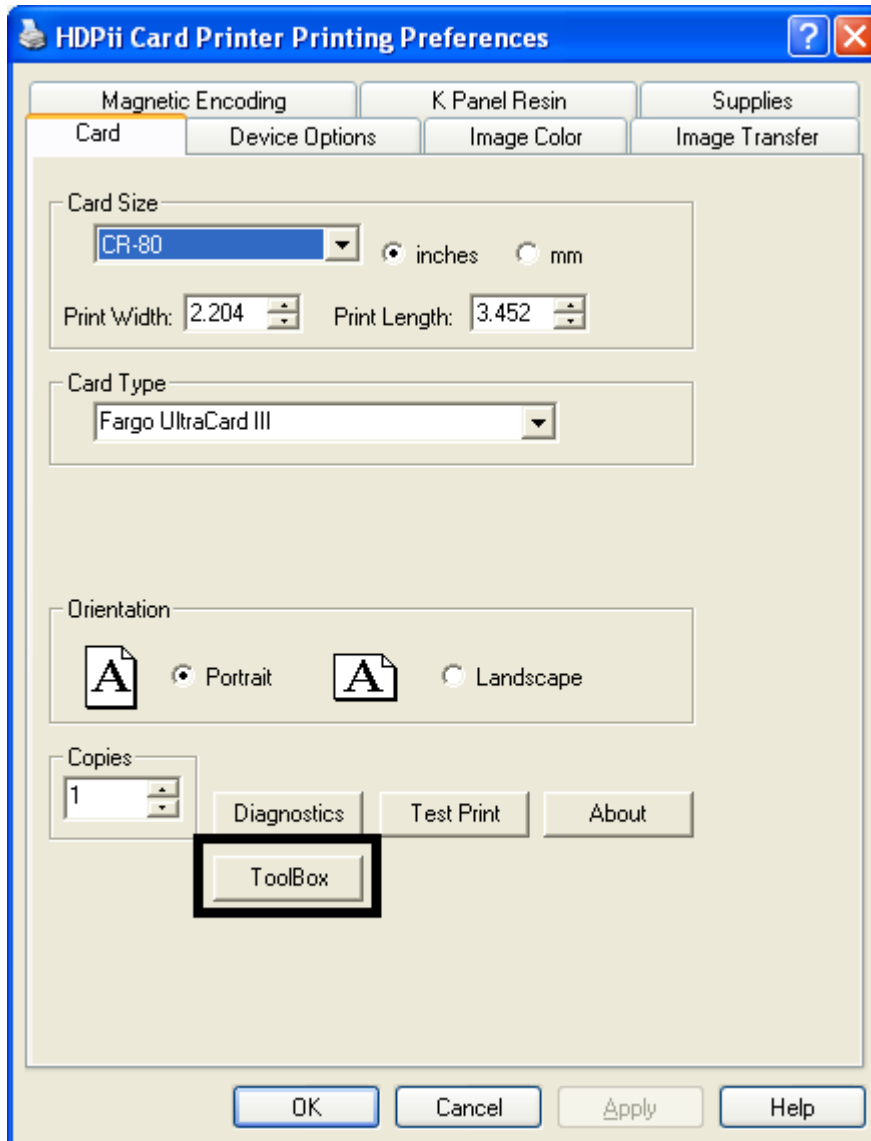
Selecting the About button

Select the **About** button to open a dialog box containing the copyright information as well as the Driver's version number and date code.



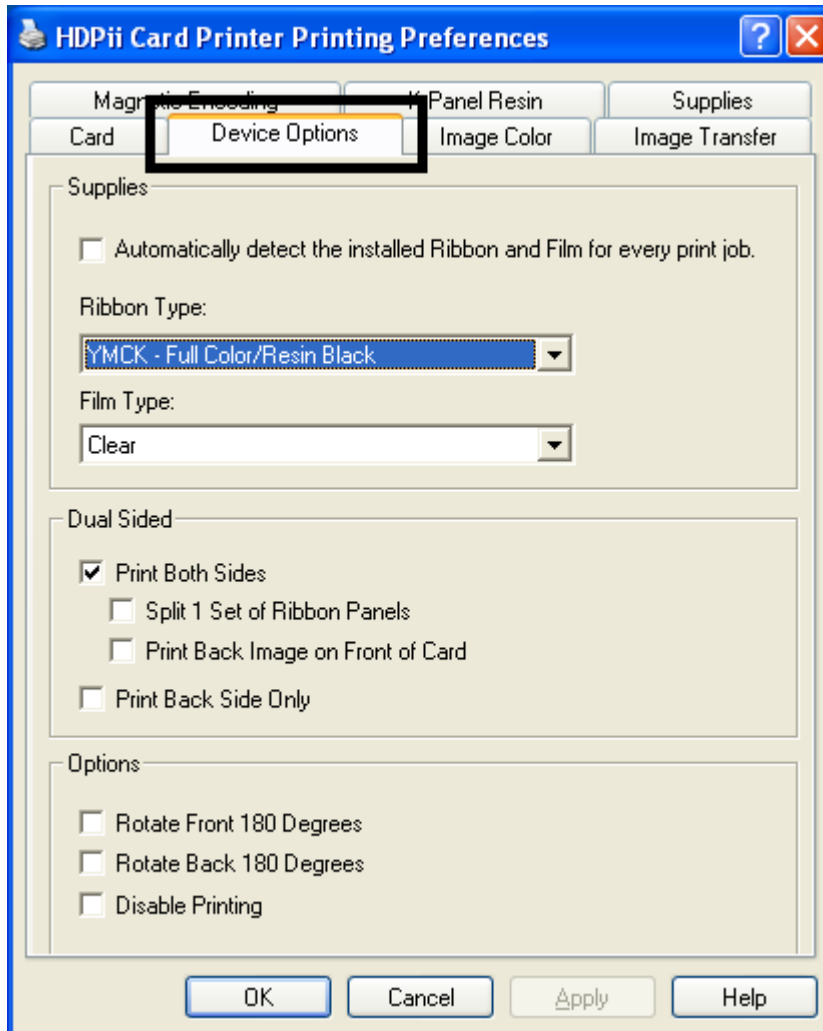
Selecting the Toolbox button

Select the **Toolbox** button. See the [Toolbox](#) section for more information and procedures.



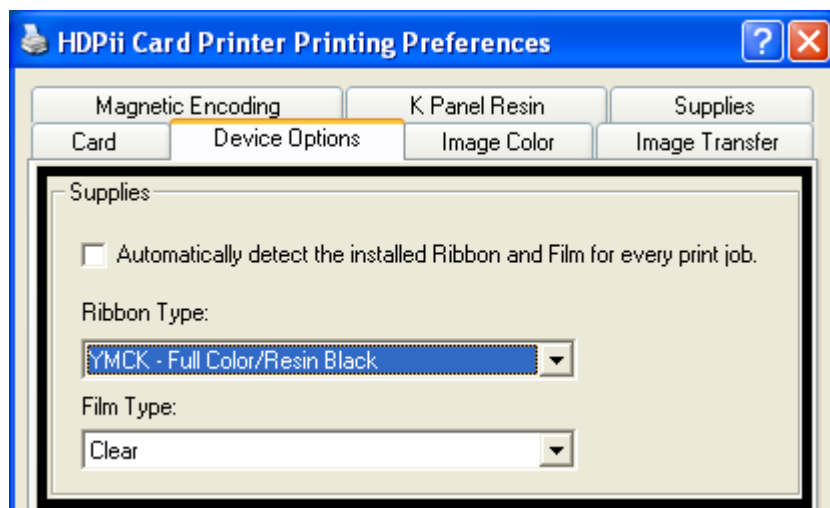
Using the Device Options tab

This section describes the use of the Device Options tab.



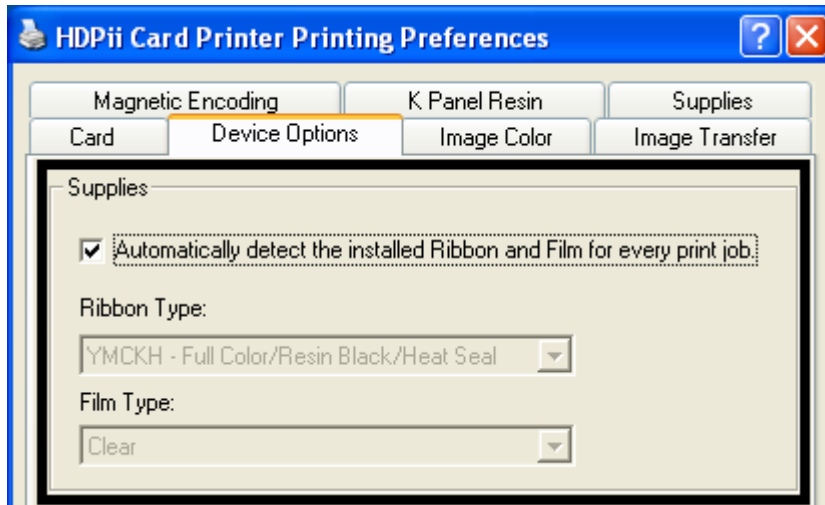
Detecting Supplies at Print Time Function

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Use the Supplies checkbox for auto detection of the consumables, which are the Ribbon. See below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• In the Firmware, the values (representing the installed Ribbon and installed Transfer Film) are updated on initialization (including each time the cover is closed).• The Firmware compares the Ribbon values in the PRN file to the values (it holds regarding the currently installed consumables). <p>If the values do not match, the LCD displays Wrong Ribbon Error or Wrong Film Error and the Driver returns the corresponding error message. See below.</p>



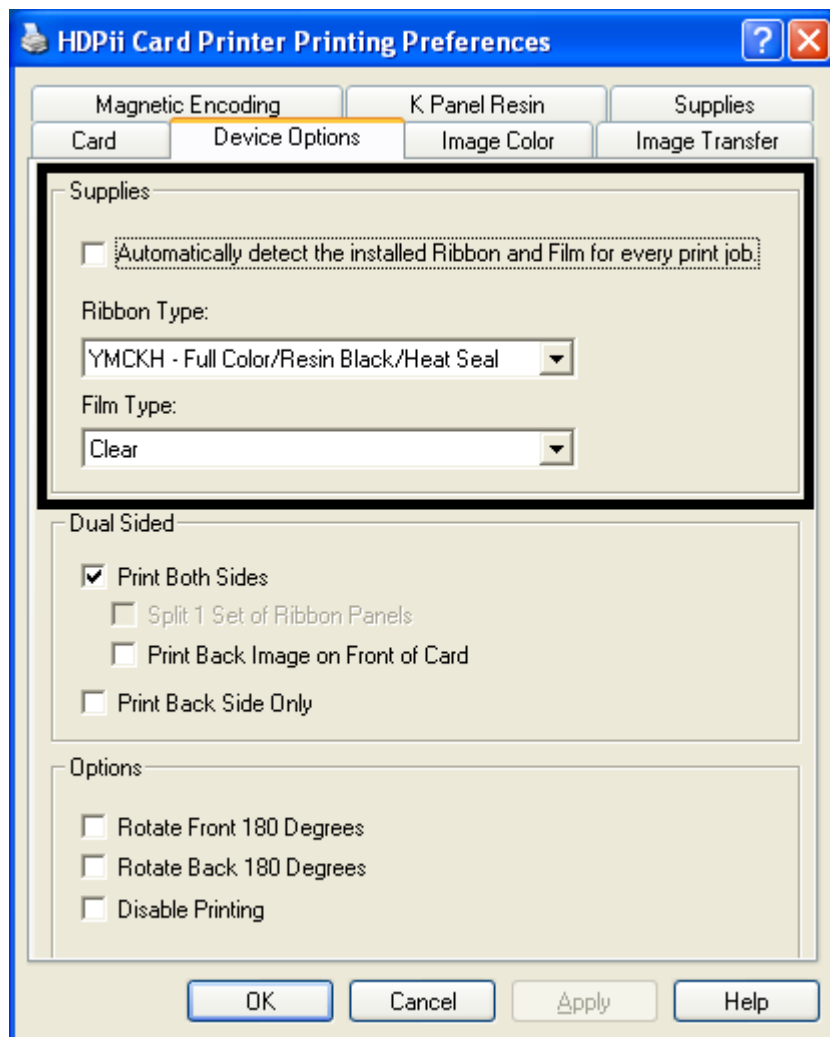
Detecting Supplies at Print Time Function (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	<p>When the Supplies checkbox is checked, the following takes place:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ribbon and Film Type dropdown boxes are inactive and populated with values of installed supplies. Dual Sided and Options are set to defaults for detected supplies. For example, no Dual Side options are available when no Output is installed. This function provides automatic detection of an installed feature whether it is automatically detecting supplies or not. Before the Driver initiates each job, it retrieves the consumables values from the Firmware. If no Printer is found or no Ribbon is installed, the checkbox is allowed to be checked. (Note: The previously-chosen Ribbon and Film values will remain. You will see an error message.) Activating the Device Options tab automatically repopulates the Ribbon and Film types. (Note: You will see an error message if no Printer found when activating the Device Options tab.)



Detecting Supplies at Print Time Function (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	When the Supplies checkbox is not checked or it is de-selected (cleared) from a selected state, the Ribbon and Film dropdown boxes become active and auto selected Ribbon and Film types remain (until manually changed).



Adjusting the Ribbon Type

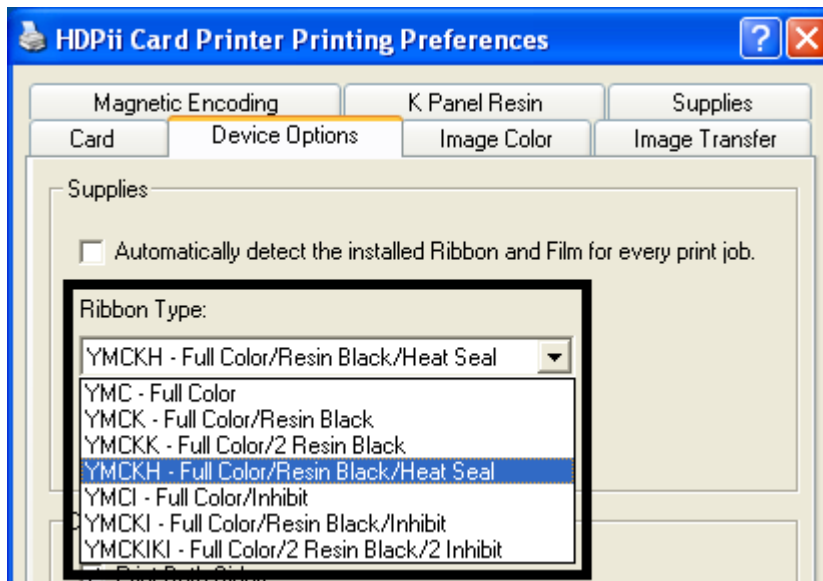
Use the Ribbon Type dropdown menu to match Ribbon type. (**Note:** The Inhibit or **I** designation under YMCKI indicates the ability to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Users can select these Ribbon types to prevent film from transferring over security features, signature panel or other areas of special interest on the card surface.)

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Adjust to match the Ribbon Type selection with the Ribbon type that is loaded in the Printer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• YMC (Full Color): Yellow, Magenta, CyanOR• YMCK (Full Color/Resin Black): Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Resin BlackOR• YMCKK (Full Color/2 Resin Black): Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Resin Black, Resin BlackOR• YMCKH (Full Color/Resin Black/Heat Seal): Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Resin Black, and Heat SealOR• YMCKI (Full Color/Resin Black/Inhibit): Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Resin Black, Inhibit

Continued on the next page

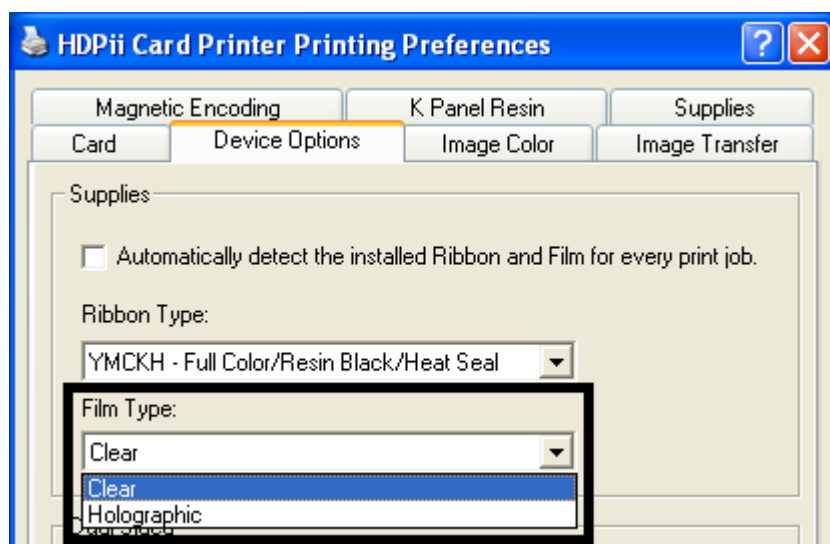
Adjusting the Ribbon Type (continued)

See the procedure on the previous page.



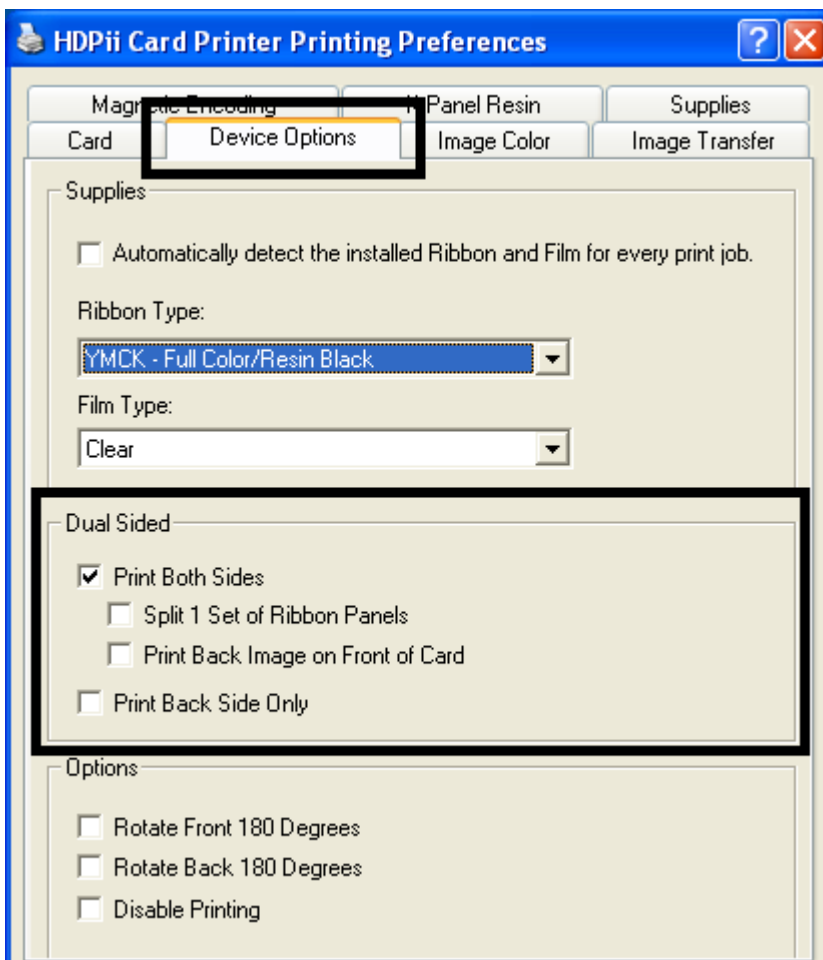
Adjusting the Film Type

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Allows you to select the film type option that is appropriate for the type of film currently loaded in the Printer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Clear option to automatically adjust the appropriate transfer time and temperature to pre-determined defaults. (Note: Select this option to automatically adjust the transfer temperature (175.0 Celsius) and the dwell times (2.0 seconds per inch) to defaults when non-custom card type is chosen on Card tab.) <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Holographic option to change appropriate internal Printer settings needed to make the holographic film work. (Note: Select this option to automatically adjust the transfer temperature (175.0 Celsius) and the dwell times (2.0 seconds per inch) to defaults when non-custom card type is chosen on Card tab.) <p>(Note: It will also adjust the necessary transfer temperature and the dwell settings in the Driver to provide the optimal holographic InTM performance.)</p>



Using the Dual Sided Group Functions

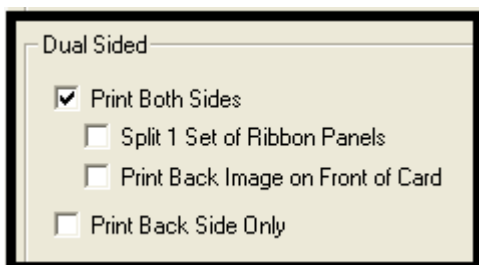
The Dual Sided group checkboxes (shown below) are grayed out if no Output is automatically found or if the Dual Sided is manually turned off. See the procedures in this section for more instructions.



Using the Dual Sided - Print Both Sides option

Use this option to automatically print on both the front and backside of a card.

Step	Procedure
1	Select this option in conjunction with any application program that supports a multiple-page document, duplex printing. (Note: The program must be able to send down two or more separate pages to be printed within the same document.)
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Page 1 will be transferred to the front side of the card.• Page 2 will be transferred to the backside of the card.• The Printer Driver will always place all odd numbered pages on the front side of the card and all even numbered pages on the back side with this option selected.

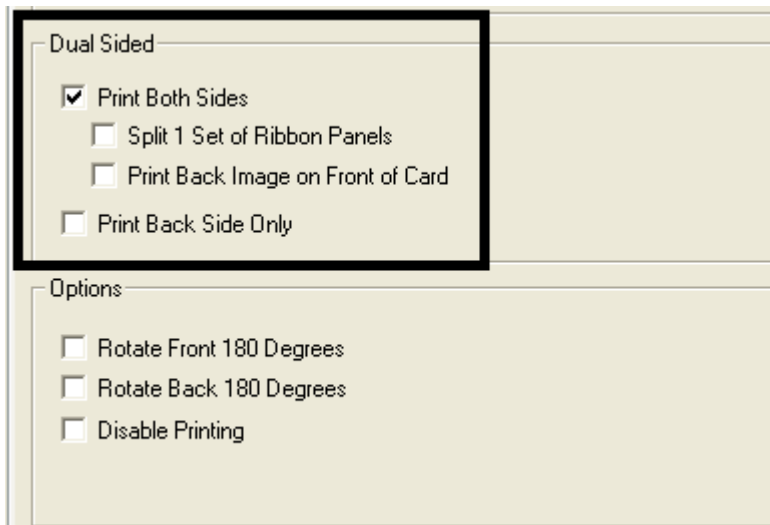


Using the Print Both Sides - Split 1 Set of Ribbon Panels option

Use this option to provide the most economical means of printing a dual-sided card since a single set of Ribbon Panels will be split to print both the front and backside of a card.

- This option becomes active when **Print Both Sides** is checked.
- The Default is active and unchecked except for YMCKK, which is checked.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select this option to automatically print full-color on the front of a card and resin black on the back of a card (using YMCKK Print Ribbons).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If using a YMCKK Ribbon, the front of the card is printed with the YMCK Panels and the back is printed with the second K Panel. <p>(Note #1: This option is automatically enabled when a YMCKK Ribbon type is selected.)</p> <p>(Note #2: This option is not available if using a YMCKH Ribbon.)</p>



Using the Print Both Sides - Print Back Image on Front of Card option

This option becomes active when **Print Both Sides** is checked. The Default is active and unchecked.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select this option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you need to print the first page of a two-page document on the backside of the card. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you need to print the resin black on the chip-side of the Smartcard. <p>The second page of the document will be printed on the front side of the card.</p>

The screenshot shows a software window with two main sections: 'Dual Sided' and 'Options'. The 'Dual Sided' section is highlighted with a thick black border and contains four checkboxes: 'Print Both Sides' (checked), 'Split 1 Set of Ribbon Panels' (unchecked), 'Print Back Image on Front of Card' (unchecked), and 'Print Back Side Only' (unchecked). The 'Options' section is below it and contains three checkboxes: 'Rotate Front 180 Degrees' (unchecked), 'Rotate Back 180 Degrees' (unchecked), and 'Disable Printing' (unchecked).

Using the Dual Sided - Print Back Side Only option

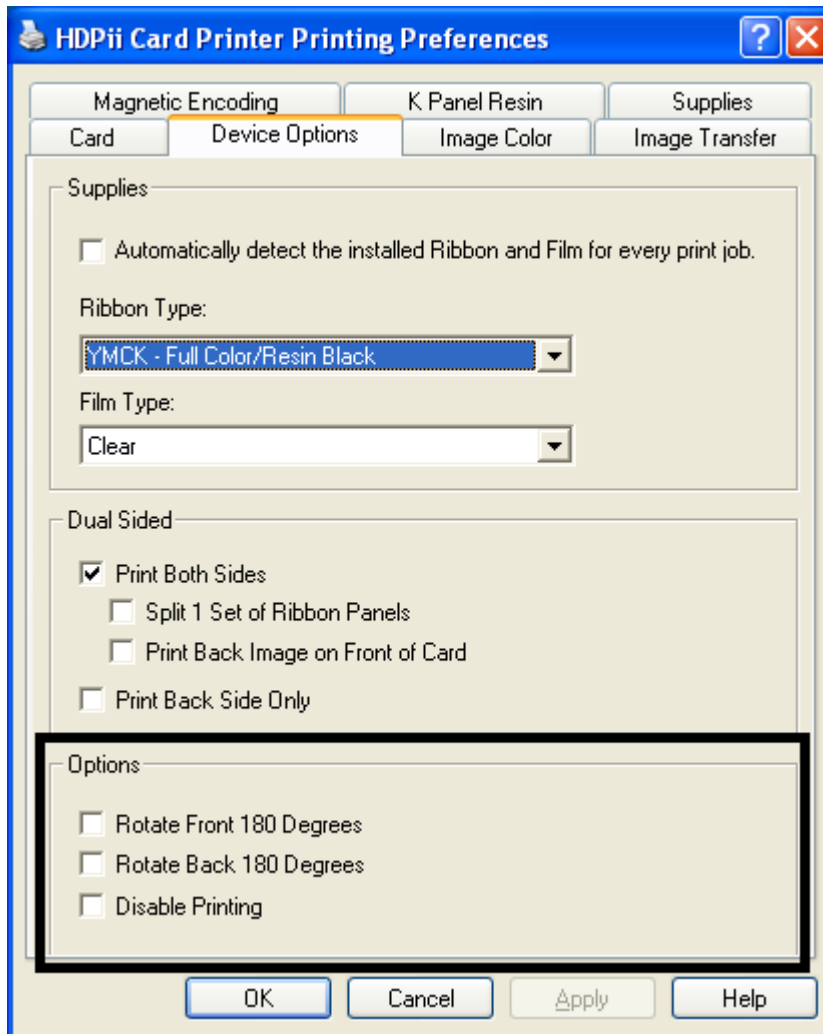
Use this option to print only onto the backside of cards. (**Note:** The **Print Back Side Only** checkbox default is active and unchecked.)

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select this option to print only onto the backside of preprinted cards that must have their Magnetic Stripe or smart card chip encoded. (Note: Load the cards in the usual fashion.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When this option is selected, the Print Both Sides option is automatically disabled.)• When attempting to print a two-page document (if Print Back Side Only is selected), the first page of the document will print on the backside of the card.• The second page of the document will then be printed on the back of a second card.



Using the Device Options Group

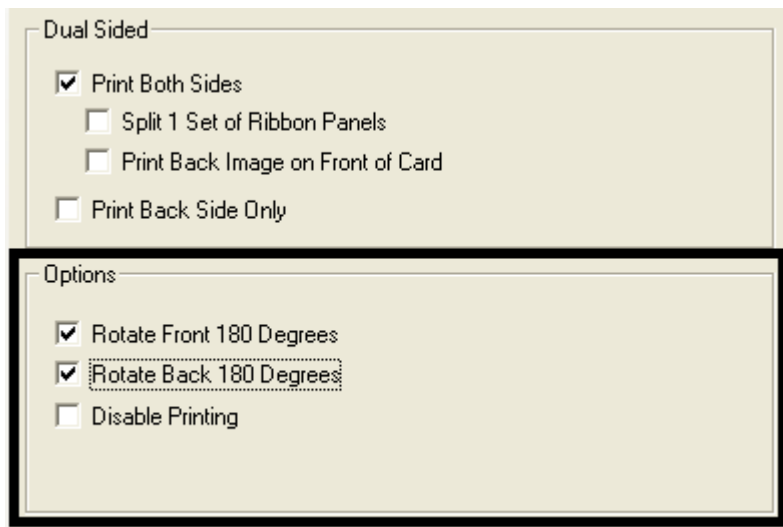
The functions under the Options Group are described in this section.



Using the Rotate Front 180 Degrees or Rotate Back 180 Degrees options

Use this option to change the position of the printed image in relation to the set location of a card's Magnetic Stripe or smart chip.

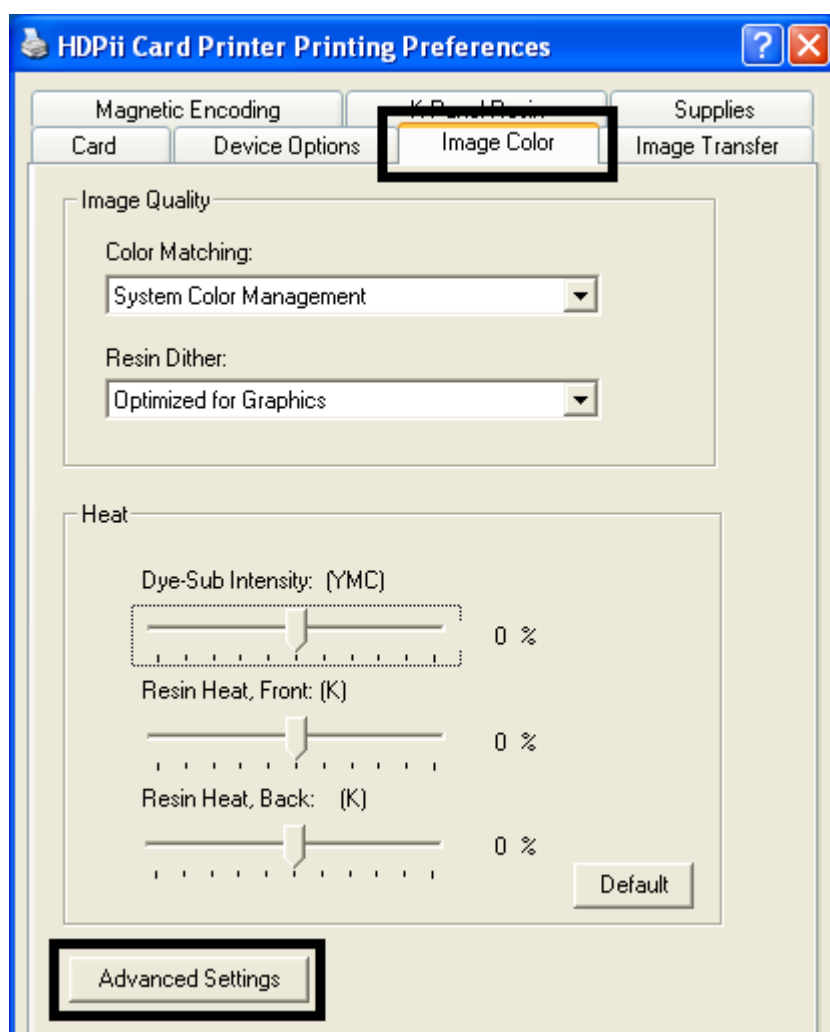
Step	Procedure
1	Select the Rotate Front 180 Degrees option to rotate the image on the front of the card by 180 degrees when printed. OR Select the Rotate Back 180 Degrees option to rotate the image on the back of the card by 180 degrees when printed.



Using the Disable Printing option

Use this option to disable the printing capabilities of the Printer while still allowing the Printer to encode cards. (**Note:** This option is useful to encode or re-encode preprinted cards without wasting additional time or printing supplies.)

Step	Procedure
1	Select this option to ensure no print data will be sent to the Printer (while all encoding instructions will be sent according to how they are configured within the software).

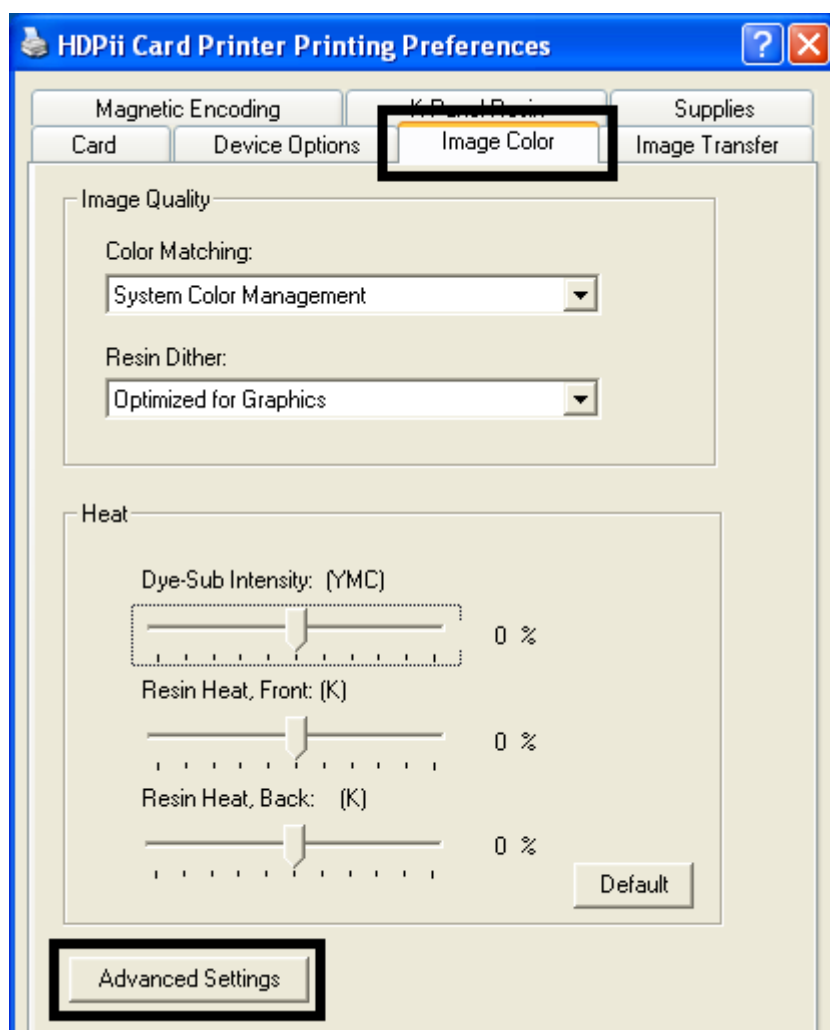


Using the Image Color tab

Use this tab to adjust color properties. (**Note:** The Printing Preferences window has the same Image Color tab functionality as the Printing Preferences window.)

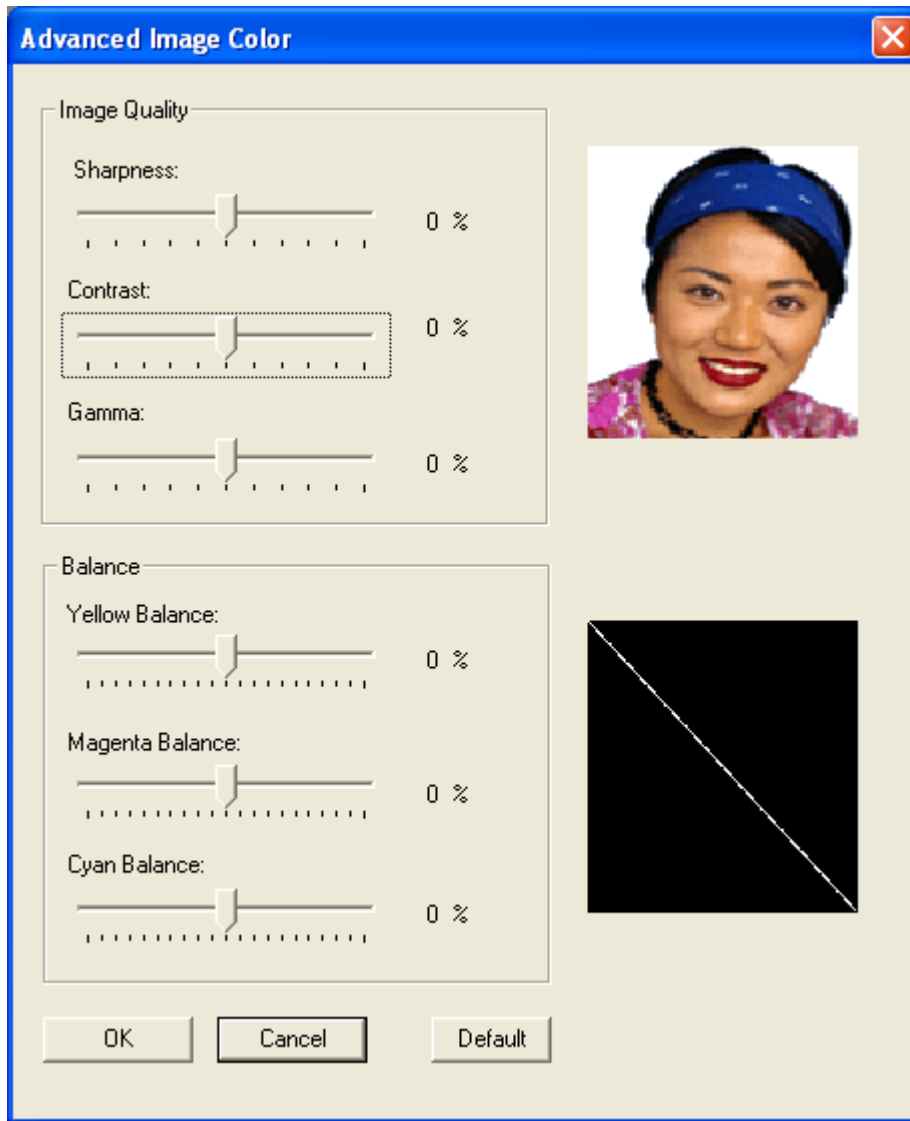
Step	Procedure
1	Select the System Color Management color matching option to control the Sharpness, Contrast and Gamma of the printed image, as well as the individual color balance of Yellow, Magenta and Cyan . See both displays in this section. Proceed to related procedures (provided below).

Display A – Image Color tab



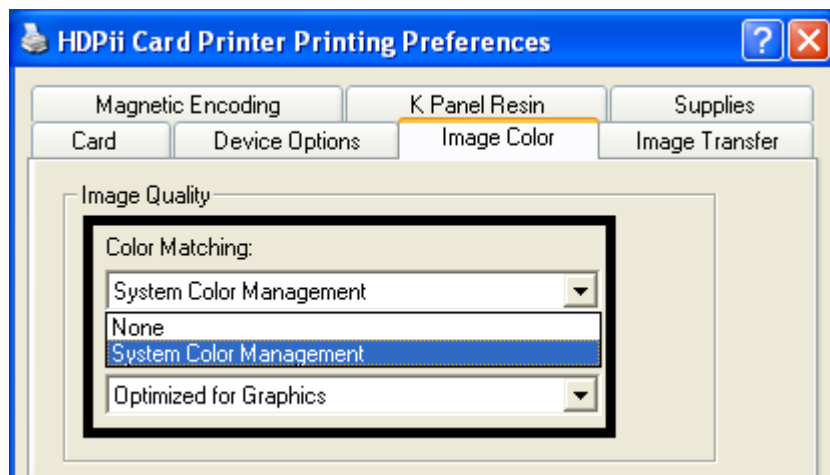
Using the Image Color tab

Display B – Image Color tab > Advanced Image Color window



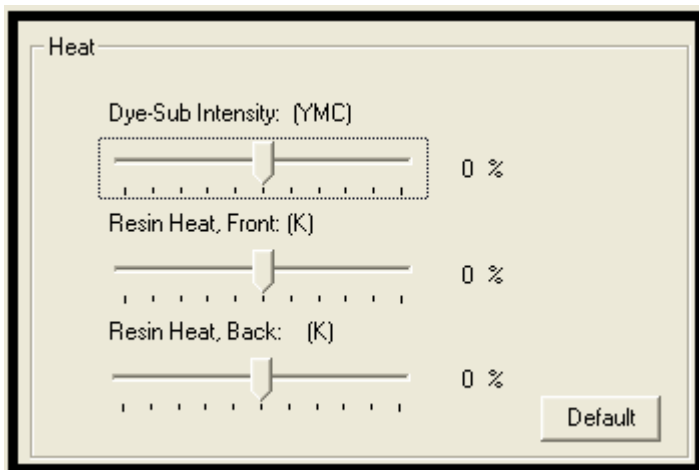
Using the Quality – Color Matching dropdown

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select None (a) if interested in print speed rather than print color, (b) if color correcting the image for printing has already been done or (c) if using third party color matching software.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Select System Color Management to allow the Printer Driver to make color corrections similar to the Algebraic option but through a more complex color matching algorithm. (Note: This option shifts colors more radically so the colors in the image will more closely match how they appear on screen.)</p>



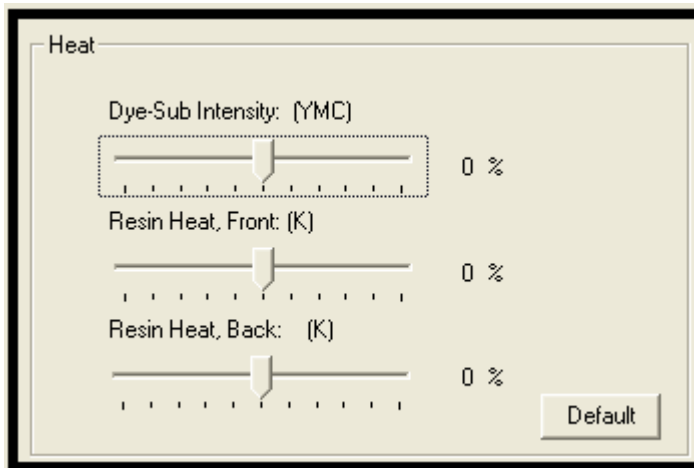
Using the Quality – Color Matching dropdown (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	<p>Control the overall darkness and lightness of the dye-sub printed image by adjusting the Dye-Sub Intensity slide by clicking and dragging the slide's box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move the slide to the left to cause less heat to be used in the printing process, thus generating a lighter print. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move the slide to the right to cause more heat to be used, thus generating a darker print. <p>(Note: This slide only affects those images printed with dye-sublimation Ribbon Panels (YMC).)</p>



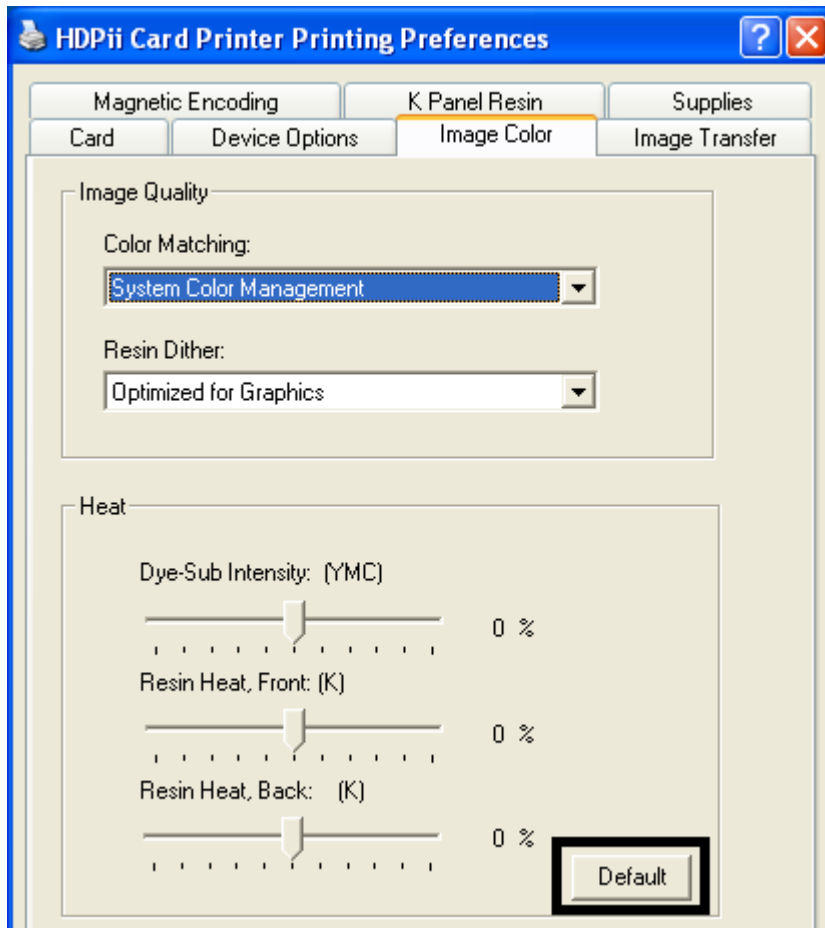
Using the Quality – Color Matching dropdown (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	<p>Control the amount of heat the Printer uses when printing with the resin black Panel by adjusting the Resin Heat slide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move the slide to the left to cause less heat to be used in the printing process, causing resin images to be lighter or less saturated. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move the slide to the right to cause more heat to be used, causing resin images to be darker or more saturated. <p>(Note: This control can be helpful for fine-tuning the sharpness of resin text and bar codes.)</p>



Using the Quality – Color Matching dropdown (continued)

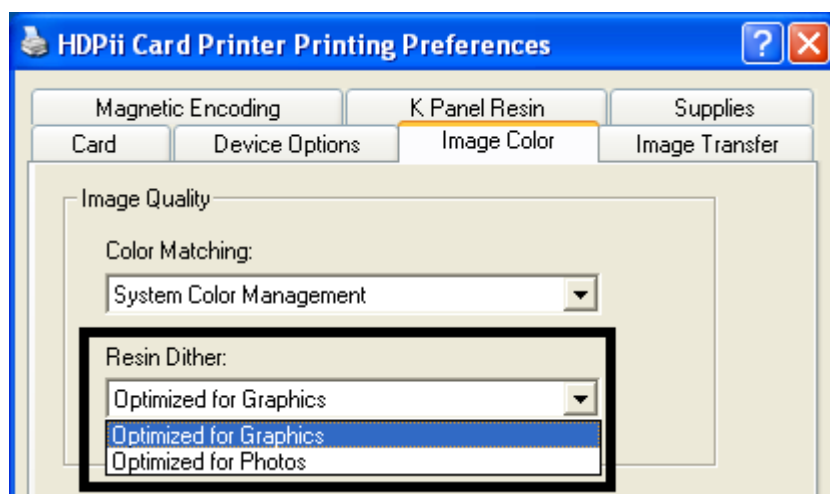
Step	Procedure
4	As needed, return all options to their factory settings by clicking on the Default button.



Adjusting for the Resin Dither

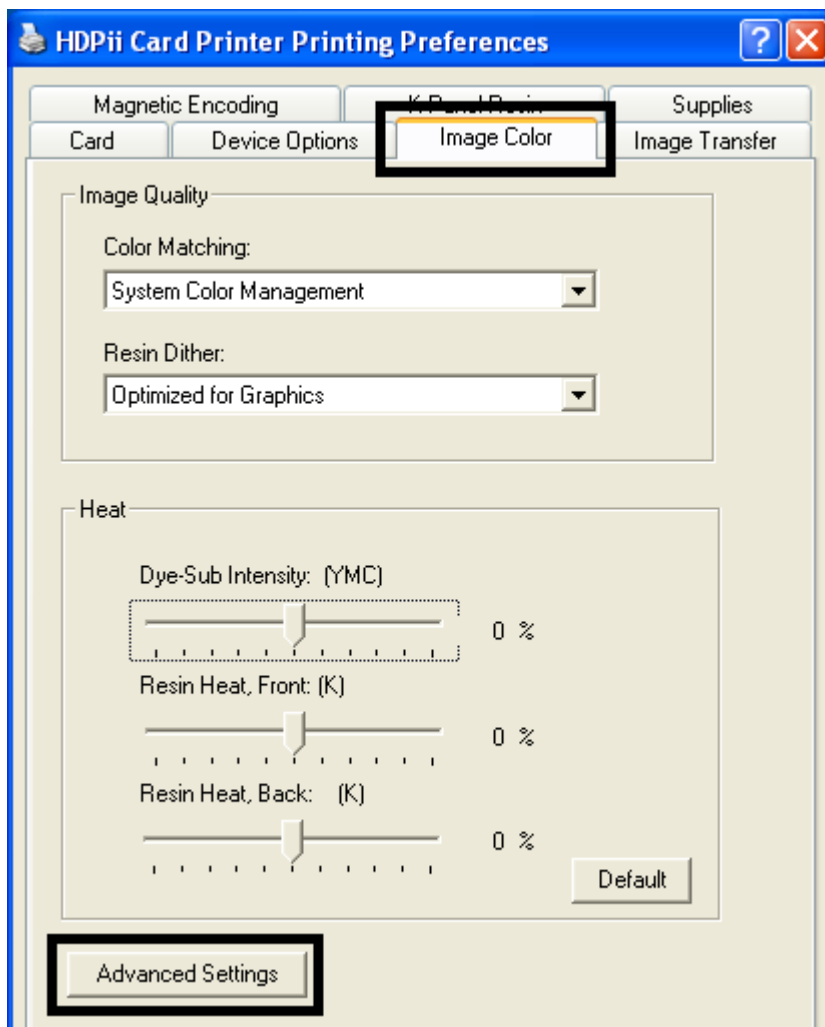
Select the appropriate dither method according to the type of image to be printed. (**Note:** This option only affects those objects printed on the backside of a card with the resin black Panel of a YMCK or YMCKK Print Ribbon. This is only enabled when using at least one K panel and dual sided enabled, splitting one set of panels.)

Step	Procedure
1	Select Optimized for Graphics when printing lower quality images (e.g., clipart, logos, etc.) with resin. OR Select Optimized for Photo when printing photo quality images with resin.



Using the Advanced Image Color window

Step	Procedure
1	Click on the Advanced Settings button to bring up the Advanced Image Color window. See below.

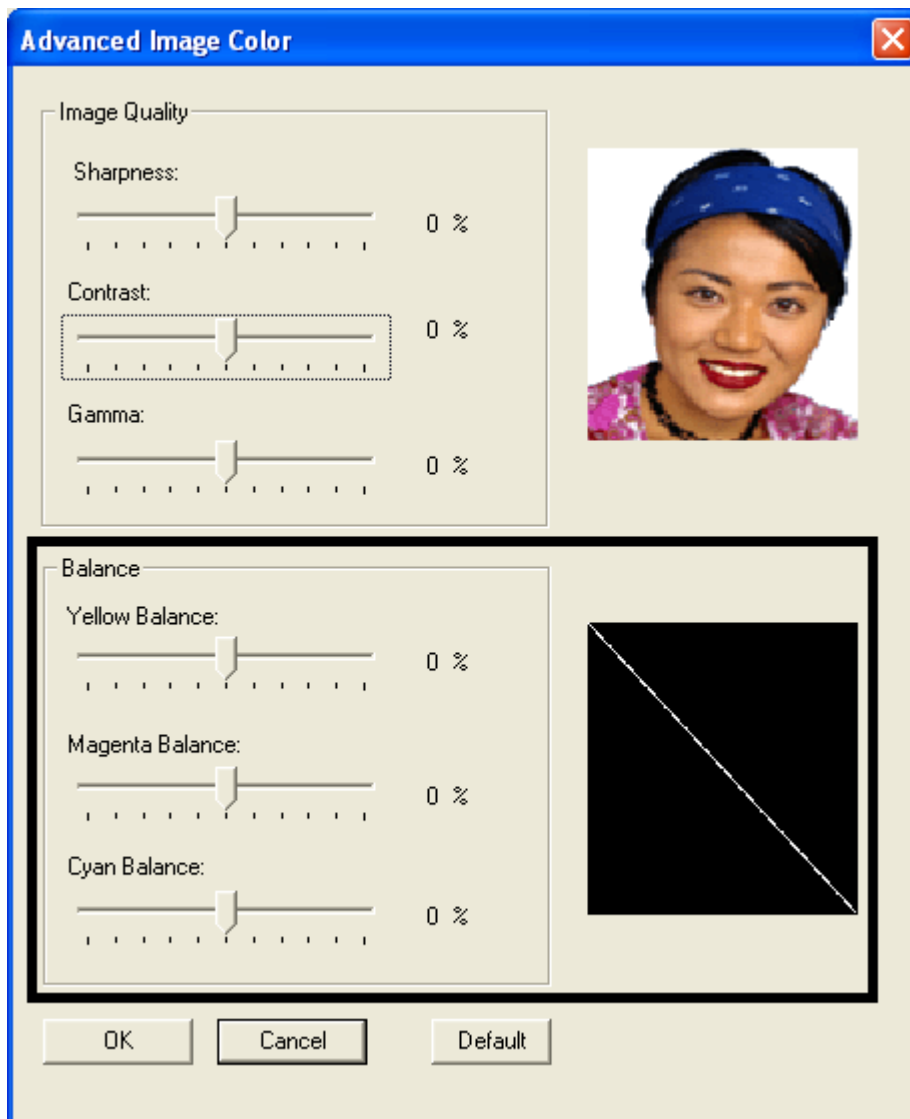


Using the Advanced Image Color window (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	<p>For the Image Quality slider bar controls, see below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Click OK to accept any variance from the default (for this specific slider bar) and return to the Image Color tab window.• Click Cancel to negate any variance on the slide and return to the Image Color tab window.• Click on the Default button to clear changes back to the default settings for this window only. <p>In addition, here are further instructions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sharpness (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less sharpness. Move the slide to the right (+) or more sharpness of the printed image. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct sharpness.• Contrast (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less contrast. Move the slide to the right (+) or more contrast of the printed image. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct contrast.• Gamma (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less gamma. Move the slide to the right (+) or more gamma of the printed image. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct gamma.

Using the Advanced Image Color window (continued)

See the previous page.

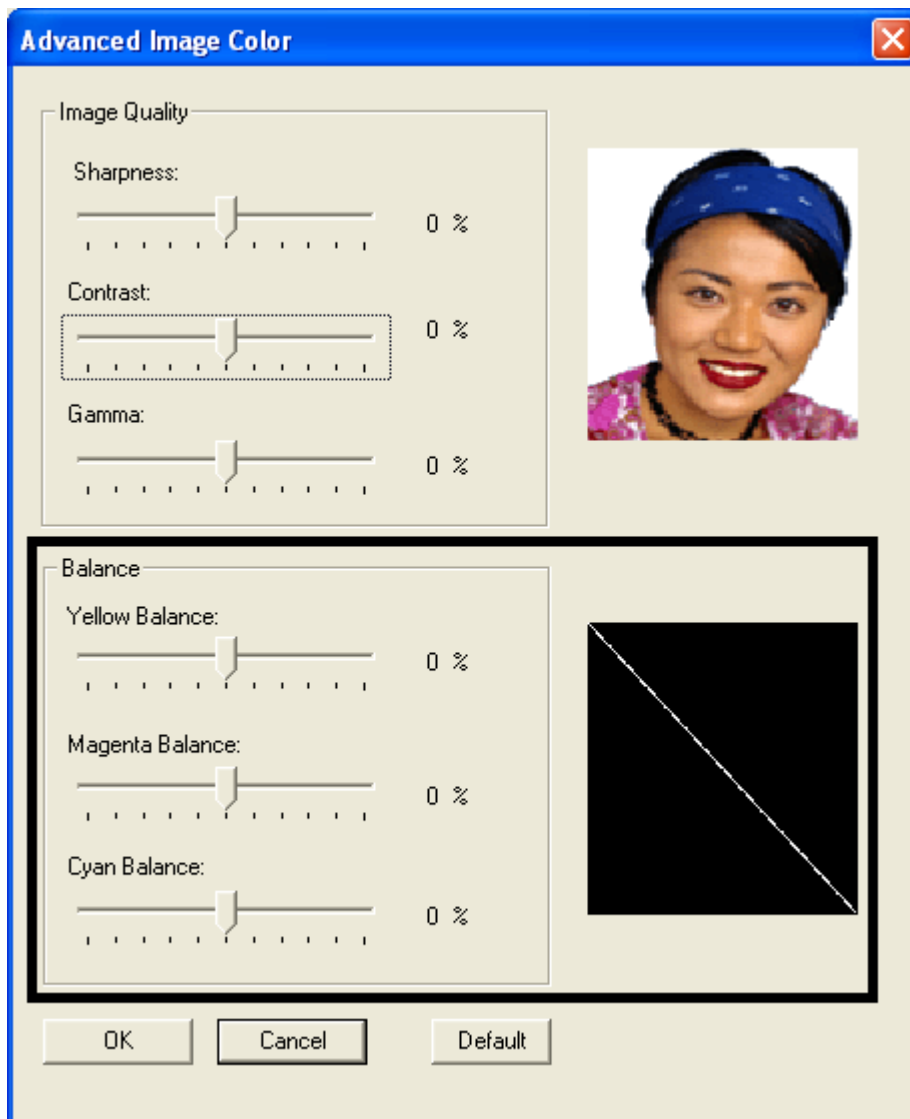


Using the Advanced Image Color window (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	<p>For the Balance slider bar controls, see below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Click OK to accept any variance from the default (for this specific slider bar) and return to the Image Color tab window.• Click Cancel to negate any variance on the slide and return to the Image Color tab window.• Click on the Default button to clear changes back to the default settings for this window only. <p>In addition, here are further instructions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Yellow Balance (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less yellow as an individual color. Move the slide to the right (+) or more yellow as an individual color balance. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct color yellow balance effect.• Magenta Balance (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less magenta as an individual color. Move the slide to the right (+) or more magenta as an individual color balance. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct color magenta balance effect.• Cyan Balance (Default, 0%): Move the slide to the left for (-) or less cyan as an individual color balance. Move the slide to the right (+) or more cyan as an individual color balance. Study the image (on the right) to determine correct color cyan balance effect.

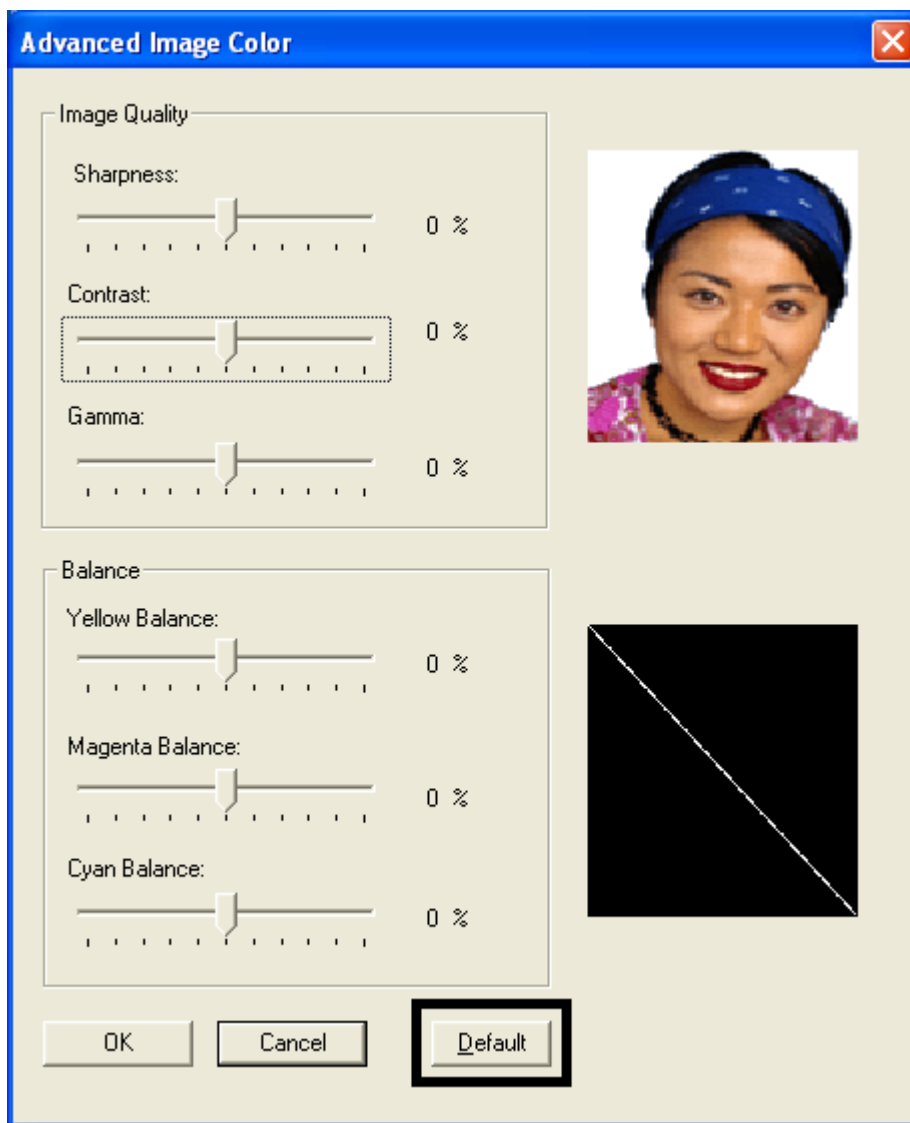
Using the Advanced Image Color window (continued)

See the previous page.



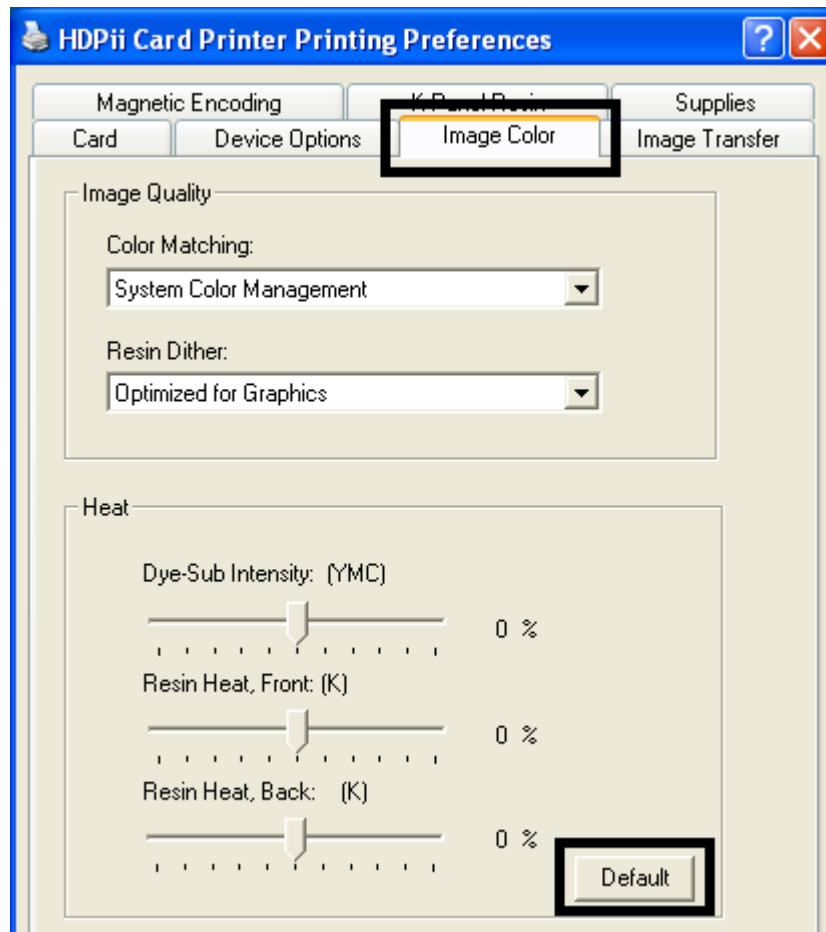
Using the Advanced Image Color window

Step	Procedure
4	Click on the Default button to clear changes back to the default settings for this window only. See below.



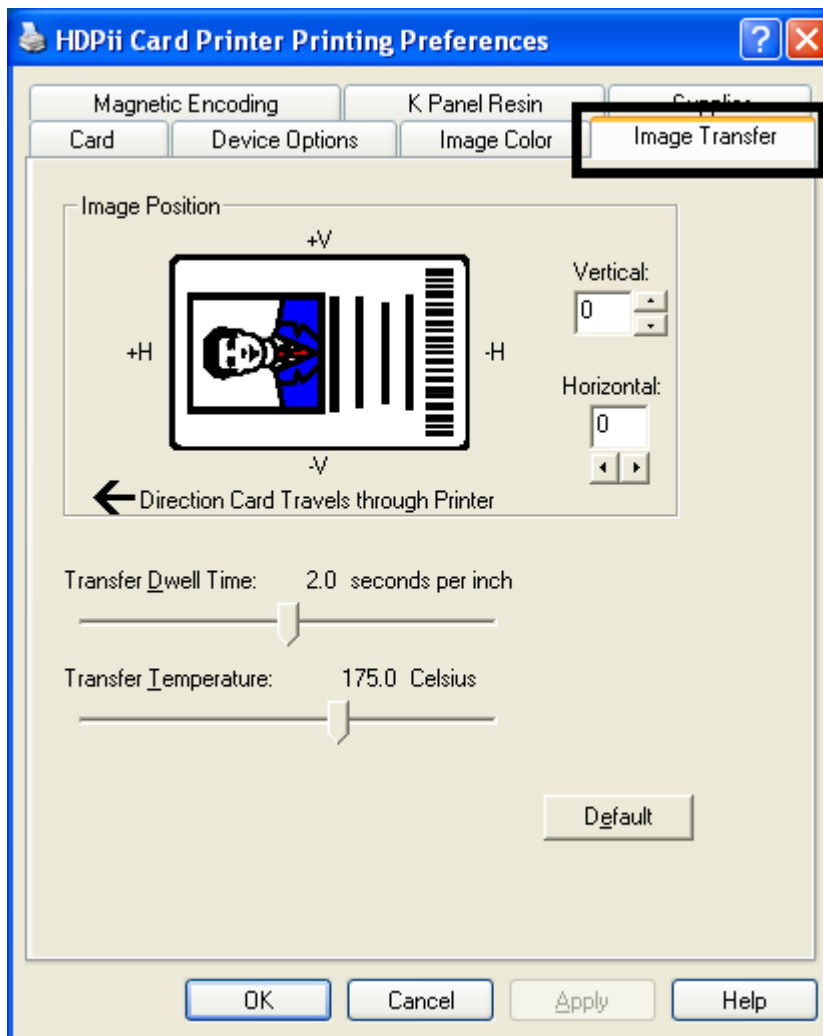
Using the Default button on the Image Color tab

Step	Procedure
1	Click on the Default button to clear changes back to default setting for Image Color tab only and NOT for the Advanced Image Color dialog box. See below.



Using the Image Transfer tab

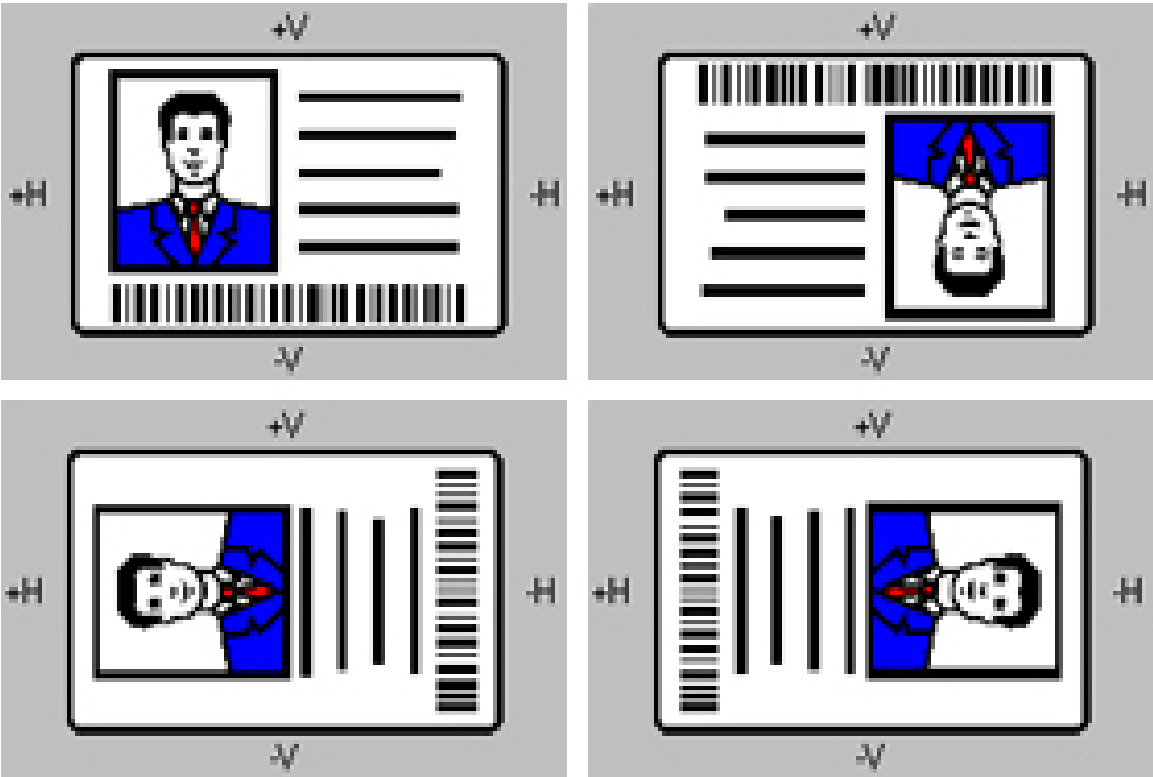
Use this tab to adjust the **Image Position**, **Transfer Dwell Time** and **Transfer Temperature**. (**Note:** The Printing Preferences window has the same Image Color tab functionality as the Printing Preferences window.)



Adjusting the Image Position controls

Use the **Image Position** controls to position the image on a card (to be adjusted).

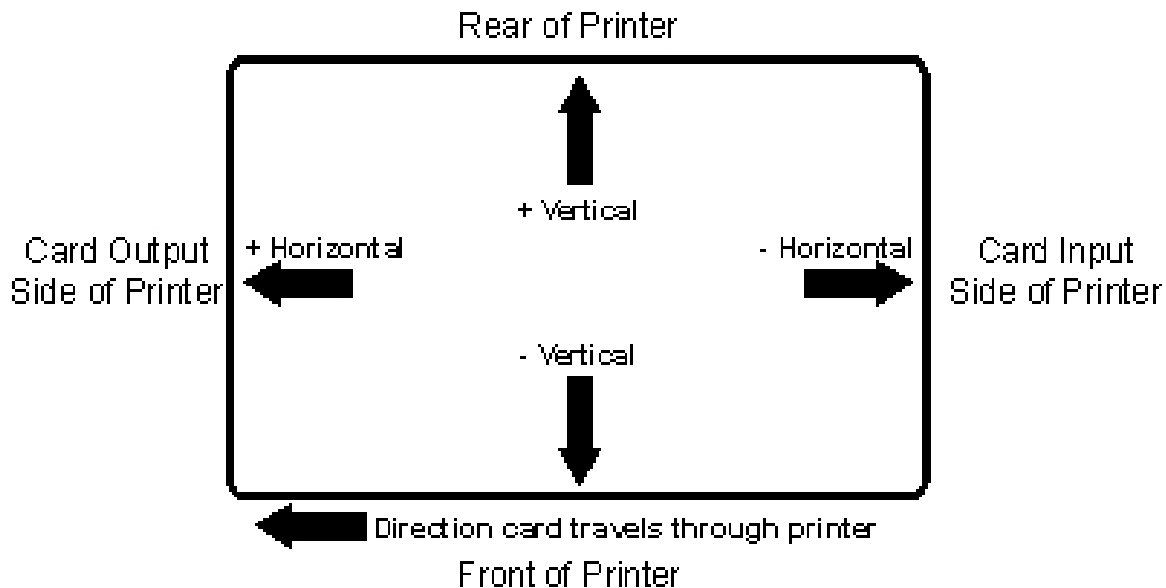
Step	Procedure
1	<p>Adjust the Image Position values by clicking on the Vertical and Horizontal adjustment arrows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• These values ensure that the Cards always remain in the same position as they travel through the Printer (regardless of image orientation).• The Card Illustration (shown in the Image Position box) will flip and rotate according to the selection of Portrait, Landscape or Rotate 180 Degrees.• The outline around the illustration will always remain in the same Landscape orientation.



Adjusting the Image Position controls (continued)

The display (below) represents how the printed image will move in relation to the fixed card position as positive and negative image placement values are entered.

Step	Procedure
2	<p>Follow these instructions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the Vertical adjustment to move the image toward the front of the Printer if a positive number is entered and toward the rear of the Printer if a negative number is entered. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the Horizontal adjustment to move the image toward the card output side of the Printer if a positive number is entered and toward the card input side of the Printer if a negative number is entered. <p>(Note: The maximum value for the Vertical and Horizontal adjustments is ± 100 Pixels (10 Pixels = 0.03 (.8mm).)</p>



Adjusting the Transfer Dwell Time and Temperature

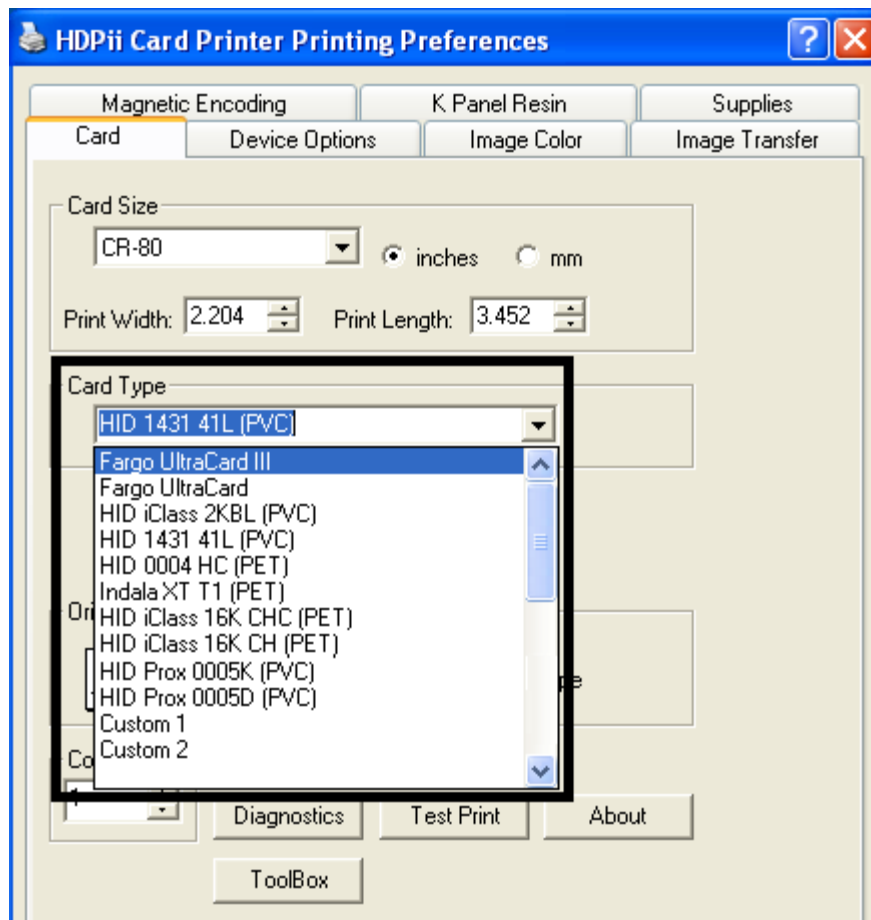
Use the Image Transfer option to control of the **Transfer Dwell Time** and **Transfer Temperature**.

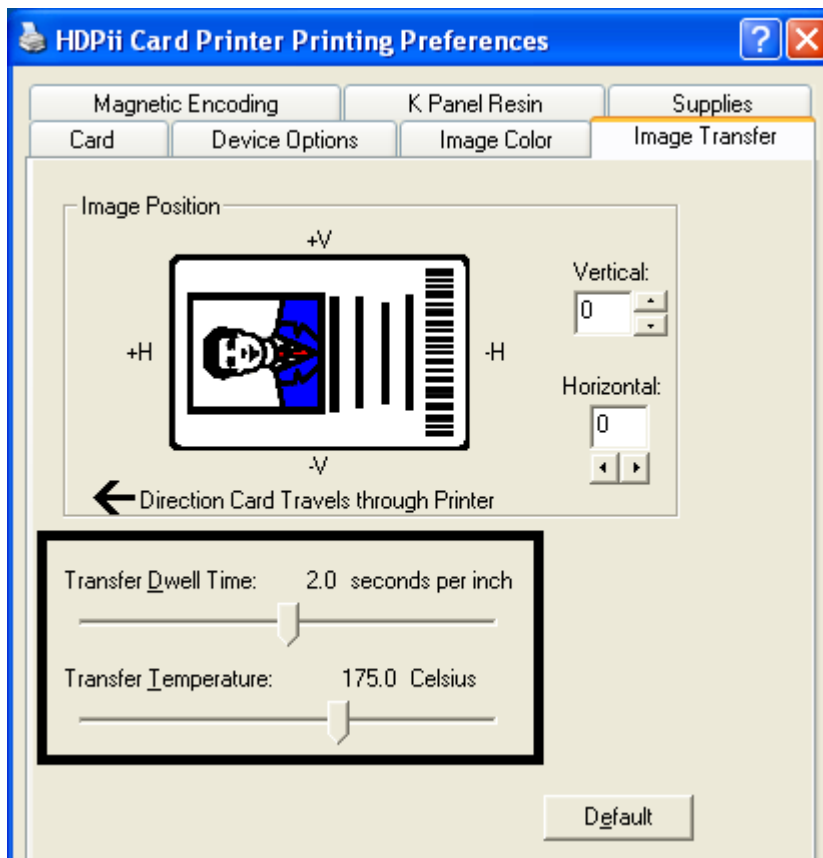
- These settings control the speed and temperature at which printed images are transferred from the Film to the card. These settings may vary depending on the card type.
- The Printer Driver automatically optimizes these settings according to the selection made in the **Card Type** option.
- Changes made to the Dwell Time and temperature settings are saved for the selected **Card Type** option (upon exiting the Printer Driver setup in the Printer's Control Panel).

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Transfer Dwell Time Sets dwell time for InTM transfer in seconds per inch Lower limit = 1.0 seconds per inch, Upper limit = 3.0 seconds per inch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• UltraCard III - Composite: Default = 2.0 seconds per inch• UltraCard - PVC: Default = 2.0 seconds per inch• Custom: Default = 2.0 seconds per inch

Adjusting the Transfer Dwell Time and Temperature (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	<p>Transfer Temperature Sets temperature for InTM transfer in Celsius Lower limit = 150.0 Celsius, Upper limit = 190.0 Celsius</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UltraCard III - Composite: Default = 175.0 seconds per inch • UltraCard- PVC: Default = 175.0 Celsius • Custom: Default = 175.0 Celsius



Adjusting the Transfer Dwell Time and Temperature (continued)

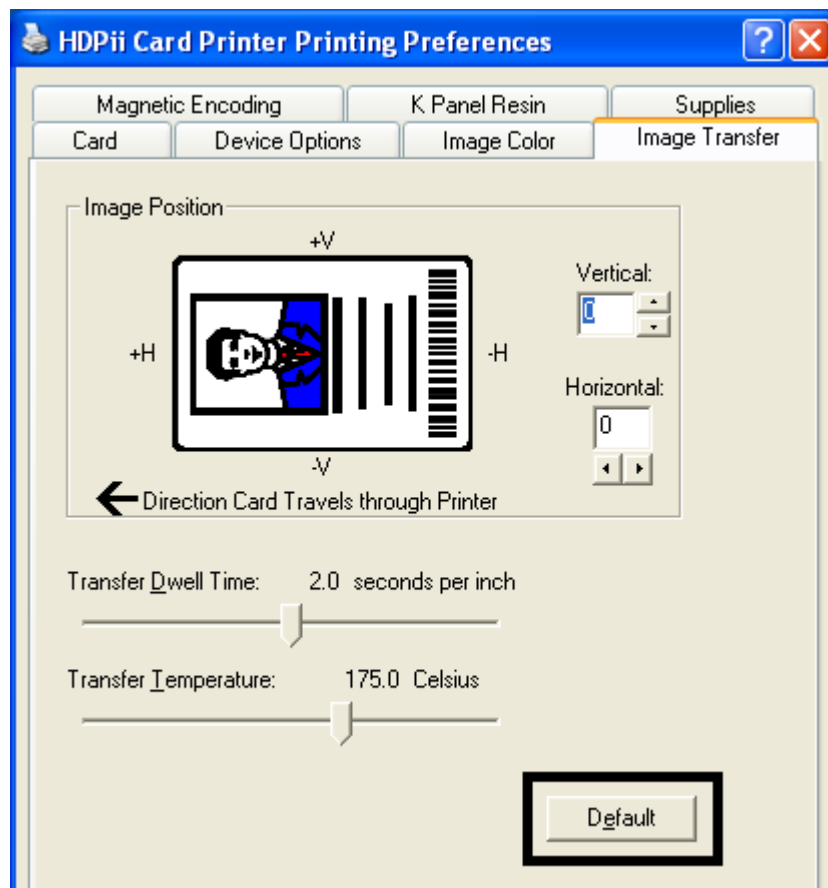
Adjusting the Transfer Dwell Time and Temperature

Step	Procedure
3	Return to the factory default settings for the selected Card Type by clicking on the Default button. If using cards (that differ from the Card Type Glossy-PVC or Matte-PVC options), select one of the Card Type Custom options.
4	<p>Adjust the dwell time and temperature settings to ensure proper image transfer. Determine the appropriate settings for the card stock by setting the Transfer Dwell Time and Transfer Temperature to the default settings. Print a card.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Film is not transferring properly, adjust these settings accordingly. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Film is transferring properly, perform a final durability test called the Tape Test. <p>For instructions on how to do a tape test, see Conducting the Tape adhesion Test procedure.</p>



Using the Default button

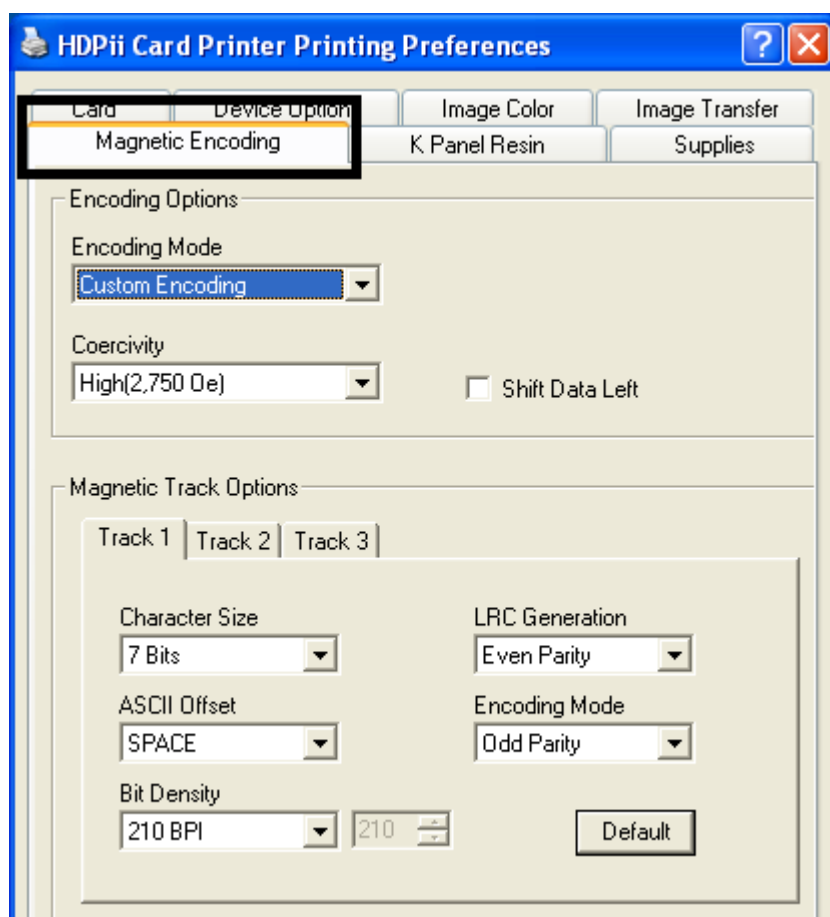
Step	Procedure
1	Use the Default button to reset the Transfer Dwell Time and Transfer Temperature to defaults for current Card Type choice. See below.



Using the Magnetic Encoding tab

Use these options only if the Printer has an optional Magnetic Stripe Encoding Module installed. The Card Printer can be installed with one of two types of factory-installed Magnetic Stripe Encoding Modules: an ISO or JIS II Encoder Module. (**Note:** If no Encoder is detected, the tab is active but all functions are grayed out.)

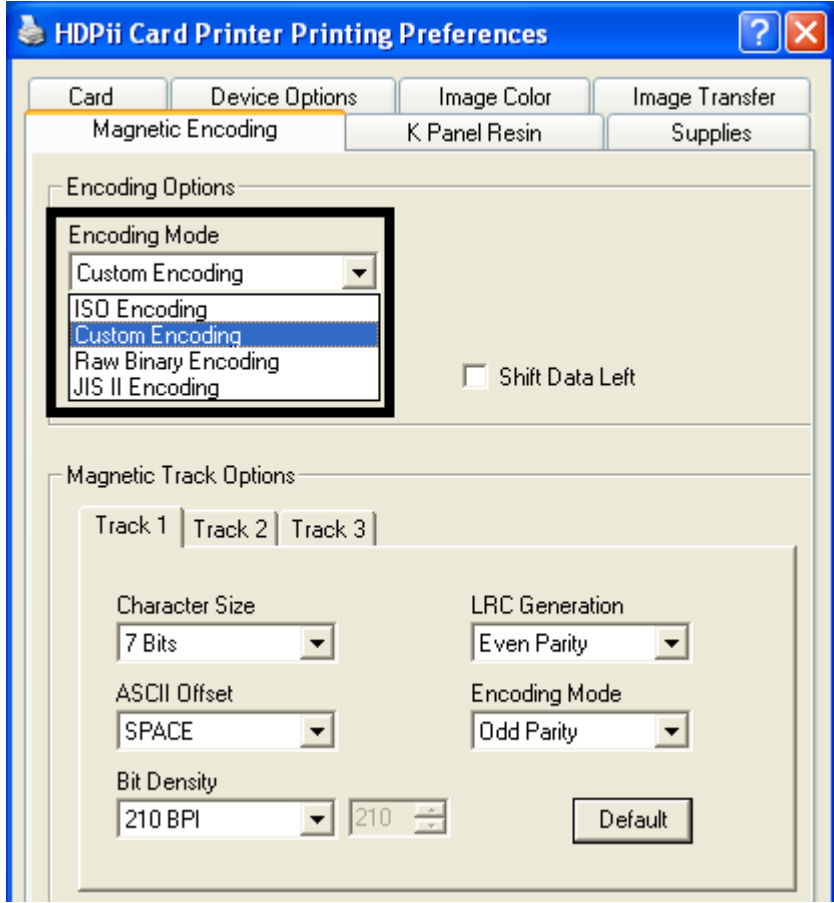
Step	Procedure
1	Select the Magnetic Encoding tab to display options for controlling the Magnetic Stripe encoding process. (Note: The following describes these options and the Printer's magnetic encoding process.)



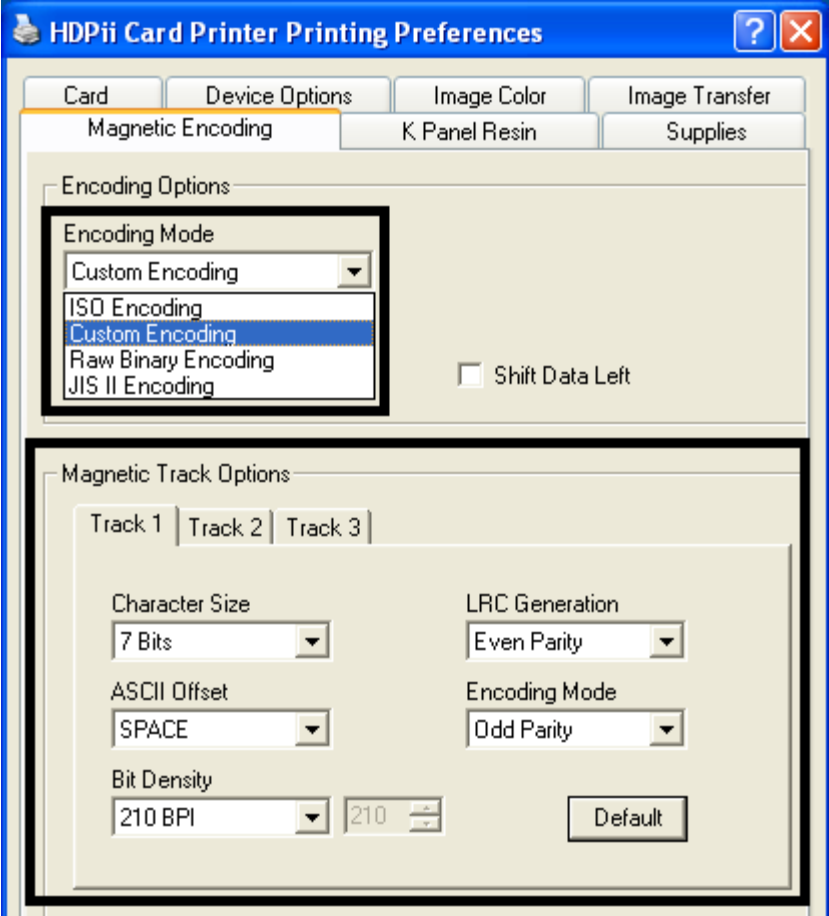
Using the Encoding Mode dropdown

Use the **Encoding Mode** option to specify which magnetic encoding standard to use. This will change the encoding mode and coercivity setting or modify the ISO standards for Tracks 1, 2 and 3, by correctly modifying these Magnetic Encoding options. One of four modes can be selected by this Encoding Mode dropdown:

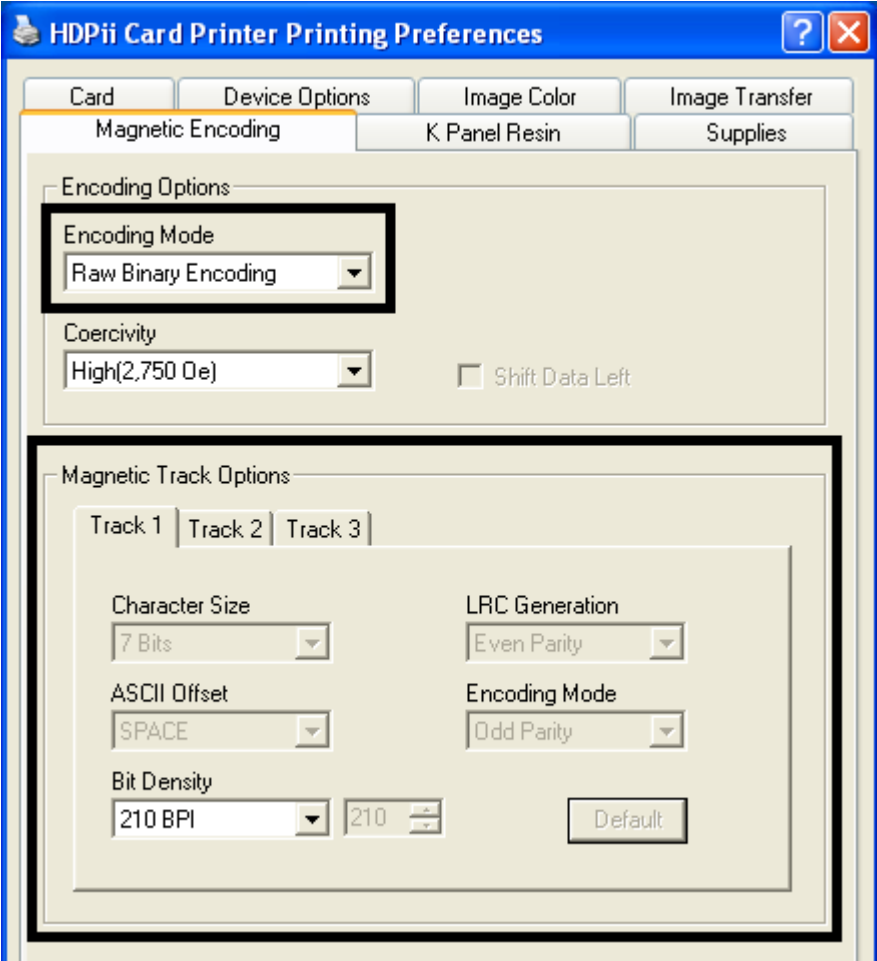
- ISO Encoding
- Custom Encoding
- Raw Binary Encoding
- JIS II Encoding

Category	Description
ISO Encoding selection (active and inactive functions)	<p>If you select ISO Encoding, you send down a formatted set of characters. (Note: This selection activates the track tabs. However, all functions on the Track tabs are inactive/gray and display ISO defaults, which are the defaults listed for each track below. The Shift Data Left check box remains unchecked and inactive.)</p> 

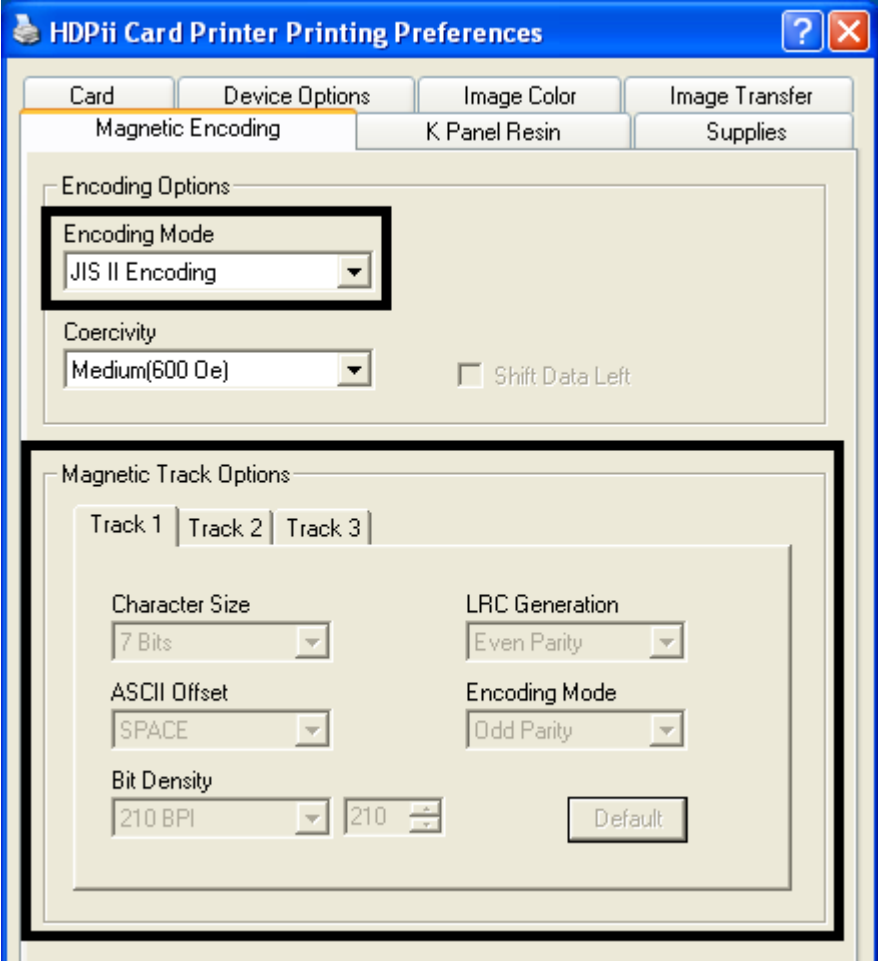
Using the Encoding Mode dropdown list (continued)

Category	Description
Custom Encoding selection (active and inactive functions)	<p>If you select Custom Encoding, all options are active. The Default is ISO Encoding. (Note: The defaults are the same as the ISO Encoding defaults. However, all functions on the Magnetic Track Options tabs are active.)</p> 

Using the Encoding Mode dropdown list (continued)

Category	Description
Raw Binary Encoding selection (active and inactive functions)	<p>If you select Raw Binary Encoding, you send down a raw binary string rather than a formatted set of characters. (Note: The Coercivity dropdown function is active and the Shift Data Left checkbox is not active. All functions on the Magnetic Track Options tabs are inactive except for Bit Density.)</p> 

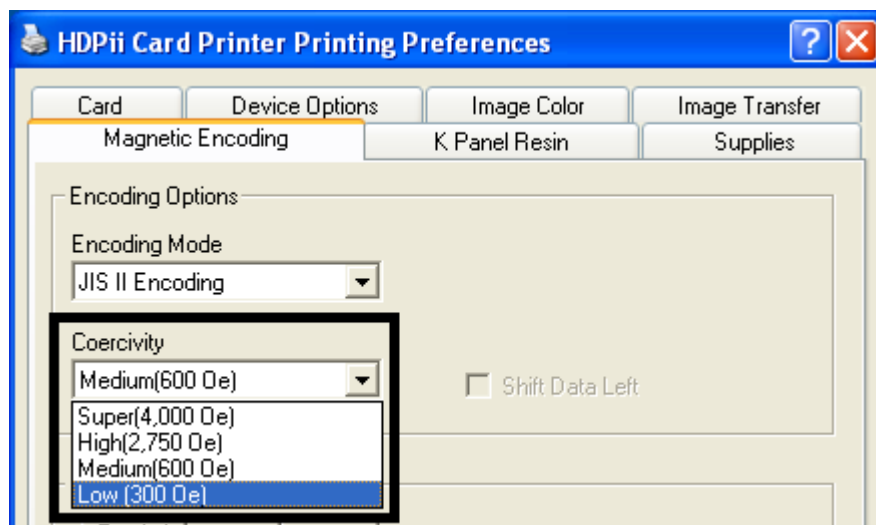
Using the Encoding Mode dropdown list

Category	Description
JIS II Encoding selection (active and inactive functions)	<p>If you select JIS II Encoding, specific standards are used. (Note: This selection disables all the Magnetic Track Options tabs. It also disables the Coercivity dropdown function and Shift Data Left checkbox option.)</p> <p>The default Coercivity is 600 Oe.</p> 

Selecting the Coercivity/Magnetic Track

Use the **Coercivity** option to specify coercivity of the cards being used.

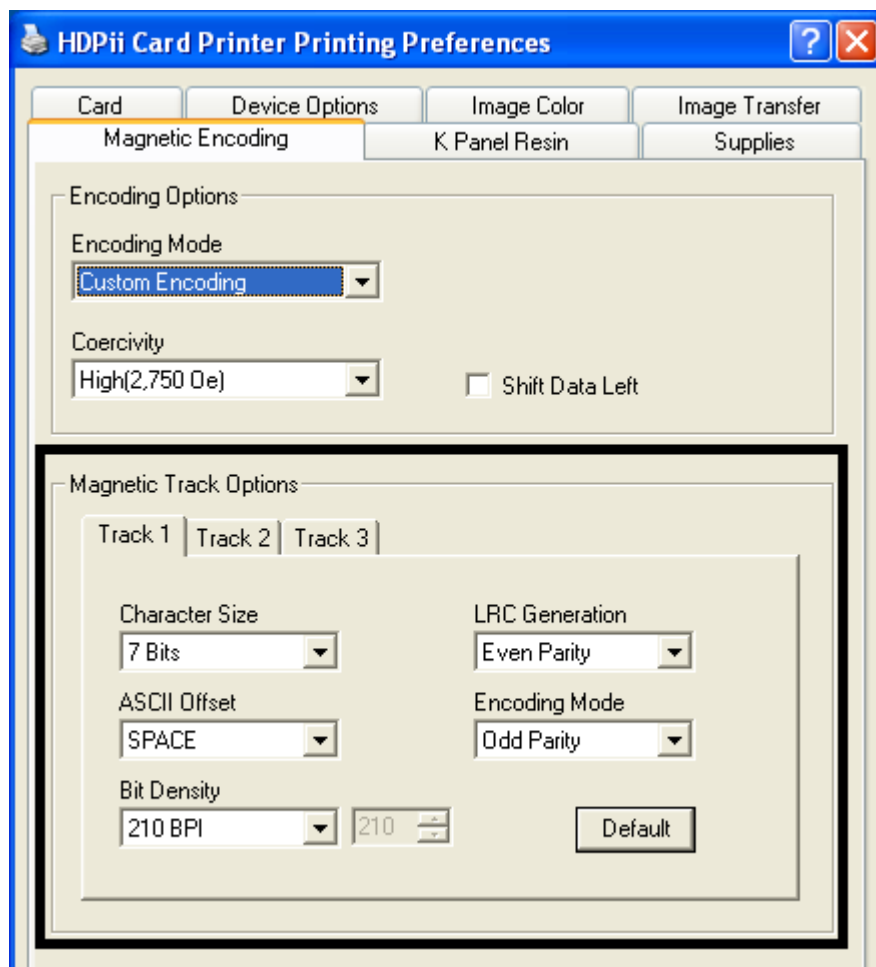
Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Coercivity option (Oersted) to use the Magnetic Stripe type that matches the card type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Super Coercivity = 4,000 Oersted • High Coercivity = 2,750 Oersted • Medium Coercivity = 600 Oersted • Low Coercivity = 300 Oersted
2	<p>Select the Magnetic Track Selection option to specify which track is to be configured through the Magnetic Track Options (if the application being used requires customization of the standard ISO encoding process). See Reviewing the Magnetic Track Options.</p>



Reviewing the Shift Data Left Function

Use the **Shift Data Left** option, which applies to all tracks when selected. (**Note:** When this option is unchecked, it is the default.)

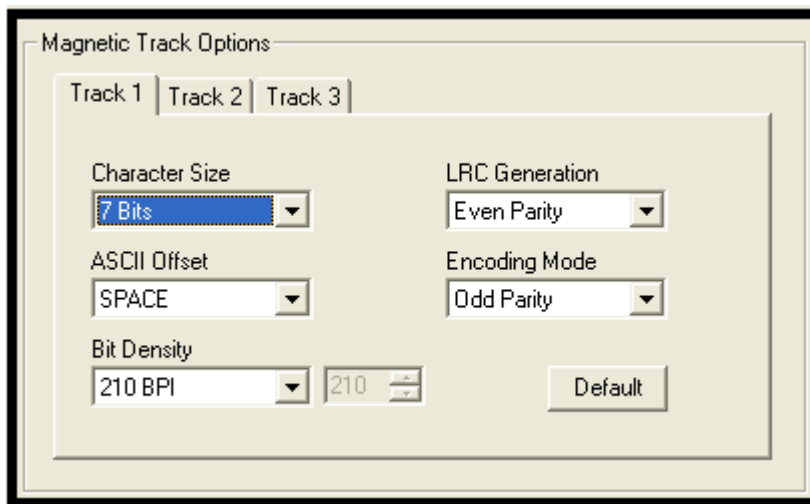
Step	Procedure
1	Select this option to shift the recorded magnetic data to the left-hand side of the card's Magnetic Stripe. (Note: This is useful in situations that require cards to be readable with insert type readers.)



Reviewing the Magnetic Track Options

Use these options to customize the ISO encoded data format for each of the Magnetic Stripe's three tracks. (**Note:** Click **Default** to reset the defaults for the current Magnetic Track Options tab only.)

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Specify which of the three (3) tracks to customize by selecting one of the three track options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">After making the required selection, the Magnetic Track Options box displays the current set of customization options for the selected track.Remember that each track must be customized independently of the other two.



Reviewing the Magnetic Track Options

The screenshot shows the 'Magnetic Track Options' dialog box with the 'Track 1' tab selected. The settings are as follows:

Option	Value
Character Size	5 Bits
LRC Generation	Even Parity
ASCII Offset	ZERO
Encoding Mode	Odd Parity
Bit Density	75 BPI

A 'Default' button is located at the bottom right of the dialog box.

The screenshot shows the 'Magnetic Track Options' dialog box with the 'Track 2' tab selected. The settings are as follows:

Option	Value
Character Size	5 Bits
LRC Generation	Even Parity
ASCII Offset	ZERO
Encoding Mode	Odd Parity
Bit Density	210 BPI

A 'Default' button is located at the bottom right of the dialog box.

Using the Magnetic Track Options

Use the **Magnetic Track** options for these purposes:

- Customize the ISO-encoded data format for each of the Magnetic Stripe's three tracks.
- Customize each track independently of the other two.
- Specify which track to customize by selecting one of the three track options.)
- Click **Default** to reset the defaults for the current Magnetic Track Options tab only.

(**Note #1:** After making the required selection, the Magnetic Track options box displays the current set of customization options for the selected track.)

(**Note #2:** For most applications, the default settings for these options do not need to be changed.)

The screenshot shows the 'Magnetic Track Options' dialog box with the 'Track 1' tab selected. The settings are as follows:

Option	Value
Character Size	7 Bits
LRC Generation	Even Parity
ASCII Offset	SPACE
Encoding Mode	Odd Parity
Bit Density	210 BPI

A 'Default' button is located at the bottom right of the dialog box.

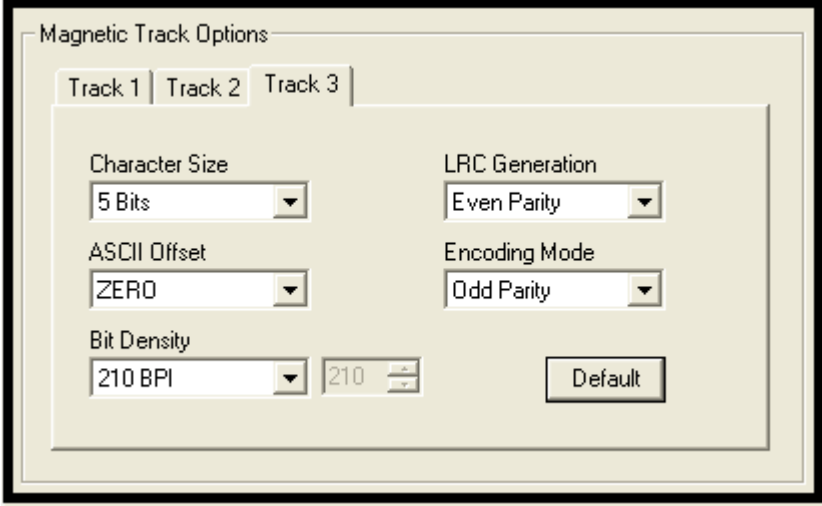
The screenshot shows the 'Magnetic Track Options' dialog box with the 'Track 2' tab selected. The settings are as follows:

Option	Value
Character Size	5 Bits
LRC Generation	Even Parity
ASCII Offset	ZERO
Encoding Mode	Odd Parity
Bit Density	75 BPI

A 'Default' button is located at the bottom right of the dialog box.

Using the Magnetic Track Options

See the previous page.



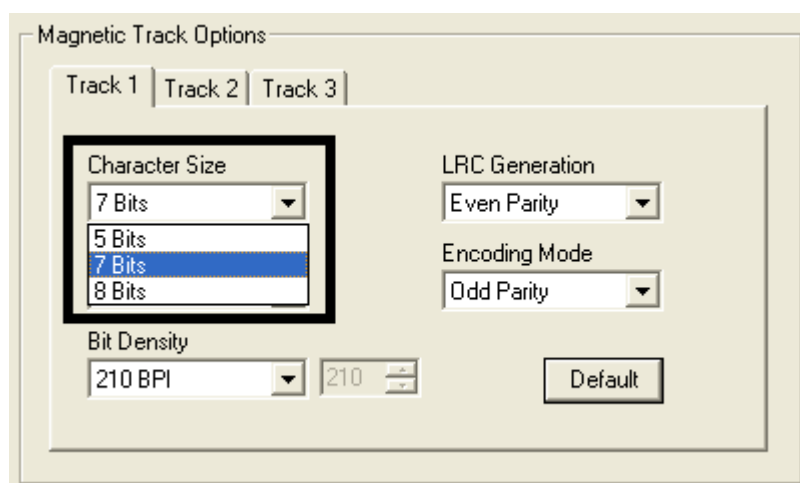
The image shows a software dialog box titled "Magnetic Track Options". At the top, there are three tabs: "Track 1", "Track 2", and "Track 3", with "Track 1" currently selected. The dialog contains several configuration options for magnetic tracks:

- Character Size:** A dropdown menu set to "5 Bits".
- LRC Generation:** A dropdown menu set to "Even Parity".
- ASCII Offset:** A dropdown menu set to "ZERO".
- Encoding Mode:** A dropdown menu set to "Odd Parity".
- Bit Density:** A dropdown menu set to "210 BPI", followed by a numeric spinner box currently showing "210".
- Default:** A button located at the bottom right of the options area.

Using the Character Size buttons

Use this option to customize the Character Data Size (Bits per Character) used to encode the magnetic data on the currently selected track. (**Note:** This character size includes the parity bit (if enabled).)

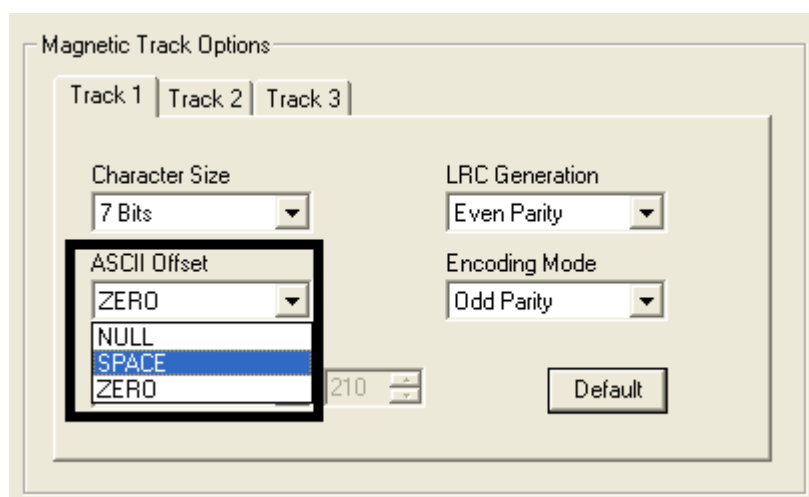
Step	Procedure
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Select 5 Bits to change the bits per character to 5 BPC. (Note: This is the default for Tracks 2 and 3). <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select 7 Bits to change the bits per character to 7 BPC. (Note: This is the default for Track 1). <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select 8 Bits to change the bits per character to 8 BPC.



Using the ASCII Offset dropdown list

Use this option to customize the Character ASCII Offset used to encode the magnetic data on the currently selected track. (**Note:** This character-offset value is subtracted from the ASCII value of each Magnetic Stripe data character prior to encoding on the track.)

Step	Procedure
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Select NULL to change the ASCII Offset to NULL. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select SPACE to change the ASCII Offset to SPACE. (Note: This is the default for Track 1.) <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select ZERO to change the ASCII Offset to ZERO. (Note: This is the default for Tracks 2 and 3.)

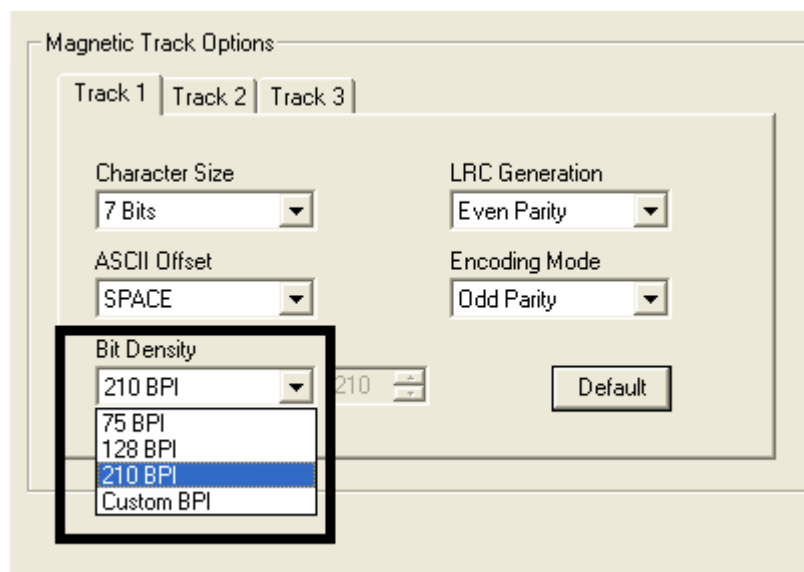


Using the Bit Density dropdown list

Use this option to customize the Bit Recording Density (Bits per Inch) used to encode the magnetic data on the currently selected track.

The default ISO Standard selections for this option are as follows:

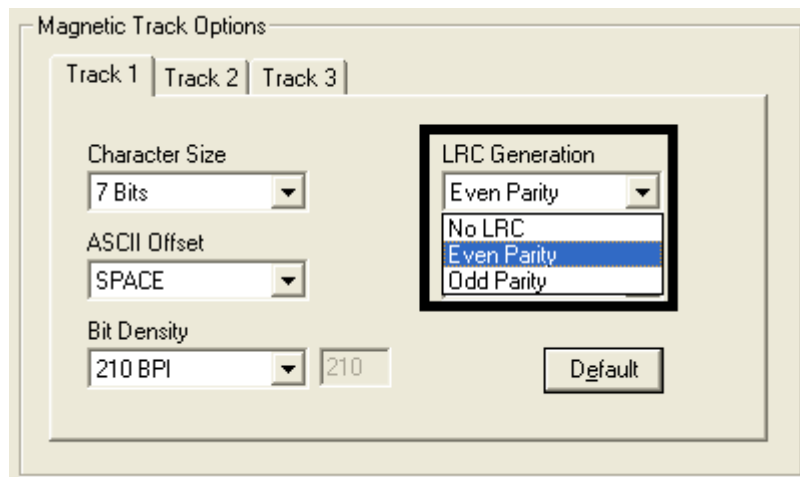
Step	Procedure
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select 75 BPI to change the bits per inch to 75 BPI. (Note: This is the default for Track 2.) OR Select 128 BPI to change the bits per inch to 128 BPI. OR Select 210 BPI to change the bits per inch to 210 BPI. (Note: This is the default for Tracks 1 and 3.) OR Select Custom BPI, which enables the custom BPI text box. (Note: The lower limit is 75 and upper limit is 210.)



Using the LRC Generation dropdown list

Use this option to customize the LRC Generation Mode (used to encode the magnetic data on the currently selected track).

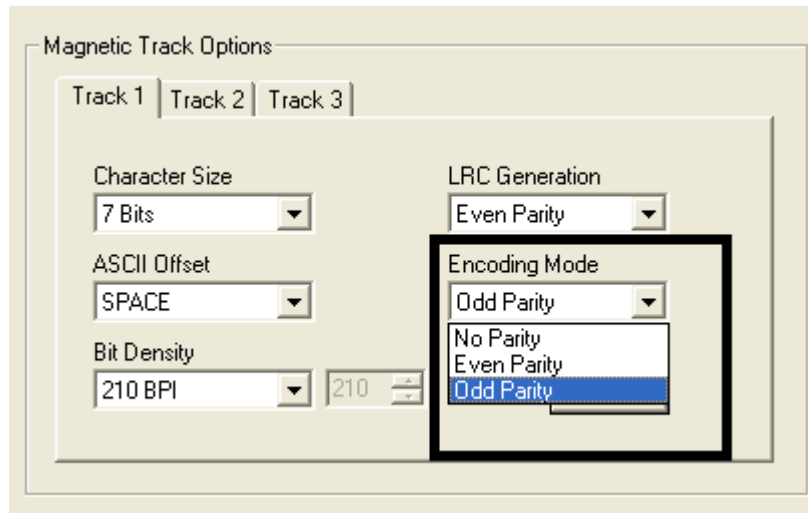
Step	Procedure
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Select No LRC to change the LRC Generation to none. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select Even Parity to change the LRC Generation to Even Parity. (Note: This is the default for all tracks.) <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select Odd Parity to change the LRC Generation to Odd Parity.



Using the Encoding Mode dropdown list

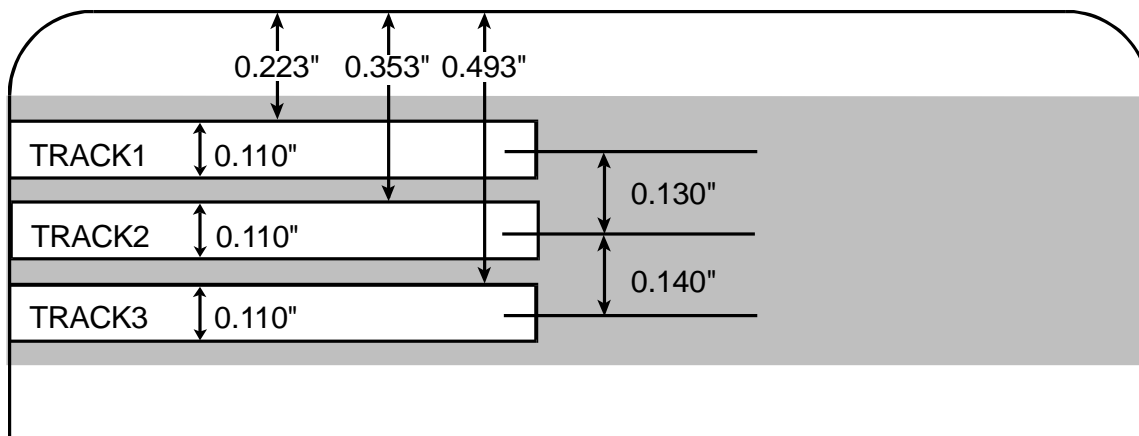
Use this option to customize the Encoding Mode (used to encode the magnetic data on the currently selected track).

Step	Procedure
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Select No Parity to change the Character Parity to none. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select Even Parity to change the Character Parity to Even Parity. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Select Odd Parity to change the Character Parity to Odd Parity. (Note: This is the default for all tracks.)



Reviewing the ISO Track Locations

The magnetic Encoding Module encodes onto tracks in accordance with an ISO 7811-2 Magnetic Stripe. For track locations, review the display below.



Sending the Track Information

Magnetic track data is sent in the form of text strings from the application software to the Printer Driver.

- In order for the Printer Driver to differentiate between Magnetic Track data and the rest of the printable objects, specific characters must be added to the magnetic data to be encoded.
- These specify the data that is to be encoded, the tracks to encode and mark the start and stop of the data string.
- In some cases, these specific characters are automatically added to the string of track data by ID software applications.
- In most cases, the user must carefully add these characters to the string of Magnetic Track data. If these characters are not added to the track data, the text intended for the Magnetic Track will appear as printed text on the card.
- To avoid this, track information must be entered as described below.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>When entering track data, the ~ (tilde) character is entered first, followed by the track number (1, 2 or 3) on which the data should encode. This is followed by the data to be encoded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The first character of this data string must be the track's specific Start Sentinel (SS) and the last character must be the specific End Sentinel (ES).• The characters or data in between the SS and ES can include all of the valid characters specific to each track.• The number of these characters, however, is limited by each track's maximum character capacity.• When segmenting track data, the appropriate Field Separator (FS) must be used. The table below shows the SS, ES, FS and the valid characters defined for each track.

Reviewing the Sample String

- Track 1: ~1%JULIEANDERSON^1234567890?
- Track 2: ~2;1234567890987654321?
- Track 3: ~3;1234567890987654321?

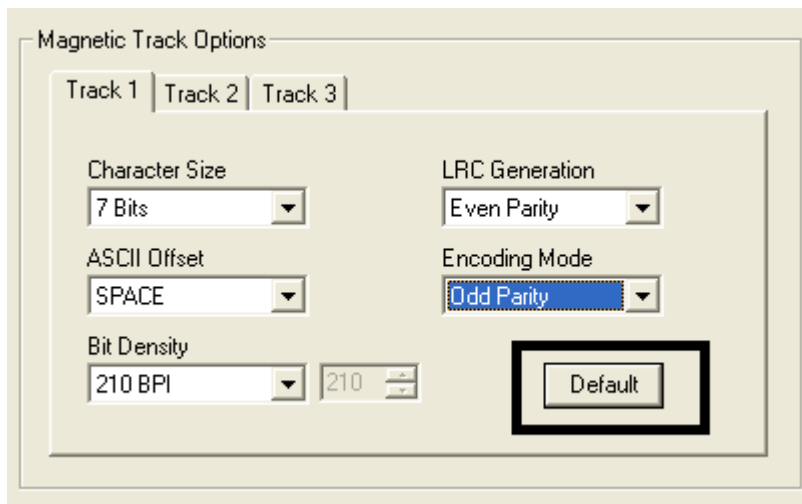
Track	Start Sentinel	End Sentinel	Field Separator	Valid Characters	Maximum Number of Characters
Track 1	%	?	^	ASCII 32-95 (See the table below.)	78
Track 2	;	?	=	ASCII 48-63 (See the table below.)	39
Track 3	;	?	=	ASCII 48-63 (See the table below.)	106

Reviewing the ASCII Code and Character Table

ASCII Code	Character	ASCII Code	Character	ASCII Code	Character
32	space	56	8	80	P
33	!	57	9	81	Q
34		58	:	82	R
35	#	59	;	83	S
36	\$	60	<	84	T
37	%	61	=	85	U
38	and	62	>	86	V
39	'	63	?	87	W
40	(64	@	88	X
41)	65	A	89	Y
42	*	66	B	90	Z
43	+	67	C	91	[
44	,	68	D	92	\
45	-	69	E	93]
46	.	70	F	94	^
47	/	71	G	95	_
48	0	72	H		
49	1	73	I		
50	2	74	J		
51	3	75	K		
52	4	76	L		
53	5	77	M		
54	6	78	N		
55	7	79	O		

Using the Default button (Image Transfer tab)

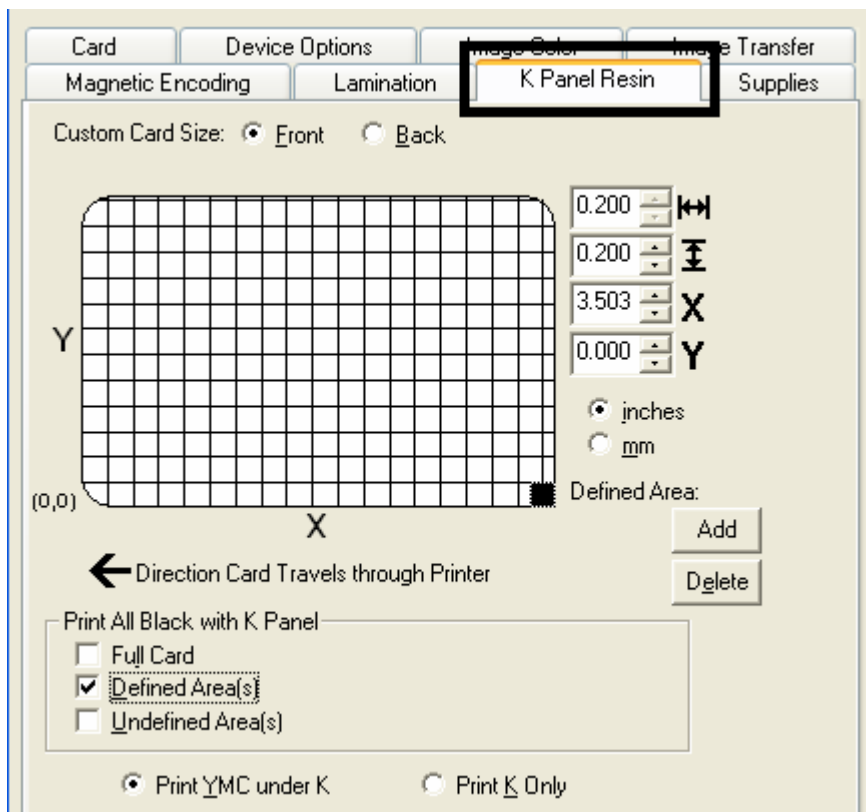
Step	Procedure
1	Use the Default button to reset defaults for the current Track tab only. See below.







Using the K Panel Resin tab

Use this tab to adjust the Card Size, the Direction the Card Travels through the Printer, the Print All Black with K Panel (options) and the Defined Areas. Use this tab to control where the resin black (K) Panel of a full-color Ribbon is printed. (**Note:** When Disable Printing under the Device Options tab is selected, this tab will be active while all functions will be grayed out.)

- If printing with a Ribbon type that does not have a K Panel, such as the YMC Ribbon type, all K Panel Resin options will be grayed out. Resin black text is desirable due to its sharp, saturated color and resin black barcodes are required to ensure readability when scanned by an infrared barcode reader. (**Note:** The Printer Driver will automatically print all TrueType black text and TrueType barcodes only with the resin black (K) Panel of the Print Ribbon by default.)
- If printing black text or barcodes that are not TrueType fonts or black graphics, select one of the three options listed under **Print All Black with K Panel** (see the next page). (**Note:** The Printer Driver will print areas of the image where it finds black coloring with the Print Ribbon's resin black (K) Panel as specified by each of the following options.)



Using the Scroll controls

Controls	Description
	Horizontal changes the size of the area from left to right <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default = 0.200 inches (5.1 mm) • Upper Limit = 3.450 inches (87.6 mm) • Lower Limit = 0.200 (cannot be null)
	Vertical changes the size of the area from top to bottom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default = 0.200 • Upper limit = 2.183 • Lower limit = 0.200 (cannot be null)
	Defines the X coordinate for the lower left corner of the area <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default = 0.000 • Upper limit = 3.247 • Lower limit = 0.000
	Defines the Y coordinate for the lower left corner of the area <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default = 0.000 • Upper limit = 2.173 • Lower limit = 0.000

Using the Click and Drag capability

Click and drag the corners and the sides of an area to change size and location of area.

- The Horizontal, Vertical size and X, Y coordinates update accordingly.

Click and drag the area to change the location.

- The X, Y coordinates update accordingly.

Selecting “inches or mm” radio button

Select from the **inches** or **mm** radio button to change the measurement type. (**Note:** This is similar to the choice on the Card tab.)

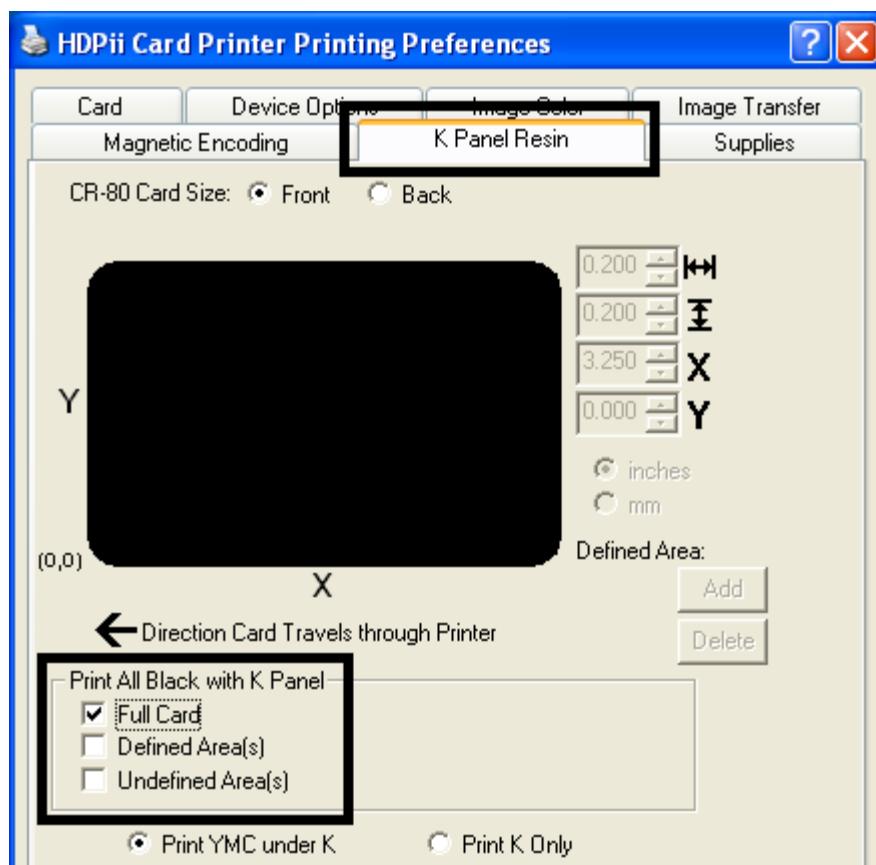
- The **inches** radio button displays the area size and the location in inches.
- The **mm** radio button displays the area size and the location in mm.

Using the Add and Delete buttons

Step	Procedure
1	Use the Add button for these capabilities: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Add an area default sized to .2 (.2 at location “0” with focus on the added area).• Add multiple areas in the same location with the same affect (as if there were only one area). (Note: Intersecting/overlapping areas do not cancel each other out; instead, they act as one area.)
2	Using the Delete button to delete the area with focus from the graphic.

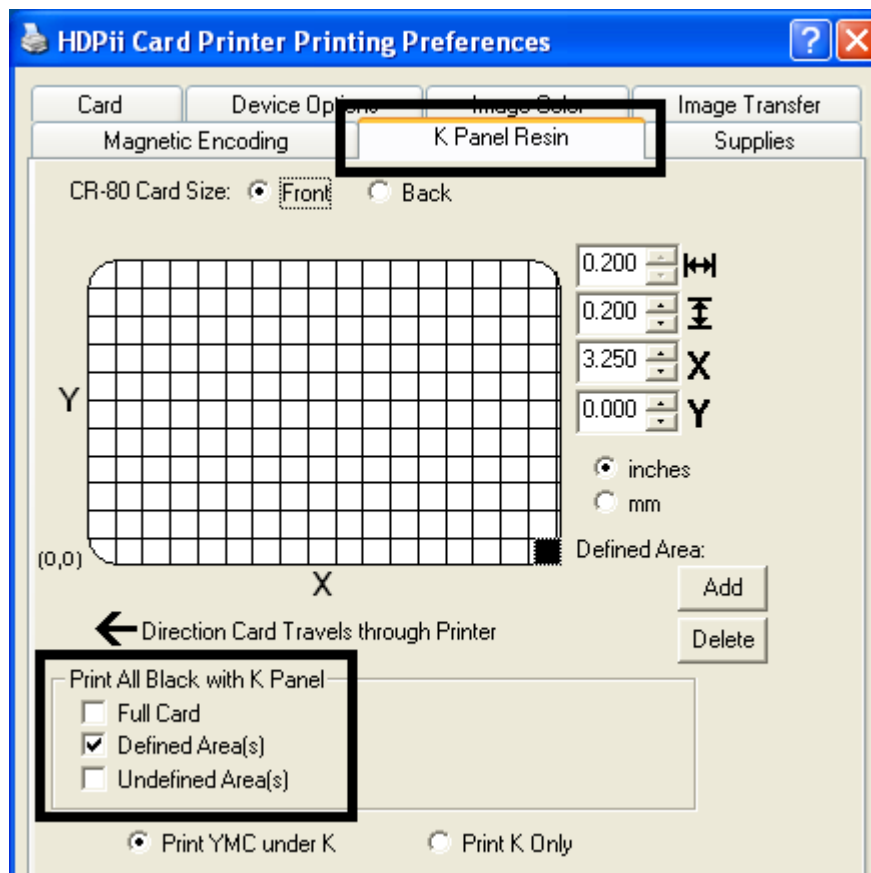
Selecting the Full Card

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Full Card option to print the resin black (K) Panel for all black found within all areas of the image, as shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Card image becomes fully black. The resin prints anywhere for black. The Add and Delete buttons become inactive and are grayed out. The Defined Area object size and location scroll controls become inactive and are grayed out. The inches and mm dials become inactive and are grayed out.



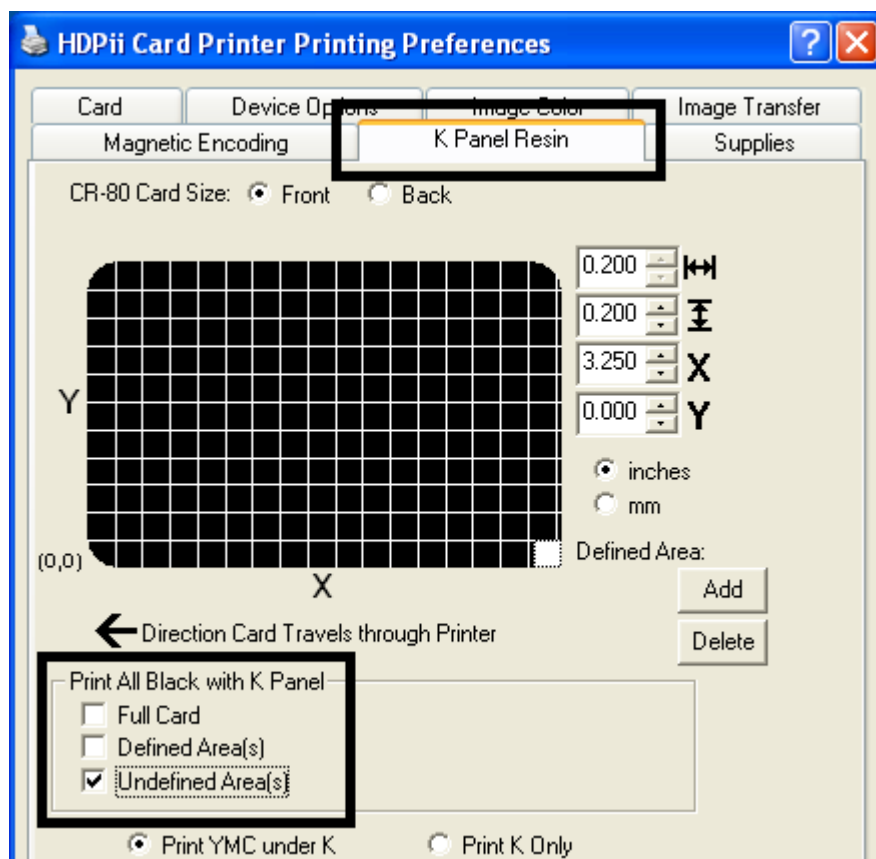
Selecting the Defined Area(s)

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Defined Area(s) option to print the resin black (K) Panel for all black found only in an area or areas defined, as shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The card image becomes white with the grid and one area (available for the user to start with). The defined areas print black with resin.



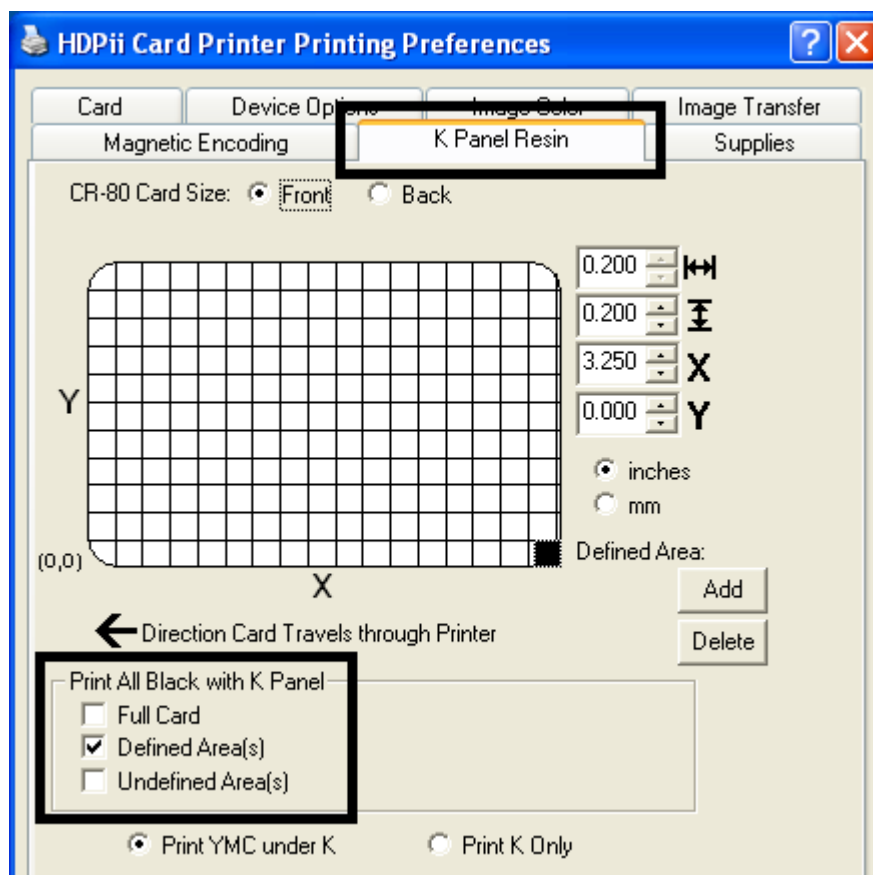
Selecting the Undefined Area(s)

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Undefined Area(s) option to print the resin black (K) Panel for all black found only in the space outside the areas defined, as shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The card image becomes black with the grid and one area (available for the user to start with). The defined area does not print black with resin.



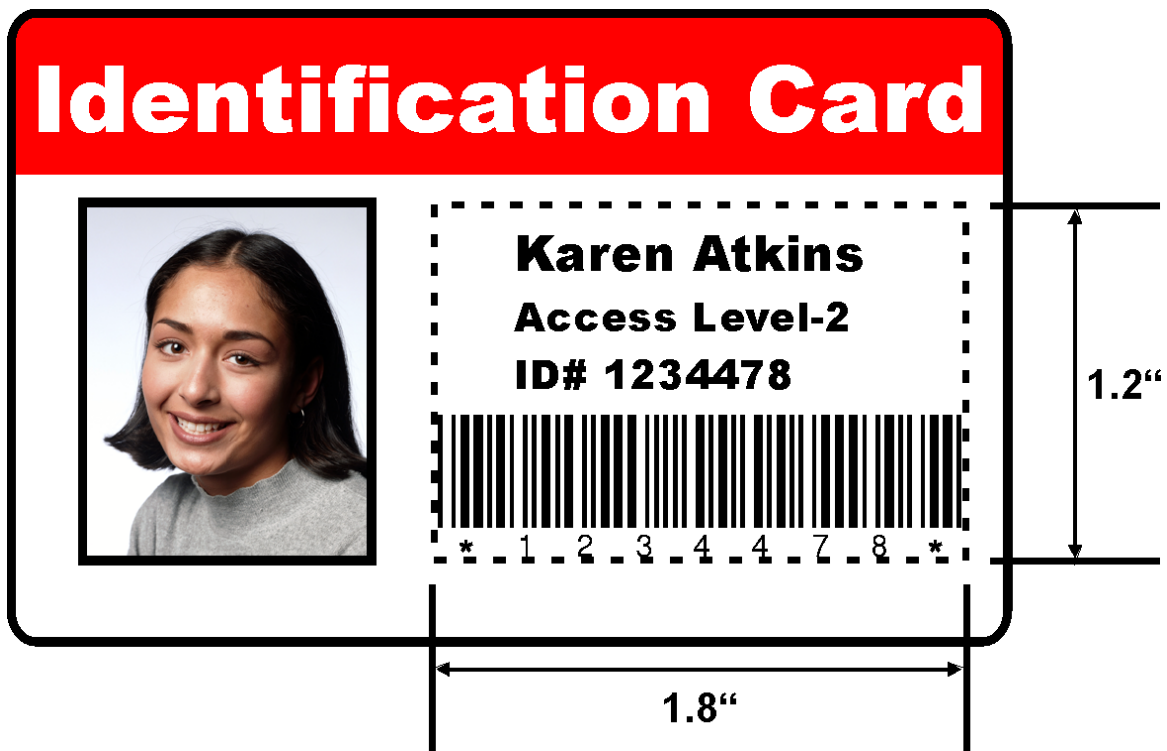
Defining the Area to activate the Card Grid

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select on the appropriate Defined Area (see below) to activate the card grid in the upper half of the window.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is through this card grid that up to five areas can be defined, as shown below. When the card grid is first activated, then a small black square will appear at its default size of .2 x .2 (5mm x 5mm) and at its default location in the lower left-hand corner (0,0). (Note: This square represents the first defined area.)



Measuring the Total Card area

Step	Procedure
1	Determine the area of the card to define. (Note: This area is indicated by the dashed outline, as shown below. The easiest way to determine the size of this area is to actually print a card and look at it in the same orientation as when it exits the Printer.)
2	Measure the total area and enter those dimensions into the dimension boxes. (Note: The minimum size an area can be is .2 x .2 (5mm x 5mm).)



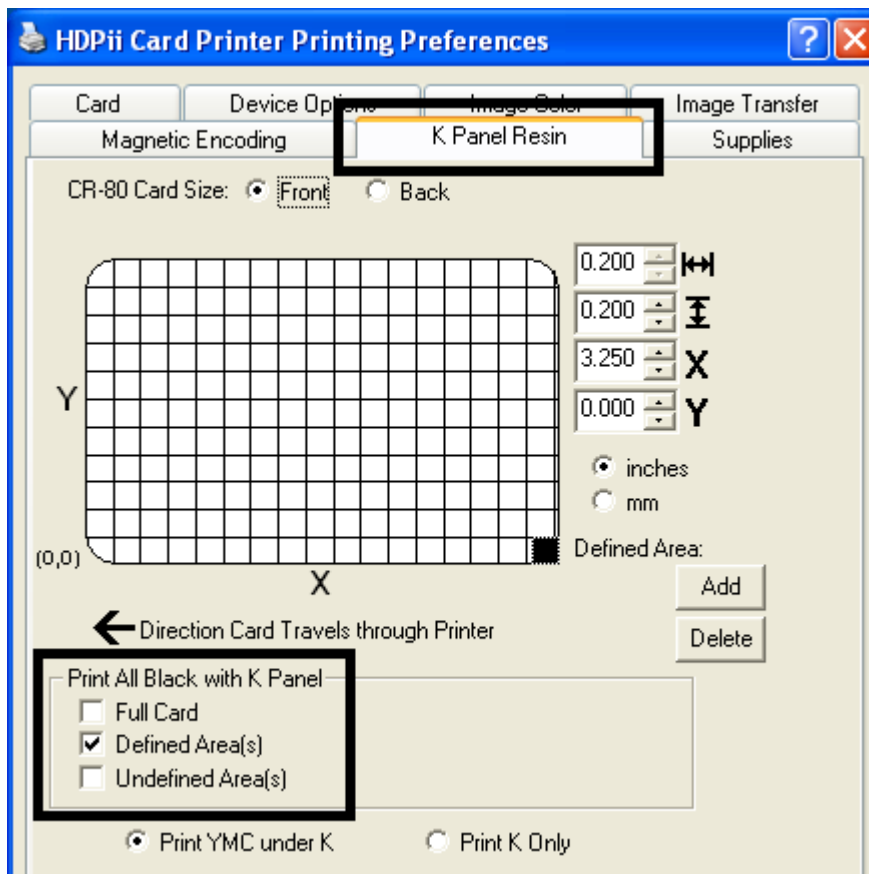
Measuring the Area to be positioned on the Card

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Once the area is sized properly, measure the location where this area is to be positioned on the card.</p> <p>a. Measure from the lower left corner of the card up and over to the lower left corner of where the defined area is to begin.</p> <p>b. Enter these values into the X and Y boxes, as shown below.</p> <p>c. Note that the card grid lines are spaced at .2 (5mm) intervals.</p>



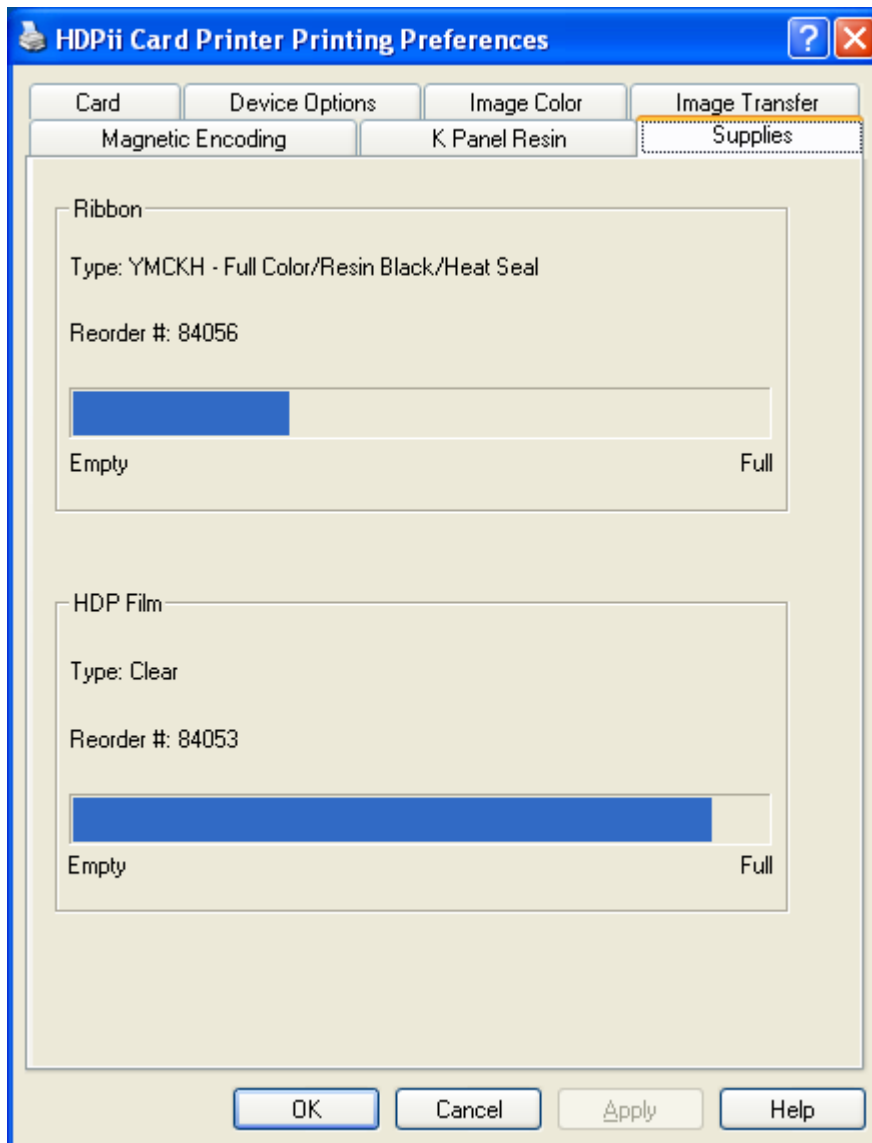
Selecting the Print YMC under the K and Print K Only options

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Use the Defined Area function.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Define another area by clicking on the Defined Area. (Note: Another .2 x .2 (5mm x 5mm) area will appear in the lower left-hand corner. This is the location in which all newly defined areas will first appear. Up to 5 areas can be defined.)Delete an area by selecting the area and clicking on the Delete button. (Note: If all areas are deleted, the K Panel Resin options will automatically be deselected.)
2	<p>Select the Print YMC Under K option to print all black in the designated Defined/Undefined areas with the Yellow (Y), Magenta (M) and Cyan (C) Ribbon Panels directly beneath the resin black (K) Panel. (Note: Select this option if printing resin black text or barcodes onto a colored background to provide a more gradual transition between the two.)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Select the Print K Only option to print all black in the designated Defined/Undefined areas only with the resin black (K) Panel or to print resin black onto a white background to maximize the sharpness of printed text and barcodes.</p>

Selecting the Print YMC under the K and Print K Only options

Using the Printer Supplies tab

Use the options on this tab to view information about the Ribbon and Film installed in the Printer. (**Note:** The gauges are horizontal.)



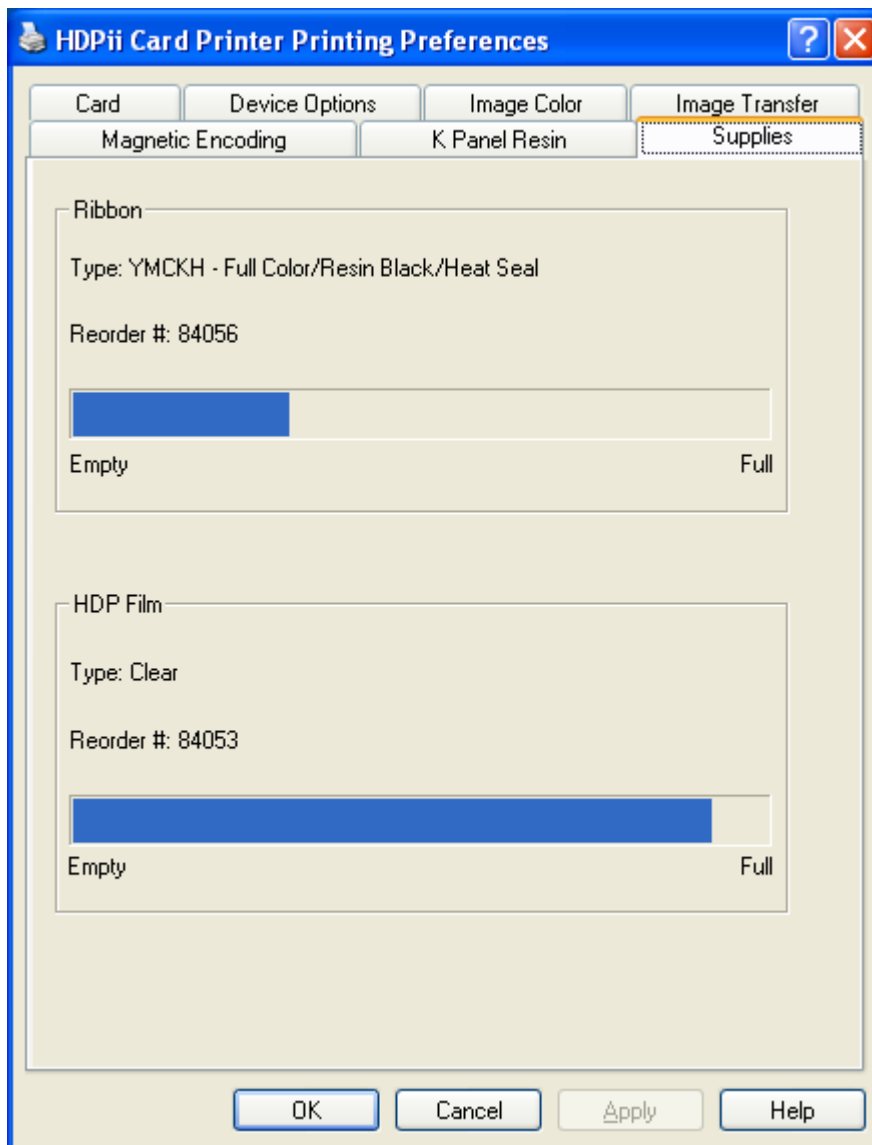
Reviewing Information on the Supplies tab

Here are the guidelines for automatic positioning on the Supplies tab.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Use this tab to determine the following information (see below):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ribbon Level: Type, Reorder Number and Gauge Indicator.• Film Level: Type, Reorder Number and Gauge Indicator.

Reviewing Information on the Supplies tab

Relates to the procedure on the previous page.



Section 8: Inhibit Panel Usage

Using the Inhibit Panel (HDPii)

You can use the Inhibit Panel (I designation under YMCKI) to define areas on the surface of the card, in order to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Examples of where the I Panel has potential use are to ensure that signature panels, security holograms or pre-printed graphics are not covered or obscured by print images or transfer film.

- **When Active:** This feature is active when using YMCKI Ribbons.
- **Application Usage:** An application which supports the use of text based objects is used to access and work with the Inhibit Panel.

Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)

You can use the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility to generate an Inhibit Panel Layout. (**Note:** This utility allows the operator to add a rectangular area(s) that define which areas are to be inhibited.)

- **Inhibit Panel Placement:** Each print job (generated from that individual client workstation) will generate the instructions within the print job that place the corresponding area(s) on the I-panel.
- **Operating Systems:** This method works on all applications generating print jobs to the HDPii under all operating systems. (**Note:** This is regardless of whether the printer (being used) is a shared instance from another workstation or an instance local to that particular workstation.)

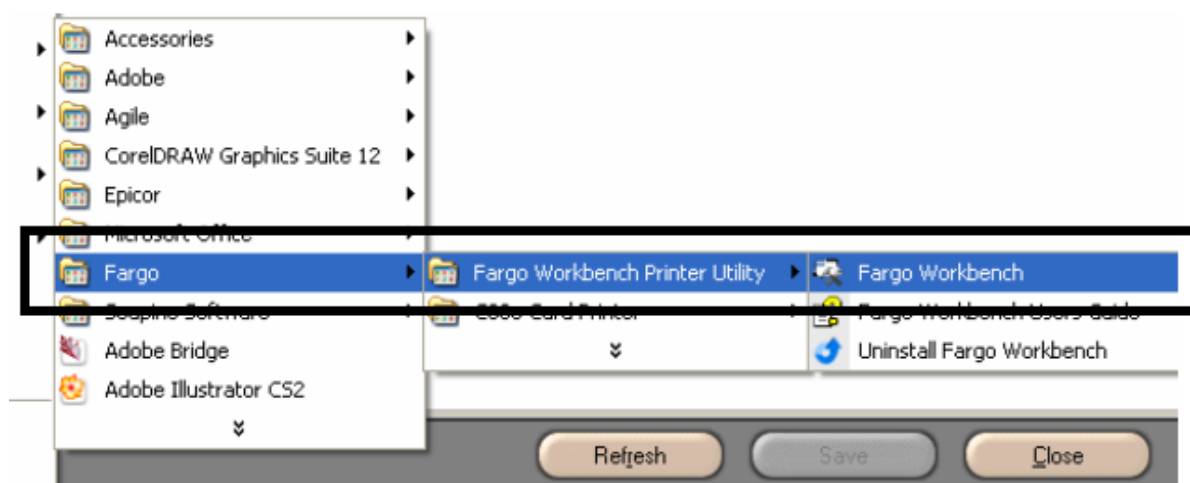
Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility (continued))

Follow these instructions:

- To create an inhibit area using the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility, see **Using the Inhibit Panel Layout Applet** in the Help file associated with the specific application.
- To open the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility, select (on your desktop)

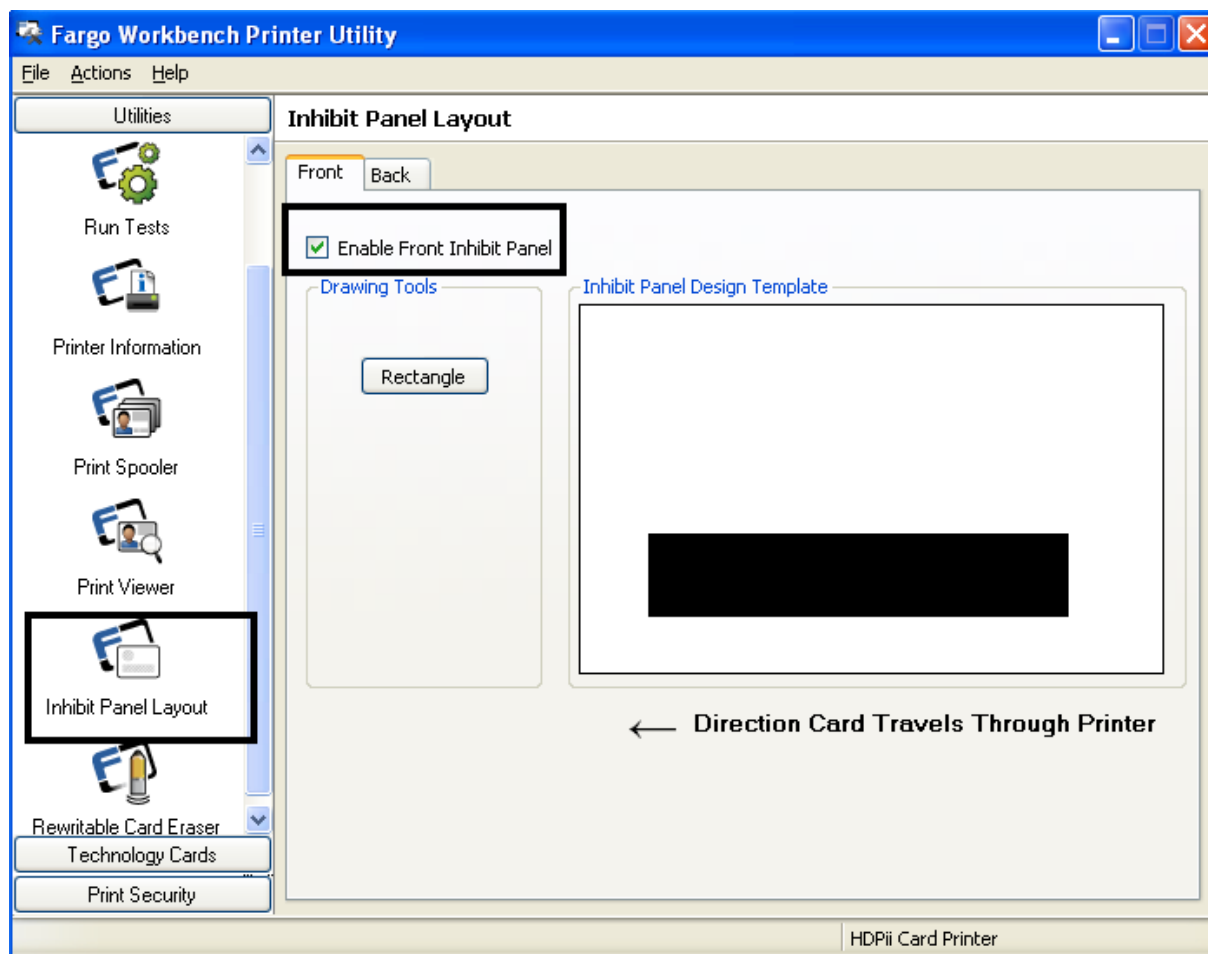
Start > Programs > Fargo > Fargo Workbench Printer Utility > Fargo Workbench

- Please verify that you have the latest version of the Workbench installed. The latest version is located on www.fargosupport.com



Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility) (continued)

Step	Procedure
1	Create the Inhibit Panel Layout within the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility.
2	Save the file. Failure to save will not allow the Inhibit Panel to work
3	You are now ready to print from your application. Any image file will print with the inhibit panel until that image file is deleted.



Using Inhibit Panel with an Application

Some applications can utilize the inhibit panel by using text objects containing a “~i” within the print job itself. The “~i” is followed by the file path and file name of a bitmap file, which is merged when the print job is rendered.

- Rendering is the process which changes the application output to instructions that the printer understands.
- This string will be removed from the print and the bitmap will be used to define the area where the transfer is to be inhibited.

Generating Text Objects

- **Incompatible Applications (which do not print text as objects):** Some Windows applications create print jobs, but do not generate text objects within the print job output.
 - These types of application are not compatible with the inhibit panel and will not generate the correct print output. If an application saves its files as a single bitmap the text will not be sent to the printer to be handled correctly.
 - In this case the “~i” string may appear printed on the card instead of being substituted with the inhibit bitmap.
 - Examples of applications (which are incompatible with inhibit printing) are Notepad and Microsoft Paint. Microsoft Paint can be used for the creation of the INHIBIT BMP.
- **Compatible Applications (which utilize text objects compatible with the Inhibit Panel):** Windows applications which generate text objects to Windows GDI are compatible with inhibit panel operation. (**Note:** Compatible applications will allow you to edit text strings after the file has been saved. Examples of compatible applications are Corel Draw, Microsoft Word, and Microsoft WordPad.)

Rendering Print Jobs

Rendering of the print job occurs on the given local workstation if the Printer Driver is installed for use on that particular workstation.

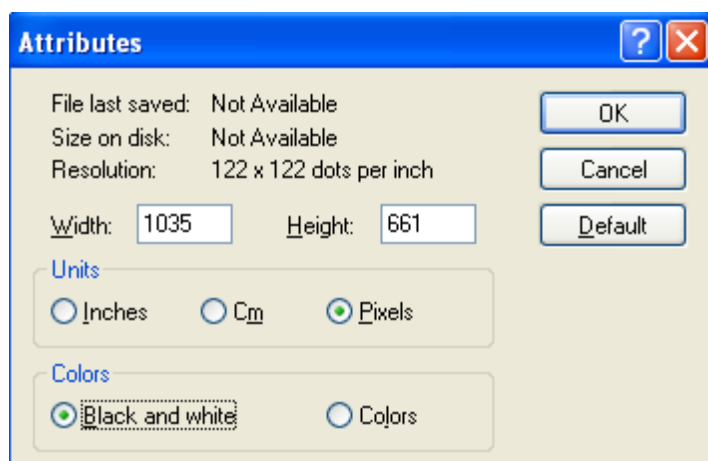
- **Shared Instance:** However, if the Printer Driver is a shared instance (e.g., shared from another workstation), the print job is rendered (converted to something that the printer understands) on the workstation where the Printer Driver is shared from while under Microsoft Windows 2000, XP and 2003.
- **Print Job Rendering:** Under Microsoft Windows Vista, the rendering of the print job may be performed on either the workstation sharing the printer or the workstation creating the print job, depending upon the setting chosen in the printer instance.
- **Rendering Engine:** Since the Printer Driver looks for the file with the “~i” command, the file location specified within the command is relative to the sharing workstation on Windows 2000, XP and 2003.
 - Under Windows Vista the default configuration is to render the job on the workstation that is generating the print job.
 - The bitmap image file must exist in the location specified on the sharing workstation or on the printing workstation, depending upon your settings for that printer on the workstation generating the print job.
- **Example:** Place a “~iC:\Test\inhibit.bmp” text object within a Word Pad print job against a non-shared (e.g., local) HDPII printer under Windows XP to cause the Printer Driver to look for a file with that name and location on the local workstation. (**Note:** This is because the Printer Driver processing occurs on the local workstation.)
- **Inhibit Area Location:** The location of the inhibit area within the print job is the upper left hand corner, where the text object is placed upon the drawing within the application. (**Note:** The inhibit file bitmap must contain one bit per pixel (e.g., monochrome).)
- **Print Size:** If the inhibit bitmap is larger than the page print size, it is trimmed to fit it. The normal print size for a HDPII CR-80 card is 2.204 inches by 3.452 inches.
 - With that print size, the maximum size of the inhibit bitmap area would be 661 pixels by 1035 pixels.
 - If the inhibit bitmap is smaller than the page print size, it will still be used by the driver and be referenced to the upper left hand corner of the ~i text object.
- **Bitmap Black Areas:** The black areas of the bitmap are the areas that will correspond to where the inhibit material will prevent the transfer of dyes on to the card.

Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application)

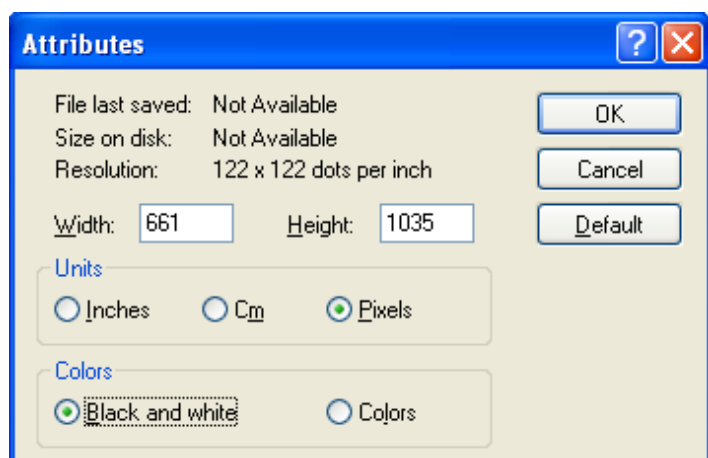
The inhibit bmp file can be generated with any bit map editor. The following procedure explains how this is done with Microsoft Paint.

Step	Procedure
1	Create a bitmap file using Microsoft Paint. Note: The size for landscape orientation is 1035 pixels in width and 661 pixels in length. The size for portrait orientation is 661 pixels in width and 1035 pixels in length. Set this under Paint –Image –Attributes. Select “black and white” under COLORS.

Landscape Orientation (see below)

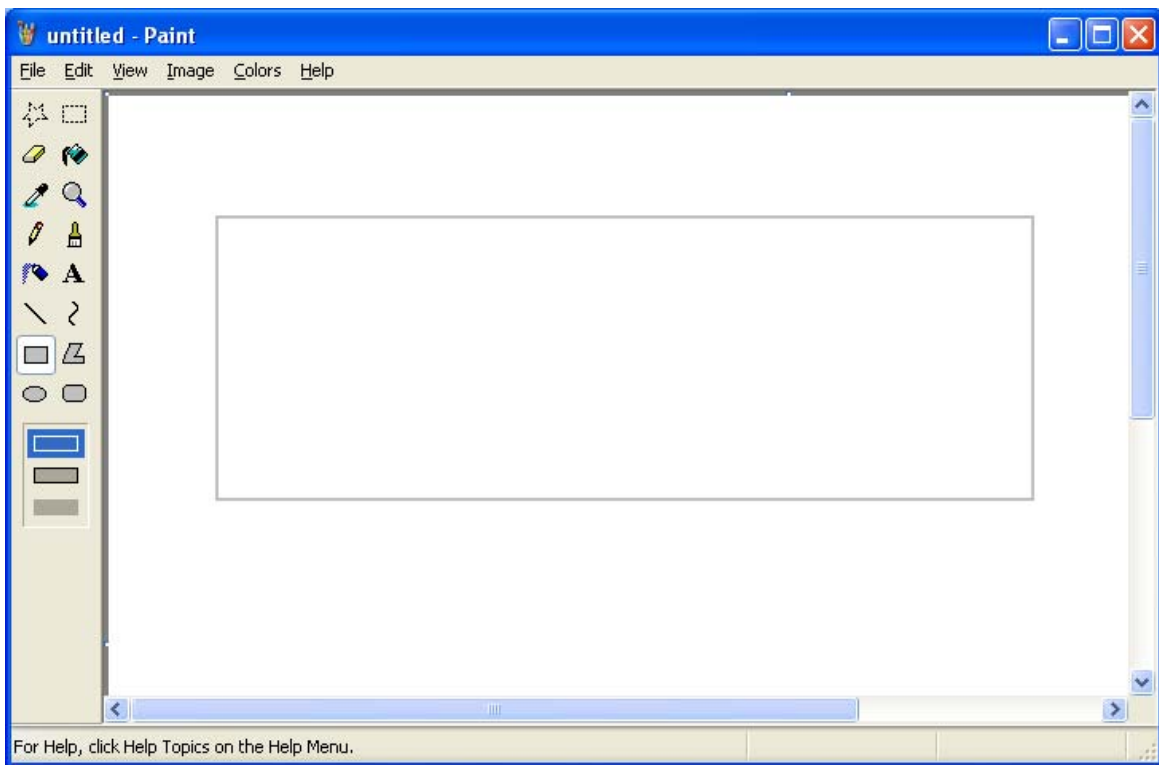


Portrait Orientation (see below)



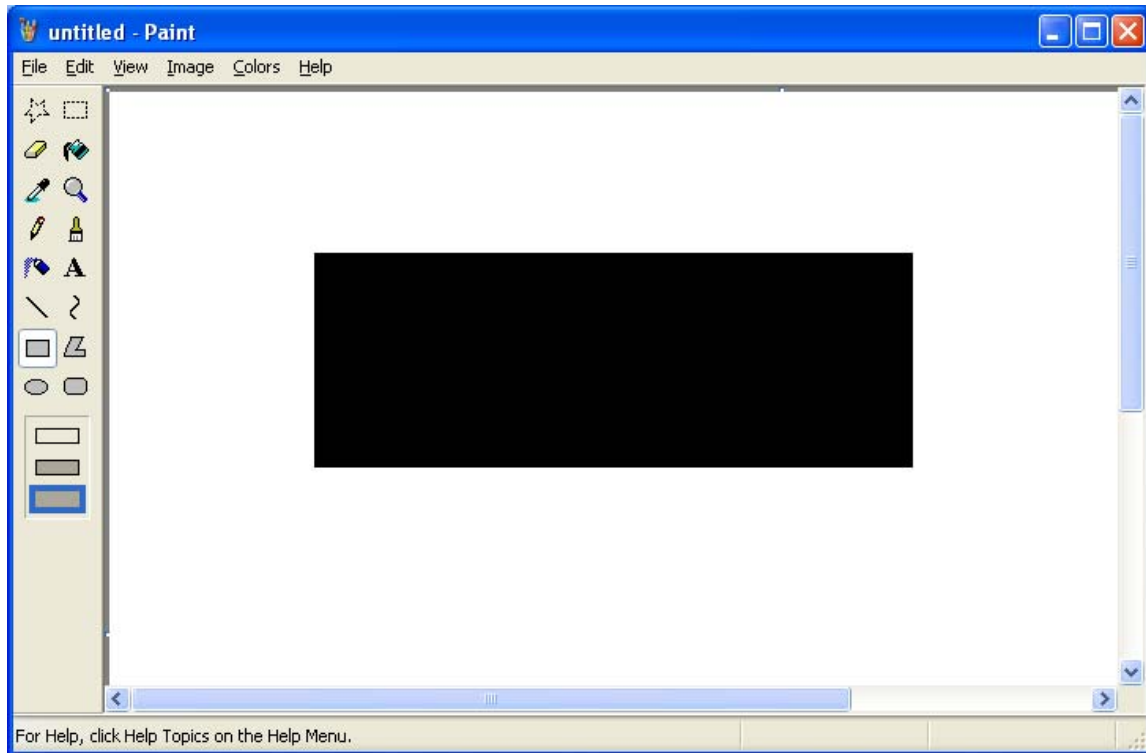
Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Place objects on the image, which correspond to the exact areas that are being inhibited.



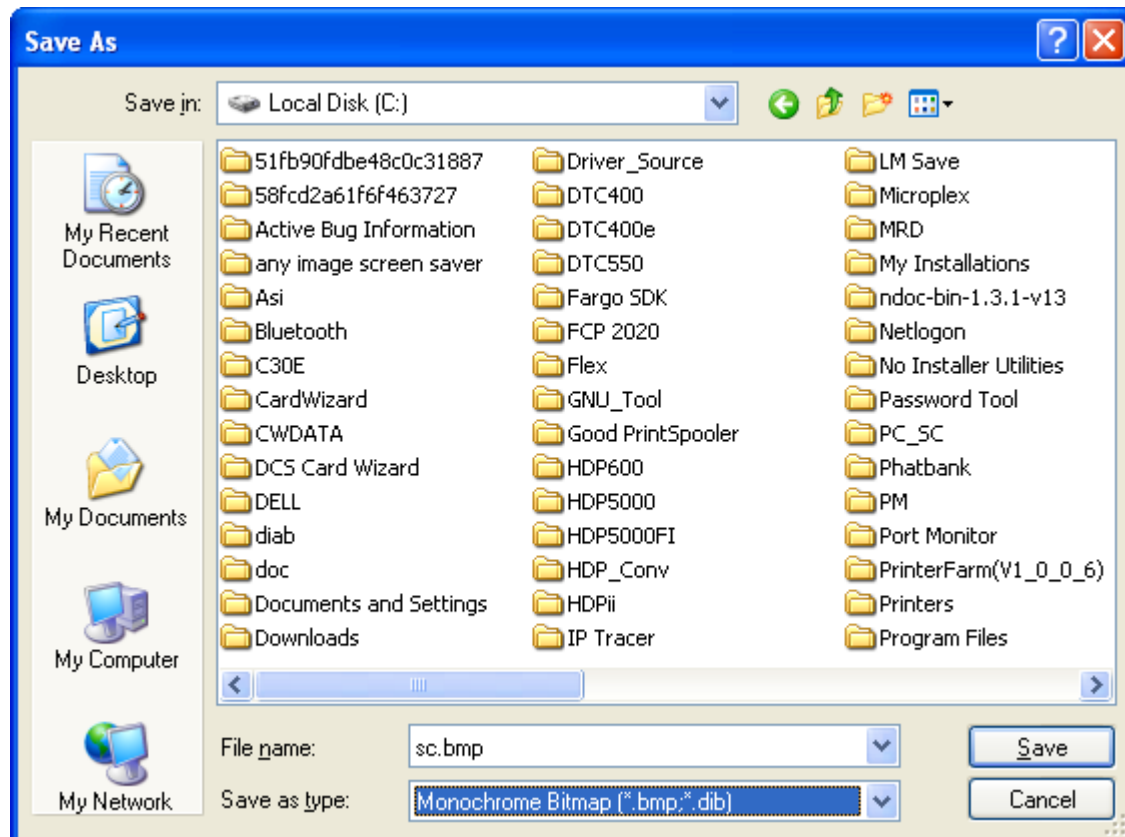
Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Fill the inhibit areas with black color.



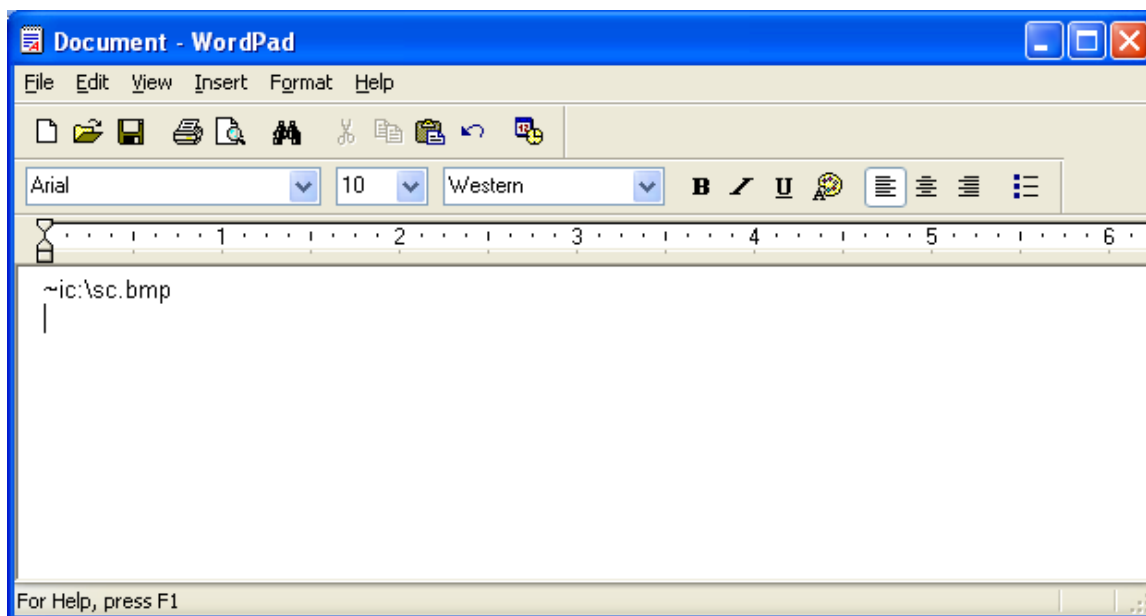
Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	Save the file as a BMP from within Microsoft Paint.



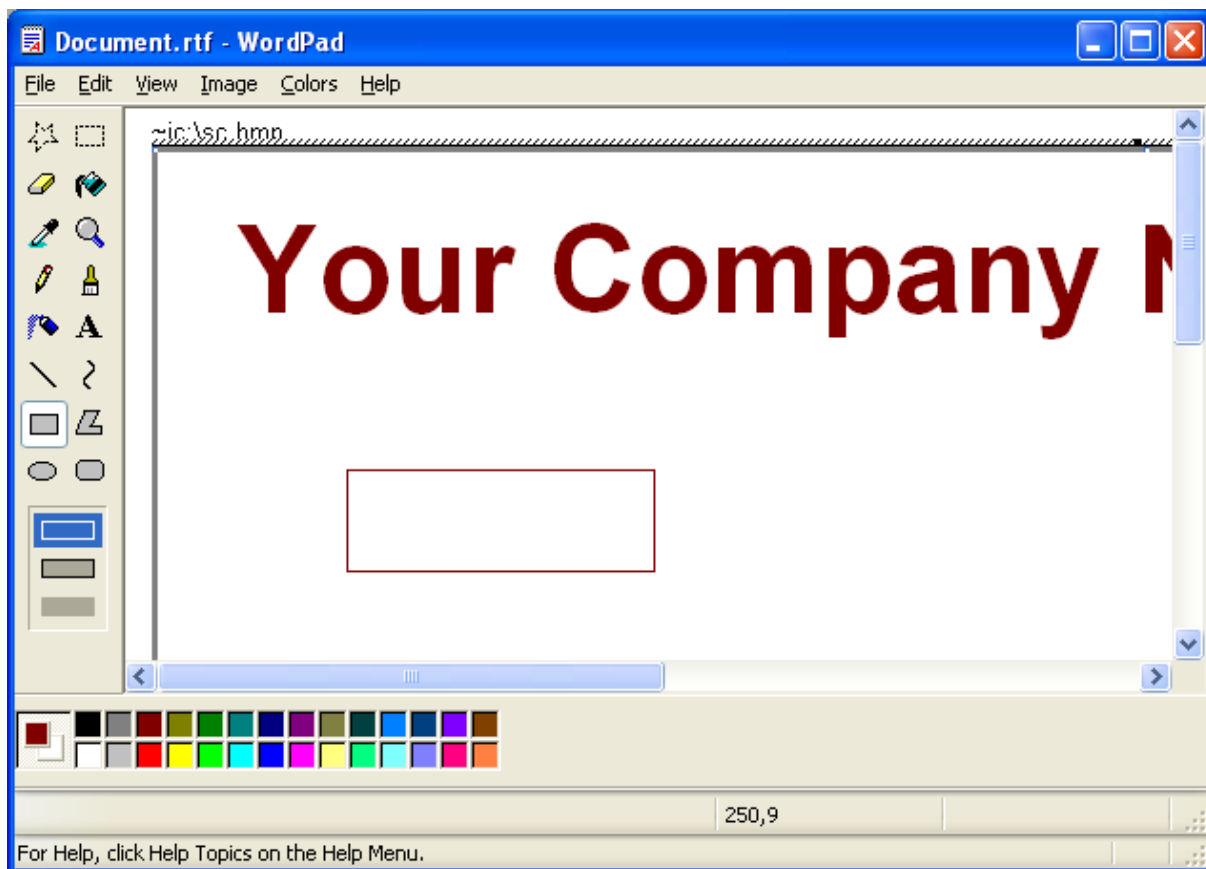
Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

Step	Procedure
5	Add the '~i' command to the application file. (Note: In this case, Microsoft WordPad was used. With WordPad the '~' must be left justified.)



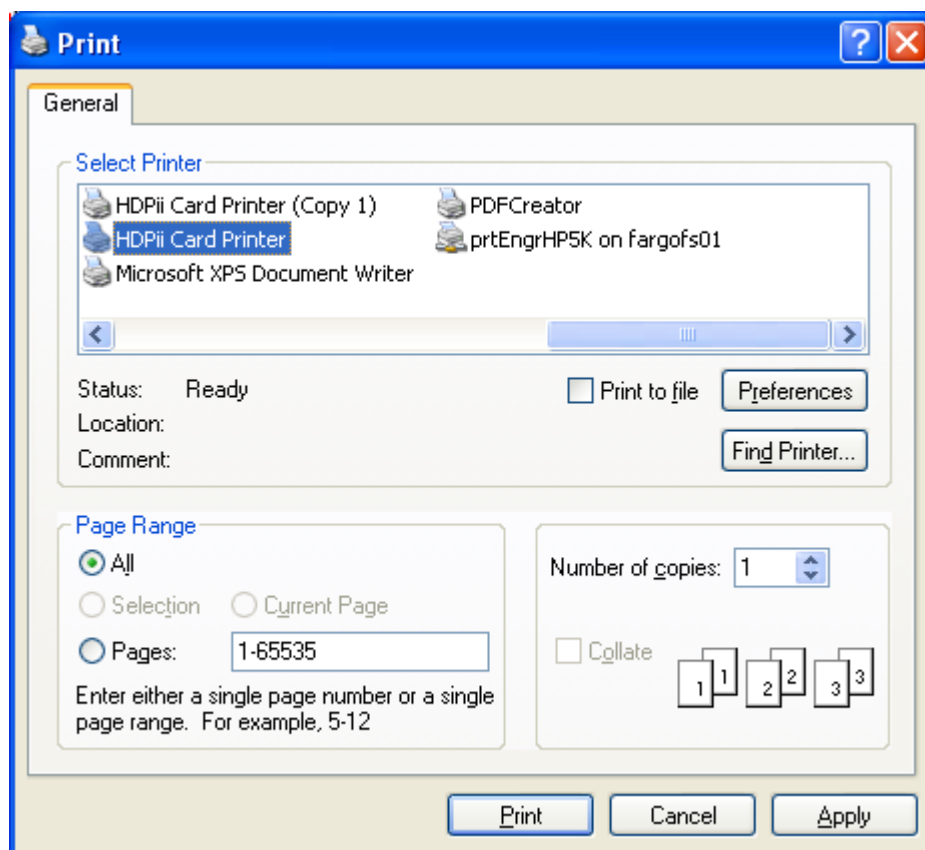
Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

Step	Procedure
6	Create the rest of the card using the application.



Using the Inhibit Panel with an Application (continued)

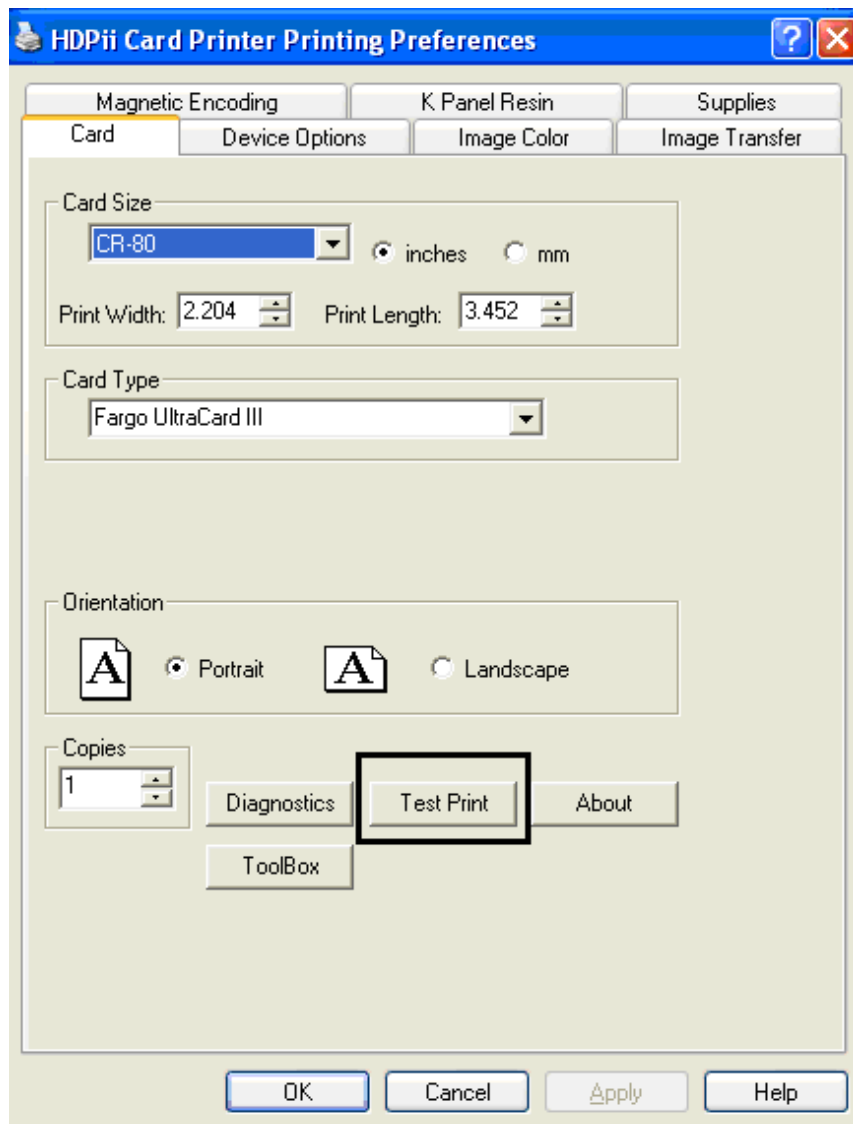
Step	Procedure
7	Print the card from within the application. (Note: In this case, use File -> Print.) If the ~i text object is printed on the card see Troubleshooting the Inhibit Panel
8	This completes the procedure.



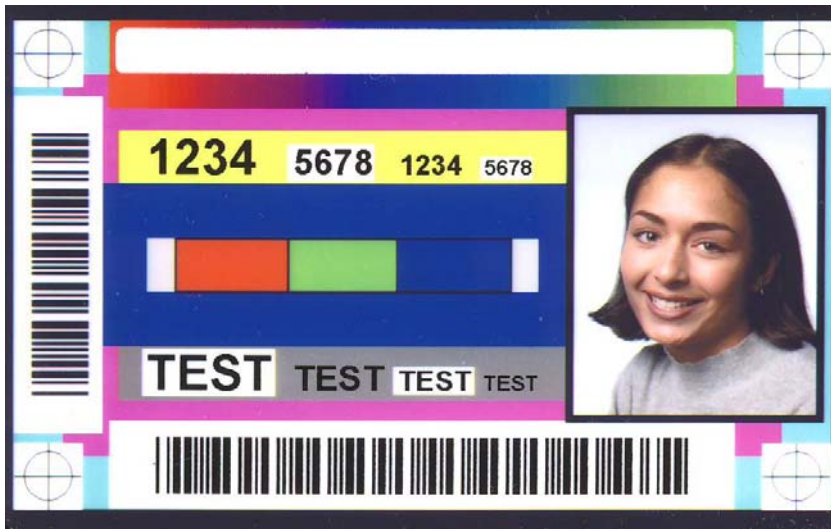
Using the Test Print

The printer has a test print file, which can be sent to the printer to verify the Inhibit Panel functionality. This test image uses a pre-formatted inhibit area and will not test a user-defined inhibit bitmap. To use this test of the inhibit panel perform these steps.

Step	Procedure
1	Bring up the Printer Preferences dialog via Start -> Settings -> Printers and Faxes . Right click on the HDPII printer instance; then left click on Printer Preferences to select the Card tab.
2	Click on the Test Print button.



Using the Test Print



Troubleshooting the Inhibit Panel

If you are having trouble getting the Inhibit Panel to produce the expected results, verify the following information.

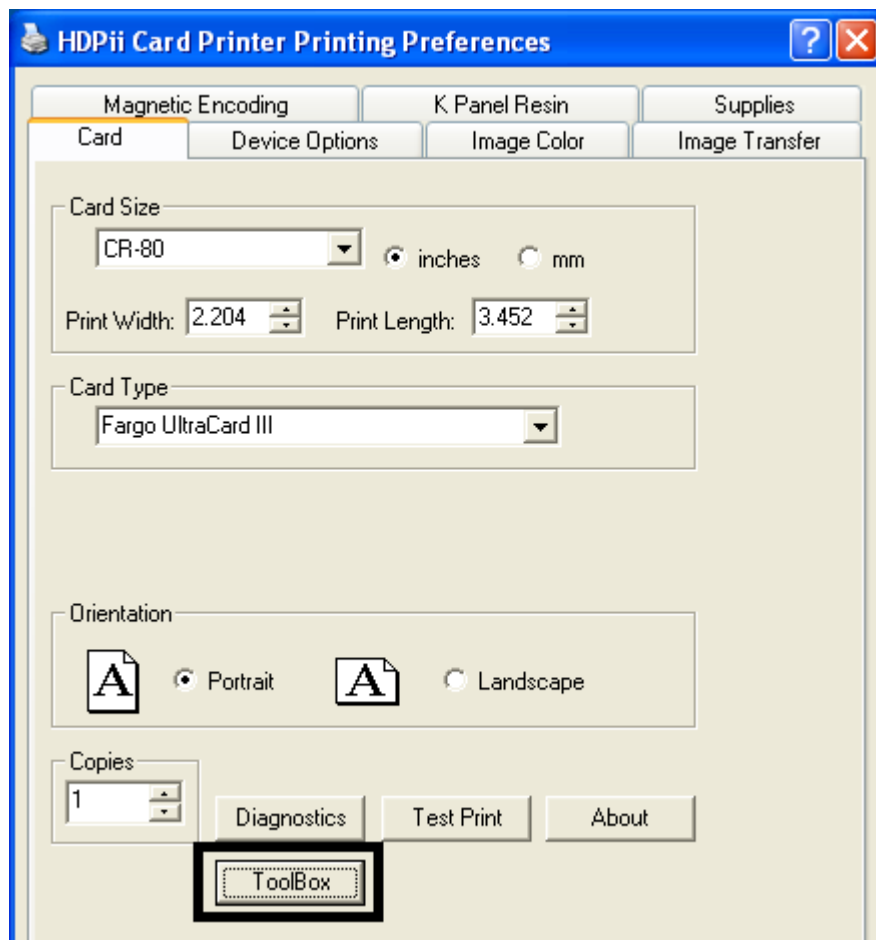
- You have used a lower case “~i”, not an upper case “~I”. Some applications have an auto-correct feature that will change the case on the small ‘i’.
- The bitmap file (being used) is at the location on the workstation (see notes above regarding shared printer instances) as specified by the text object.
- The bitmap file is monochrome (e.g., black and white).
- The size of the bitmap image is large enough to cover the space you are seeking to inhibit. (**Note:** The printer resolution is 300 dpi on both the horizontal and vertical axis, which will aid you in placement of the image. Oversize images will be truncated at the size of the card.)
- The bitmap image should be created in the same orientation as your application image (e.g., landscape or portrait).
- Some Windows applications have a mode where prints are converted to a bitmap before printing which will prevent proper inhibit panel operation.
- In some applications, such as Microsoft WordPad, the ‘~’ must be left justified or it may print on the card and the inhibit functionality will not work.

Section 9: Toolbox

This section describes the Toolbox function.

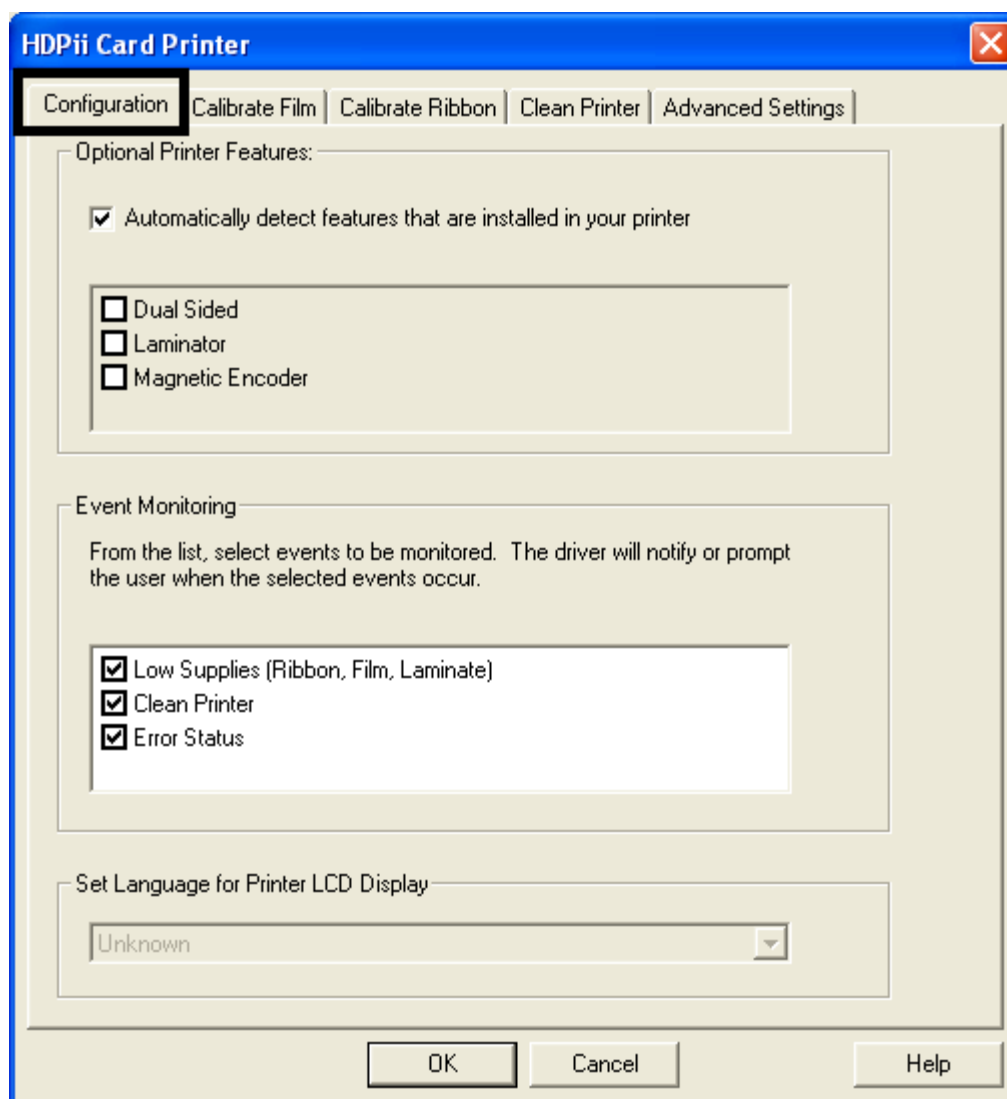
Accessing the Toolbox

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select Toolbox to access the Toolbox window and its tabs, as shown throughout this section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• OK button: Closes the dialog box and saves the Driver configuration changes since the Driver dialog box has been opened.• Cancel button: Closes the dialog box and cancels the Toolbox changes since the Driver dialog box has been opened.• Help button: Launches Help specific to the active tab.



Selecting the Configuration tab

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Configuration tab.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Under Printer Features, select features by clicking on a check box or by clicking on the Auto Select button. See instructions provided under that heading. Under Event Monitoring, select events to be monitored. (Note: The Driver will notify or prompt the User when the selected events occur.) Under Set Language for Printer LCD Display, select a language.



Using the Configuration Tab

Using the Optional Printer Features Group Box

The Default setting is checked.

- If checked, upon **Configuration** tab activation, the Driver retrieves the installed Printer features information from the Firmware and automatically checks the appropriate check boxes for Dual Sided, and Magnetic Encoder.
- If checked, the Dual Sided and Magnetic Encoder checkboxes are read only.
- If checked and no Printer is found or bi-directional capabilities are disabled or unavailable, the error message (shown below) is displayed.
- If unchecked or cleared, feature check boxes become active and can be manually set.
- If the Driver is reinstalled, it resets to the default of checked.



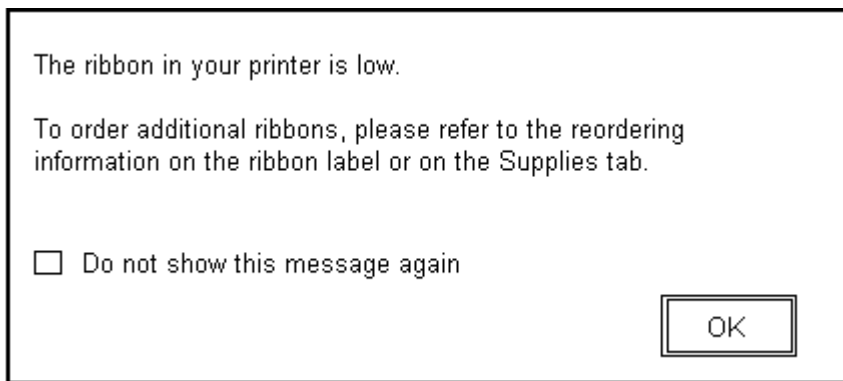
Using the Event Monitoring Group Box

This Event Monitoring group box displays the Low Supplies (Ribbon and Film).

- **The default setting is checked.** If checked, the Ribbon Low message box is displayed with every print job when Printer reports low Ribbon to the Driver.
- **Do not show this message again:** The check box allows the user to suppress message per Driver instance. Default = unchecked.

Reviewing the Ribbon Low message

Display – Ribbon Low dialog

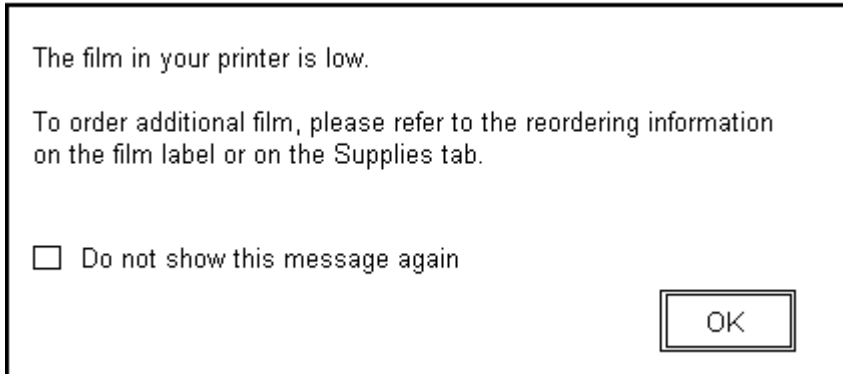


Using the Film Low message

The default setting is checked.

- If checked, Film Low message box is displayed with every print job when Printer reports low Ribbon to the Driver.
- **Do not show this message again.** The check box allows the user to suppress message per Driver instance. Default = unchecked.

Display – Film Low dialog



Selecting the Set Language for Printer LCD Display Group Box

The LCD Language can be chosen or changed from the Driver during installation, from the Driver Toolbox Configuration tab or directly from the LCD. The last language chosen from any of these methods is the active language for the LCD.

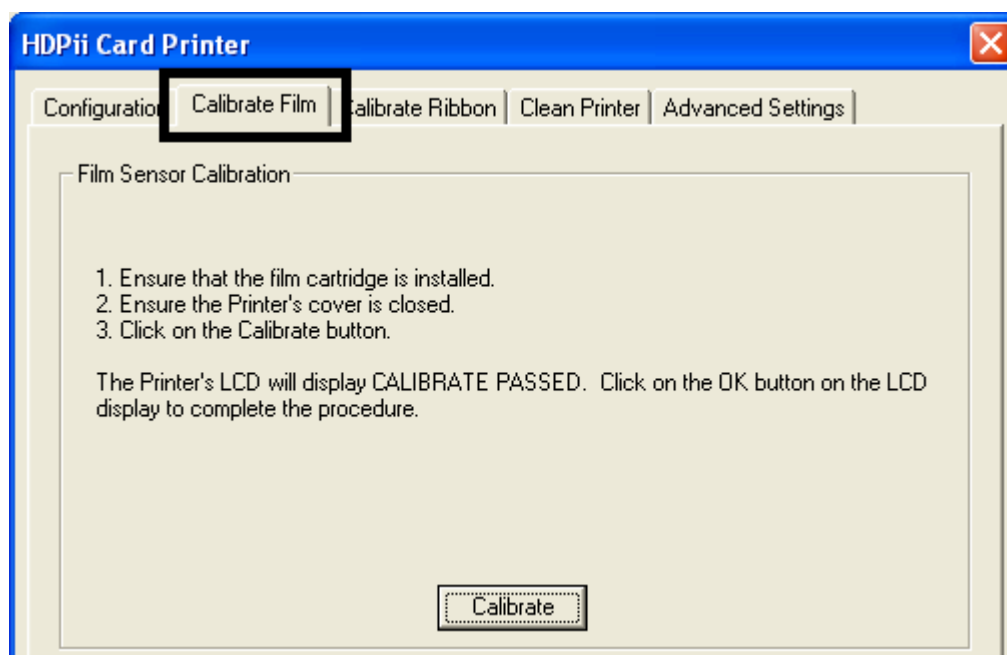
- English is the default.
- Languages (available in drop down list) are the languages available in the language set (currently resident in the Firmware).

Selecting the Calibrate Film tab

The two buttons for the Calibrate Film tab are described below.

- **Calibrate button:** Sends calibrate film command to Printer. Follow the instruction on the page for setting up the Printer.
- **Help button:** Launches help specific to this tab.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Calibrate Film tab.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Ensure that the Film Cartridge is installed.Ensure the Printer's Cover is closed.Click on the Calibrate button. (Note: The Printer's LCD will display CALIBRATE PASSED.)Click on the OK button on the LCD display to complete the procedure.

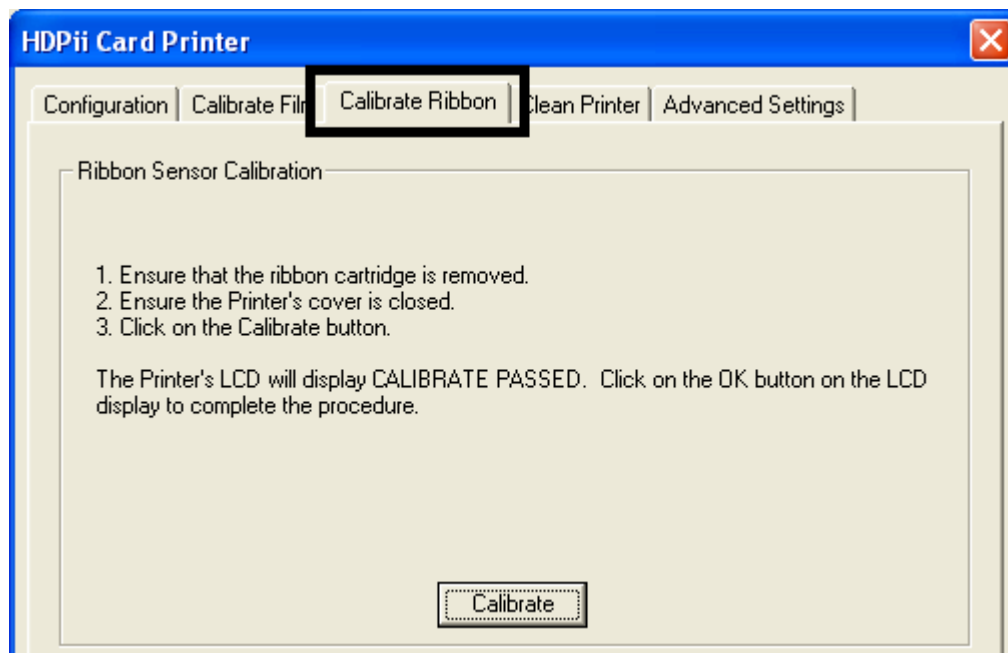


Selecting the Calibrate Ribbon tab

The two buttons for the Calibrate Ribbon tab are described below.

- **Calibrate button:** Sends the Calibrate Ribbon Command to Printer. Follow the instructions below to set up the Printer.
- **Help button:** Launches help specific to this tab.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Select the Calibrate Ribbon tab.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Ensure that the Ribbon Cartridge is removed.Ensure the Printer's Cover is closed.Click on the Calibrate button. (Note: The Printer's LCD will display CALIBRATE PASSED.)Click on the OK button on the LCD display to complete the procedure.



Selecting the Clean Printer tab

The button for the Clean Printer tab is described below.

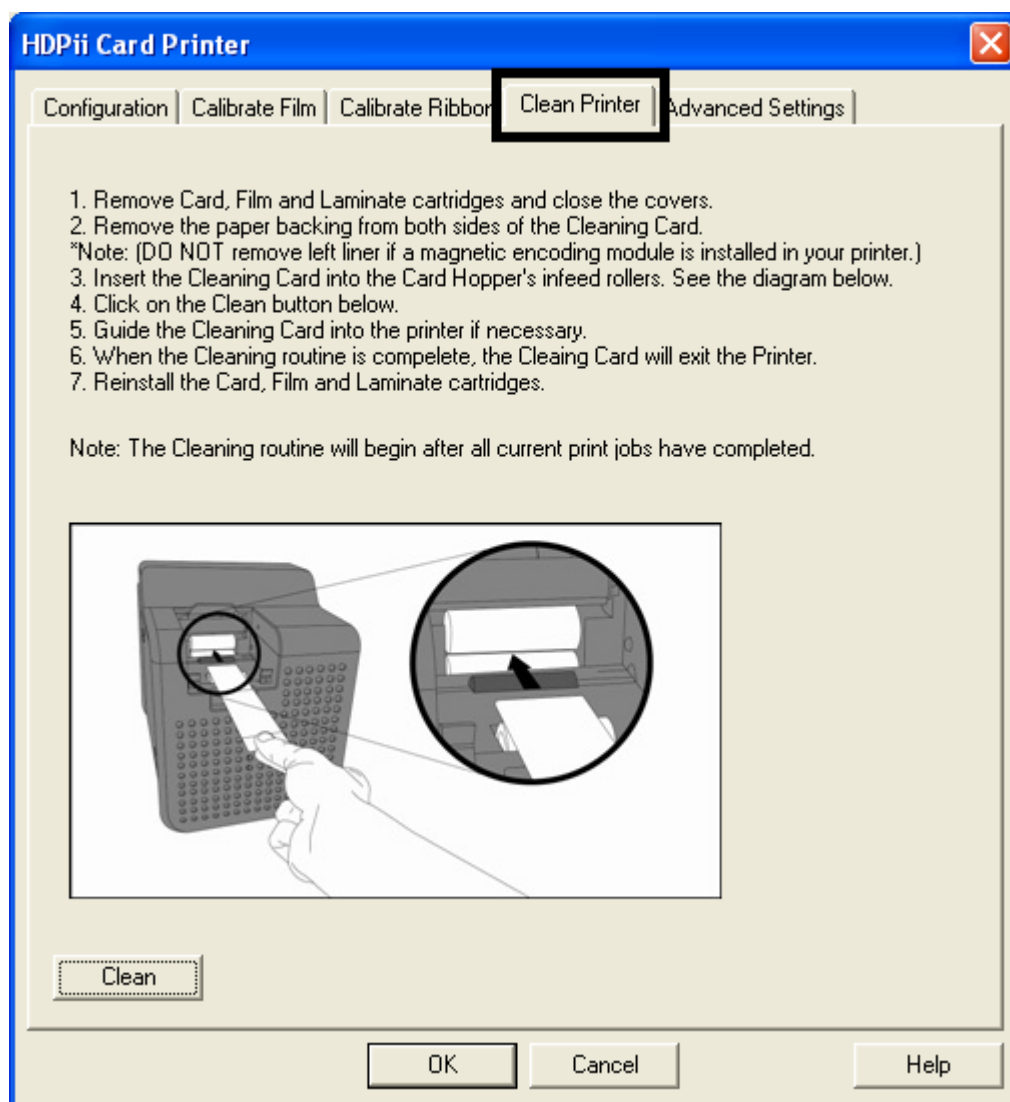
- **Clean Button:** Launches cleaning routine. Follow the instruction on the page for setting up the Printer.
- **Help button:** Launches help that is specific to this tab.

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Click the Clean Printer tab. See the next page.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Remove the Card Cartridges and close the covers.Remove the paper back from both sides of the Cleaning Card. (Note: DO NOT remove the left liner if a Magnetic Encoding Module is installed in your printer.)Insert the Cleaning Card into the Card Hopper's Infeed Rollers.Click on the Clean button below.Guide the Cleaning Card into the Printer if necessary.When the Cleaning routine is complete, the Cleaning Card will exit the Printer via the Card Hopper Infeed Rollers.Reinstall the Card Cartridges. <p>The Cleaning routine will begin after all current print jobs have completed.</p>

Continued on the next page

Selecting the Clean Printer tab (continued)

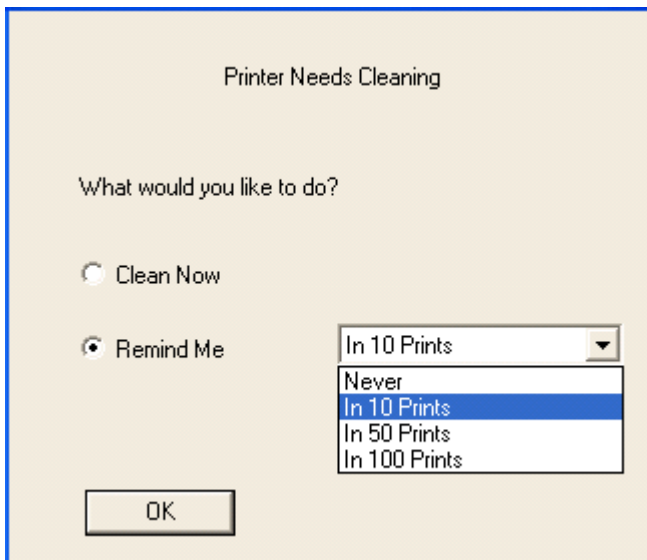
See the procedure on the previous page.



Using the Clean Printer Group Box

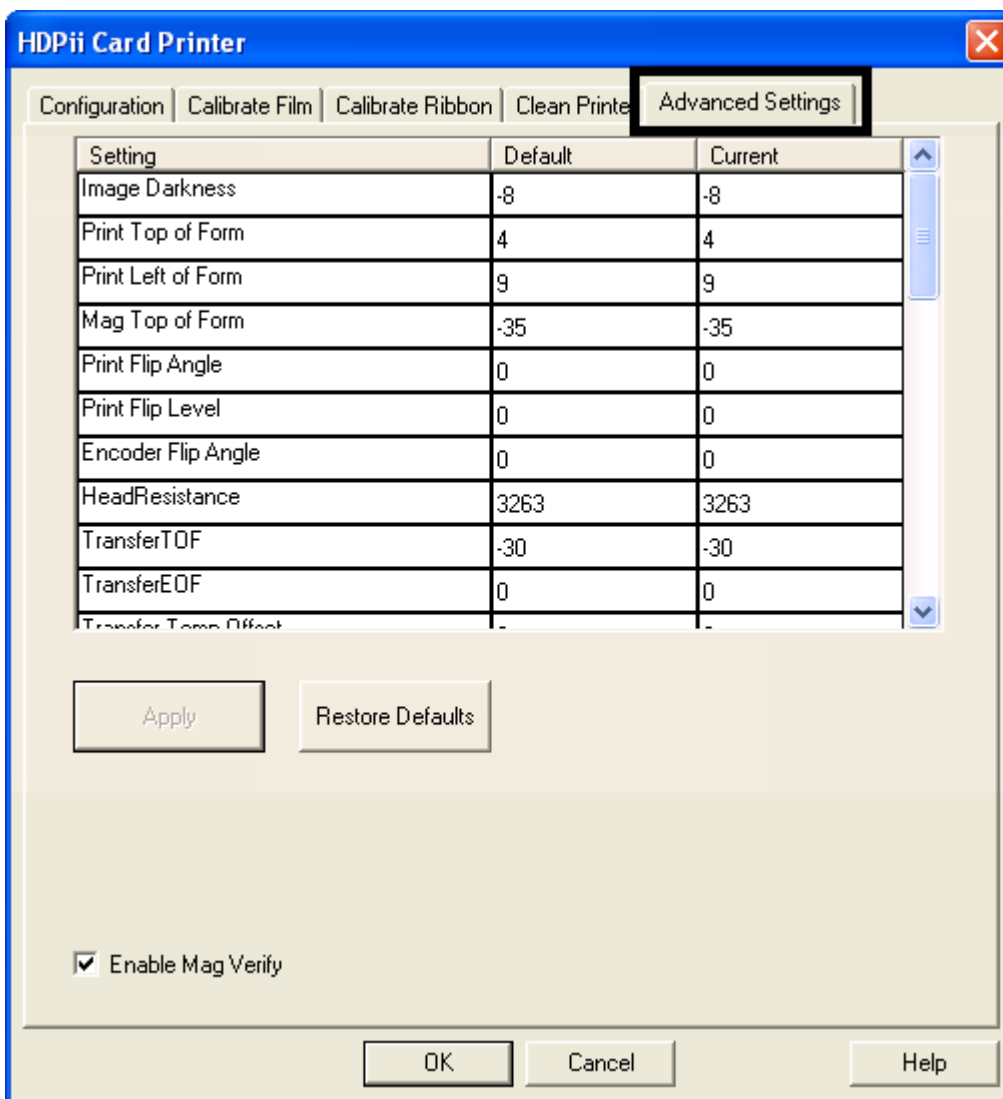
The default setting is checked. If checked, **Printer Cleaning Notification** dialog box is displayed when Firmware EE setting changes after 3000 cards. (**Note:** Firmware EE setting resets upon clean command being sent to the Firmware.)

- **Clean Now radio button:** This is the default every time this message box launches.
- **Clean Now radio button:** When this is chosen (and click **OK**), the **Toolbox** is launched open to **Clean Printer** tab.
- **Remind Me radio dial:** This activates a drop down for the user to choose a number of cards to print until the next reminder. If the user chooses **Never**, then the **Clean Printer** notification is cleared from **Configuration** tab. (**Note:** This is because IF the **Clean Printer** notification is checked, the user might believe that the reminder is working while **Never** means the reminder will never be displayed.)
- **OK button:** Use this button to close the dialog box and execute the user choice.
- **Cancel button:** Use this button to close the dialog box with no changes to the state of Printer setting. If the user exits the Toolbox without clicking **Clean**, then the Printer Cleaning Reminder dialog box will reappear on the next print.



Selecting the Advanced Settings tab

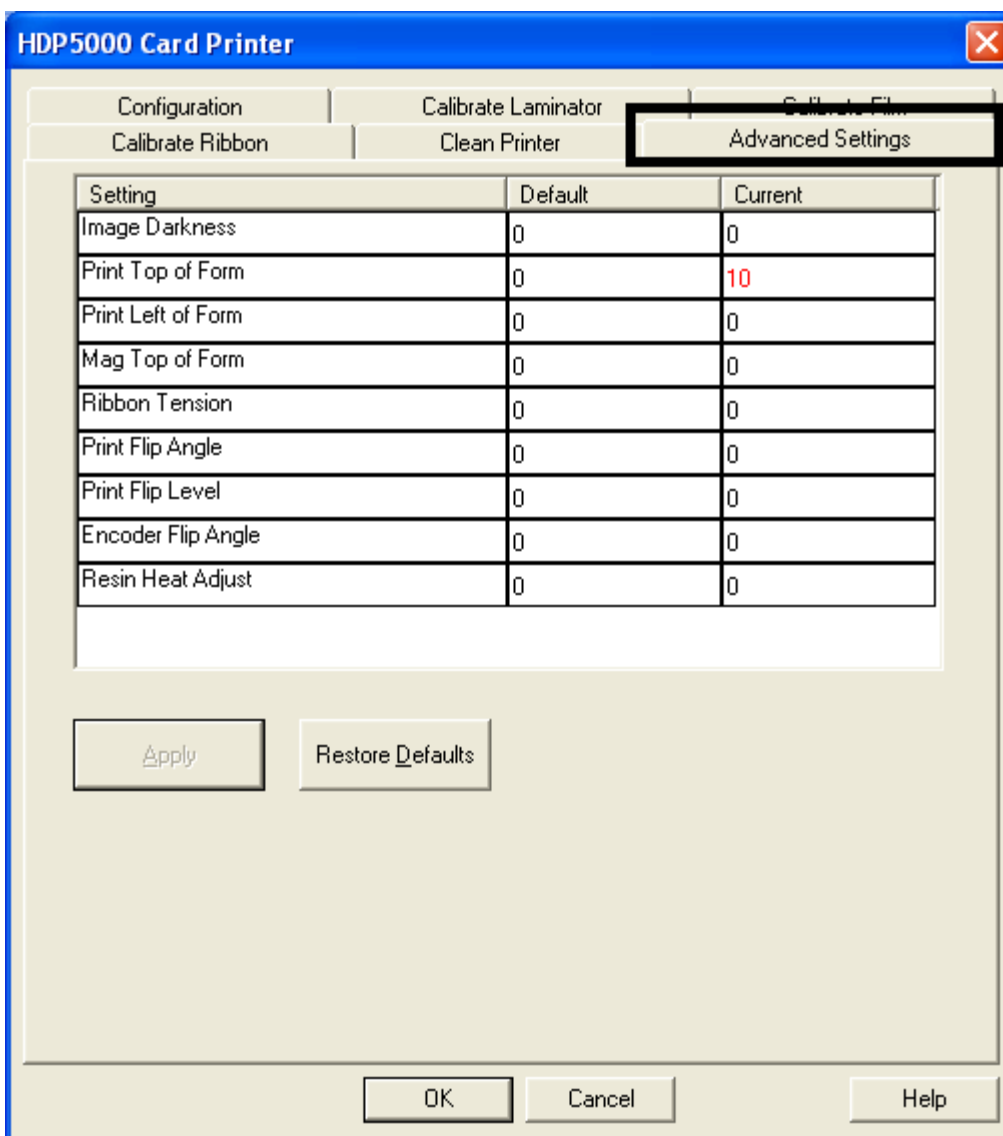
Use the **Advanced Settings** tab for adjusting the internal Printer settings, which are customized for every Printer at the factory and saved directly within the Printer's memory. (**Note:** You can select the Restore Defaults to restore the internal default settings.)



Selecting the Advanced Settings tab (continued)

These change values for Firmware settings. See below.

- **Setting Column:** Displays label for setting
- **Default Column:** Displays default value for setting
- **Current Column:** Displays current value for setting
- Change the value by clicking on the value to activate spin control or type.
- **Apply Button:** Applies changed values.
- **Restore Defaults Button:** Restores default values.



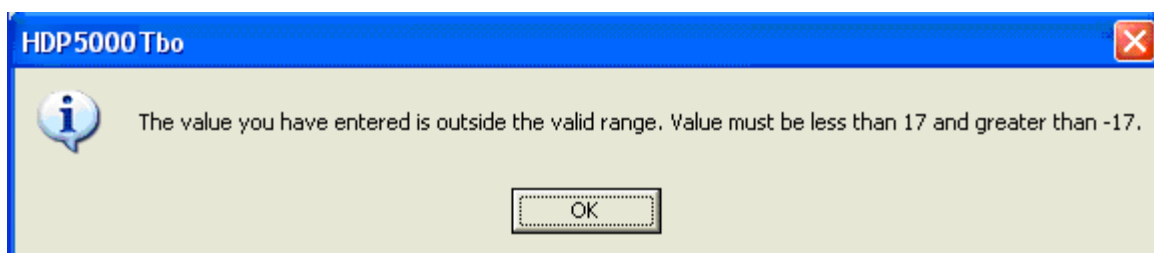
Reviewing the No Printer Connected error message

If there is no Printer connected or if the Driver is unable to communicate with the Printer, the following error will be displayed and the grid will be blank.



Reviewing the Value outside the Range error message

If typing a value outside the range, an error message will display specific to the setting when leaving the spin control to click any other spin control, button or tab.



Section 10: Cleaning

The Cleaning Kit part number for this Printer is 089200. For more detailed instruction, please refer to the Cleaning Kit Instruction Sheet in the kit.

Important: The Printer should be cleaned on a regular basis to ensure that the Printer consistently produces high quality output.



Danger: Be sure to disconnect the Printer's power cord whenever performing any type of maintenance procedure unless otherwise directed.

Important: Card Printers require highly specialized Print Ribbons to function properly. To maximize Printer life, reliability, printed card quality and durability, you must use only Certified Supplies. For this reason, your Fargo warranty is void, where not prohibited by law, if you use non-Certified Supplies. To order additional materials, please contact your authorized reseller.

Using the Required Supplies



For the maintenance procedures outlined for the Printer, you will need a Printer Cleaning Kit, available from the reseller. This optional kit includes the following:

- **Printhead Cleaning Swabs** pre-moistened with 99.99% isopropyl alcohol for cleaning the Printer's Printhead.
- **Cleaning Cards** with an adhesive backing for cleaning the Printer's Cleaning Rollers.
- **Gauze Pads** pre-moistened with 99.99% isopropyl alcohol for cleaning the Printer's interior and exterior.
- **Alcohol Cards** pre-moistened with 99.99% isopropyl alcohol for cleaning the Printer's Platen Rollers, Card Feed Rollers.



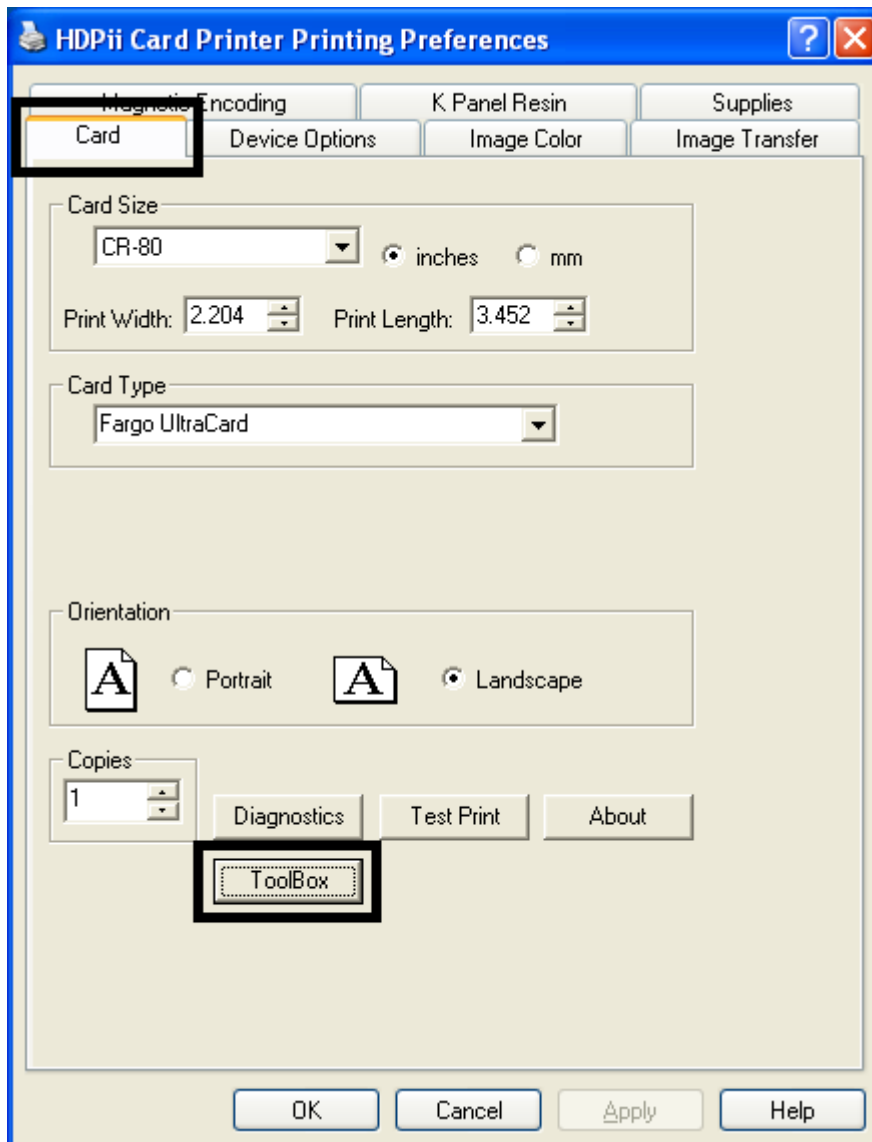
Caution: As with any electronic device, internal components of the Printer, such as the Printhead, may be damaged if exposed to static electrical discharges. To avoid potential damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device, such as a wrist strap (with integral resistor) connected to an ESD ground. At a minimum, make positive contact with the bare metal chassis of the Printer with the hand prior to touching any internal electrical components.

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It may be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol. • To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies. • To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage). • To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified. • To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.

Accessing the Clean Printer tab

See below.



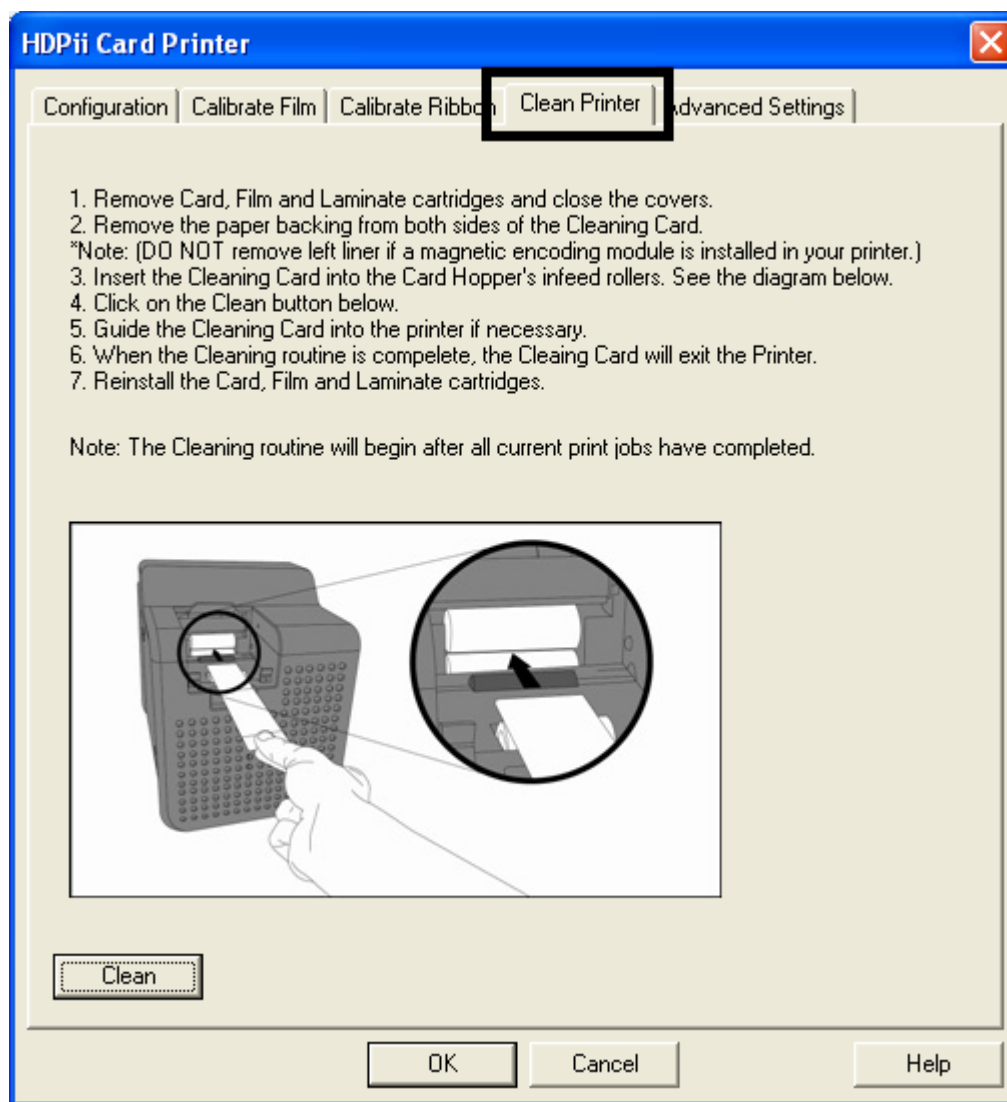
Cleaning the Printer Platen Roller and Card Feed Rollers

Perform this procedure approximately every **1,000 prints** to maintain a consistent print quality. (**Note:** The Card Feed Rollers move the card throughout the print process. Rollers should be kept clean to prevent card jams and card contamination. This cleaning process will ultimately lead to better print quality and extended Printhead life.)

Step	Procedure
1	From the Driver, click on the Toolbox button to bring up the Clean Printer tab.
2	Follow the instructions from the CLEAN PRINTER tab on the Driver. See Display A below. (Note: If your Printer is equipped with a Magnetic Encoder , you must insert the Cleaning Card with the printed side up and with a small Liner Strip towards the front of the Printer. See Display B below.)
3	After the cleaning process is completed, the Cleaning Card will exit the Printer at the Input Hopper.
4	Replace the printing supplies and close the Print Stations after the Rollers are clean and completely dry.

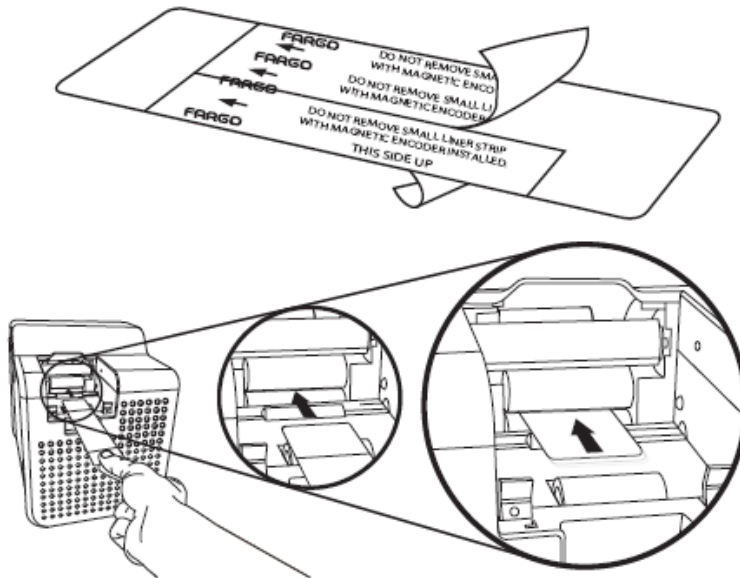
Cleaning the Printer Platen Roller and Card Feed Rollers (continued)

Display A – Clean Printer window




Cleaning the Printer Platen Roller and Card Feed Rollers

Display B - Cleaning Card setup for Magnetic Encoder




Cleaning Procedures

Cleaning inside the Printer

Step	Procedure
1	Open the Front Cover.
2	Remove the Print Ribbon and transfer Film from the Printer.
3	<p>If you have a can of compressed air, blow out all visible areas of the Printer interior. (Note: Remove any debris that may be inside.)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If you do not have a can of compressed air, use a cleaning pad from the Printer Cleaning Kit to wipe out all visible areas inside the Printer. (Note: Remove any debris that may be inside.)</p> <p> Caution: Be extremely careful not to let any alcohol drip inside the Printer!</p>
4	Re-install the printing supplies.
5	Close the Front Cover.

Cleaning outside the Printer

Step	Procedure
1	<p>The Printer has a durable casing that should retain its luster and appearance for many years.</p> <p>Clean it only with a Cleaning Pad from the Printer Cleaning Kit.</p> <p> Caution: Do not use cleaning solvents of any kind or spray the printer with a cleaner!</p>

Cleaning the Printhead

Clean the Printhead (every time the Print Ribbon is changed) to maintain consistent print quality, as instructed below. This procedure should also be performed approximately every 1000 prints in order to maintain consistent print quality.



Caution: Never use a sharp tool or abrasive object of any kind to clean the Printhead. It will damage the Printhead. Watches, rings, bracelets and other jewelry can damage the Printhead if accidentally bumped against it. For best results, remove such items before touching any internal components of the Printer.

Step	Procedure
1	Remove watches, rings, bracelets and other jewelry.
2	Disconnect the Printer Power Supply.
3	Open the Front Cover. Remove the Ribbon and Film Cartridges
4	Use a Printhead Cleaning Swab (squeeze to saturate the tip) from the Printer Cleaning Kit to firmly wipe back and forth across the surface of the Printhead. See display below. The printing surface is vertical and faces the left side.
5	Reinstall the cartridges and close the cover once the Printhead is completely dry.



Replacing the Card Cleaning Roller



Caution: Replace the Card Cleaning Tape approximately every time the Print Ribbon is changed.

Steps	Procedure
1	Remove the Card Cartridge to access the Cleaning Roller.
2	Remove the cleaning roller as shown in Display A.
3	Replace with the new Card Cleaning Roller.



Cleaning the Magnetic Encoder



Danger: Be sure to disconnect the Printer's power cord whenever performing any type of maintenance procedure unless otherwise directed.

Step	Procedure
1	Open the Front Cover and remove the Film Cartridge.
2	Remove the Magnetic Cover to access the Magnetic Head.
3	Remove the Magnetic Head. See Display A below.
3	Use an alcohol wipe from the cleaning kit to clean the Magnetic Head. See Display B below.
4	Replace the Magnetic Head and Magnetic Cover.

Continued on the next page

Cleaning the Magnetic Encoder

Display A



Display B



Section 11: Fargo Workbench Printer Utility

Using the Inhibit Panel (HDPii)

The Inhibit Panel (I designation under YMCKI allows definition of areas on the surface of the card that will prevent the transfer of film to the card surface.

- **When Active:** This feature is active when using the Ribbons (I designation under YMCKI,).
- **Two Approaches:** You can either use the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility or an approved application to access and work with the Inhibit Panel.

Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)

You can use the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility to generate an Inhibit Panel Layout. (**Note:** This utility allows the operator to add a rectangular area(s) defining which areas are to be inhibited.)

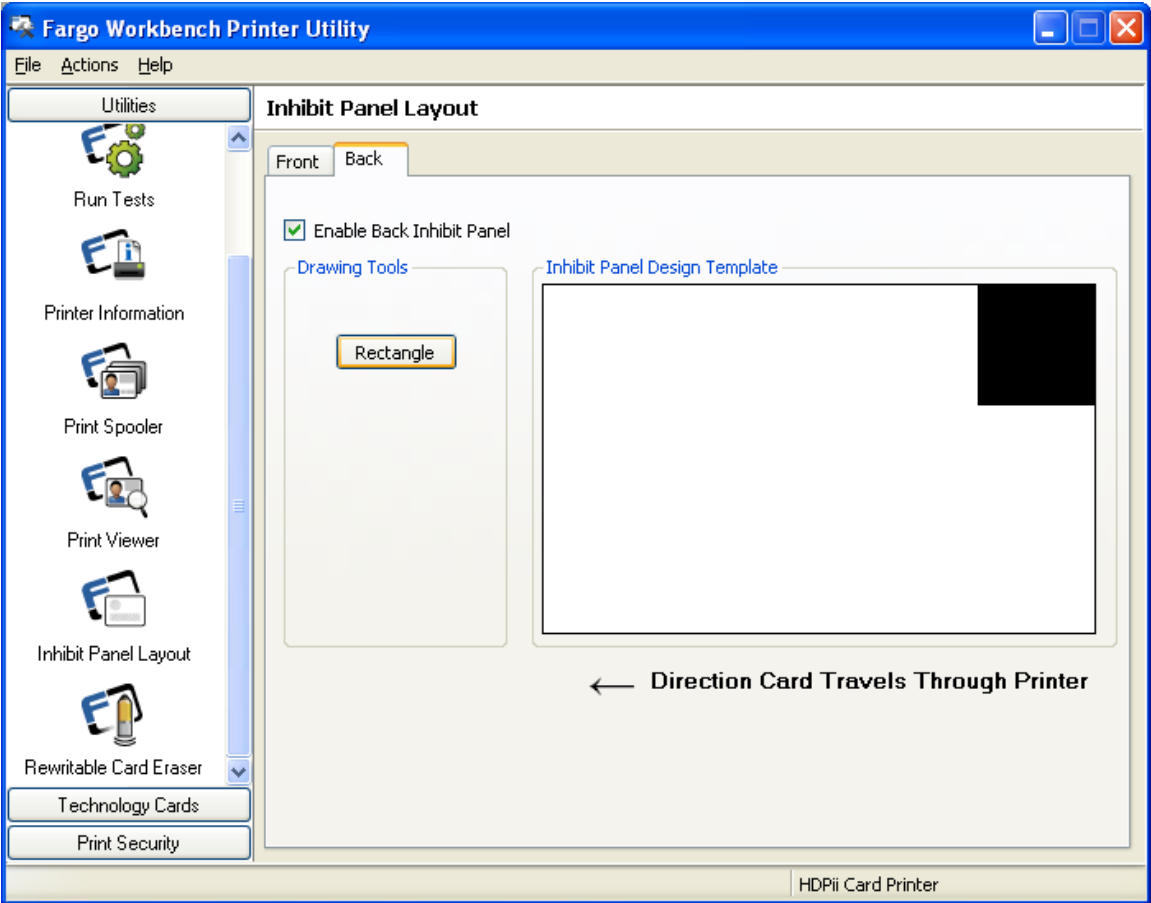
- **Inhibit Panel Placement:** Each print job (generated from that individual client workstation) will generate the instructions within the print job that place the corresponding area(s) on the I-panel.
- **Operating Systems:** This method works on all applications generating print jobs to the HDPii under all operating systems. (**Note:** This is regardless of whether the printer (being used) is a shared instance from another workstation or an instance local to that particular workstation.)

To create an inhibit area using the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility, see Using the Inhibit Panel Layout Applet in the help file associated with the application.

Continued on next page

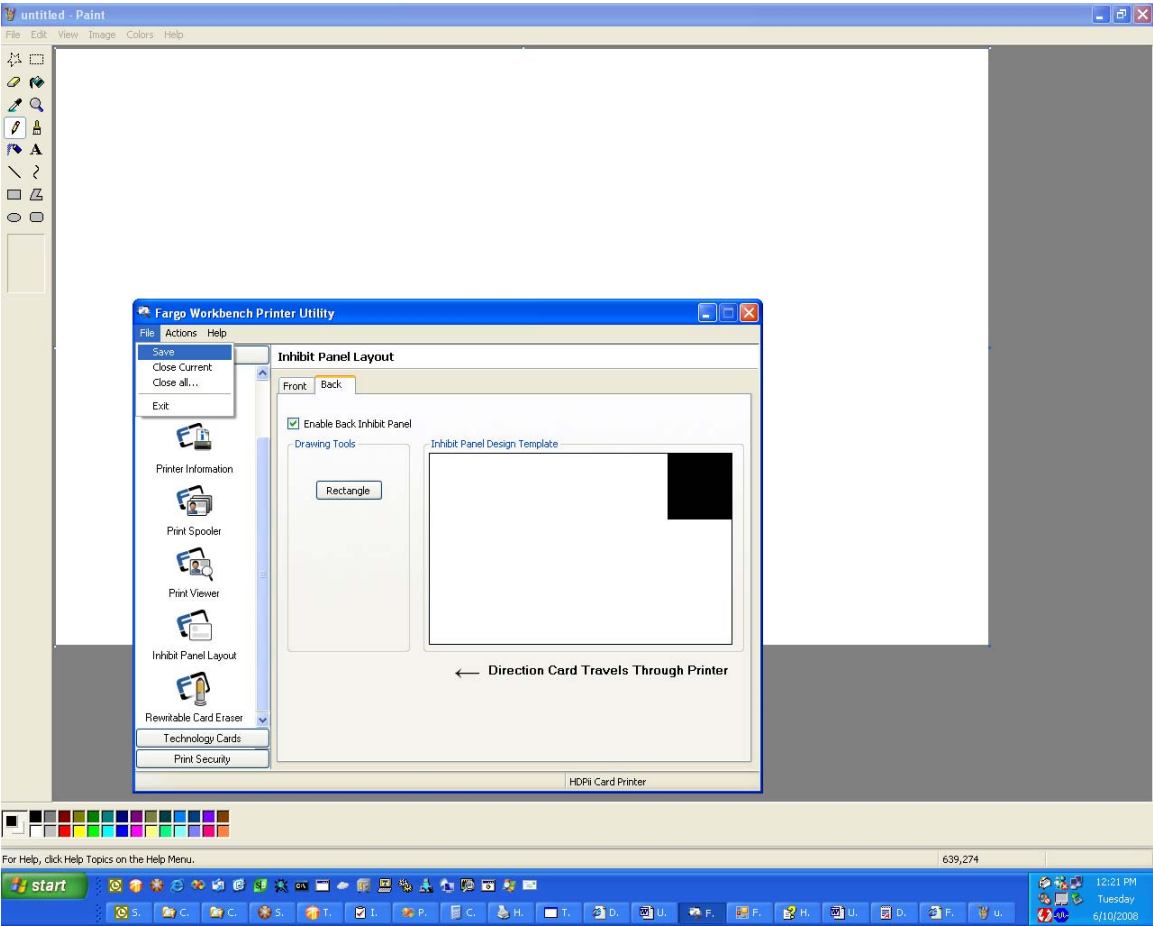
Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)

Step	Procedure
1	Create the Inhibit Panel Layout within the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility.



Using Inhibit Panel (via the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility)

Step	Procedure
2	Save the file.



Using Inhibit Panel (from an Application)

The second way of using the Inhibit Panel is to have a TextOut command, containing a “~i” within the print job itself. The “~i” is followed by the file name of a bitmap file, which is merged when the print job is rendered or changed to instructions that the printer understands.

Generating TextOut Commands

- **Applications (generating TextOut commands):** Applications that do create TextOut commands include Corel Draw, Microsoft Word, and Microsoft WordPad.
- **Applications (non-generating):** Not all applications that create print jobs generate the TextOut commands within the print job output needed to make this work. Examples of applications (which do not generate the TextOut commands) are Notepad and Paint.

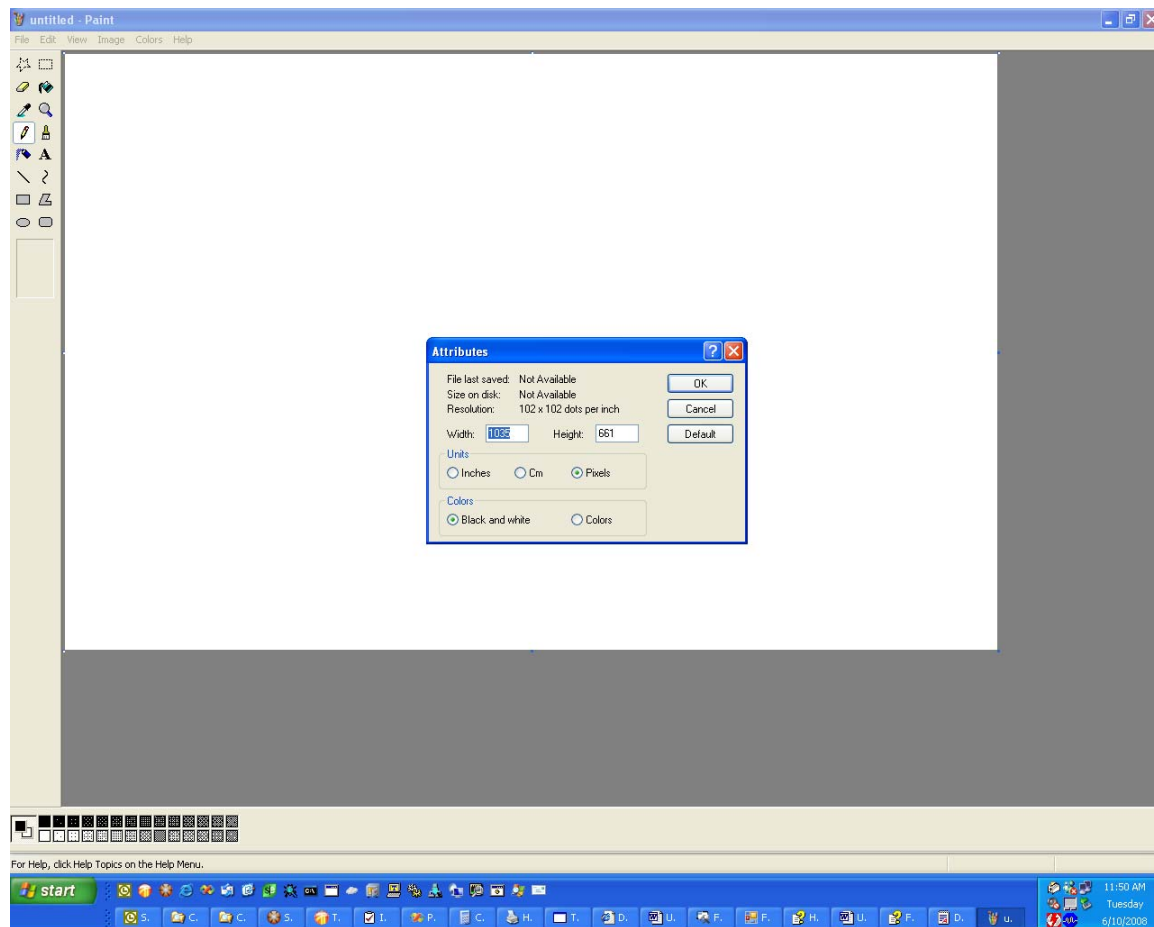
Rendering Print Jobs

Rendering of the print job occurs on the given local workstation if the printer instance is local. However, if the printer is a shared instance, the print job is rendered on the server workstation under Microsoft Windows 2000, XP and 2003. Under Microsoft Windows Vista, the rendering of the print job may be performed on either the client or server workstation depending upon the setting chosen in the printer instance.

- **Rendering Engine:** Since the rendering engine looks for the file with the “~i” command, the file location specified within the command is relative to the server workstation on Windows 2000, XP and 2003. (**Note:** For example, it must exist in that location on the server workstation or on the corresponding workstation, depending upon your settings within that instance for Windows Vista.)
- **Example:** Place a “~IC:\Test\inhibit.bmp” text object within a Corel Draw print job against a local HDPii printer instance under Windows XP to cause the printer driver to look for a file with that name and location on the local workstation. (**Note:** This is because both the server and client portions of the printer driver processing occur on the local workstation.)
- **Inhibit Area Location:** The location of the inhibit area within the print job is the upper left hand corner where the TextOut string is placed upon the drawing within the application. (**Note:** The inhibit file bitmap must contain one bit per pixel (e.g., monochrome) at 300 dots per inch.)
- **Print Size:** If the inhibit bitmap is larger than the page print size, it is trimmed to fit. The normal print size for a HDPii CR-80 card is 2.204 by 3.452 inches. (**Note:** With that print size, the maximum size of the inhibit bitmap area would be 661 by 1035 pixels.)
- **Bitmap Black Areas:** The black areas of the bitmap are the areas that will correspond to where the inhibit material will prevent the transfer of dyes on to the card.

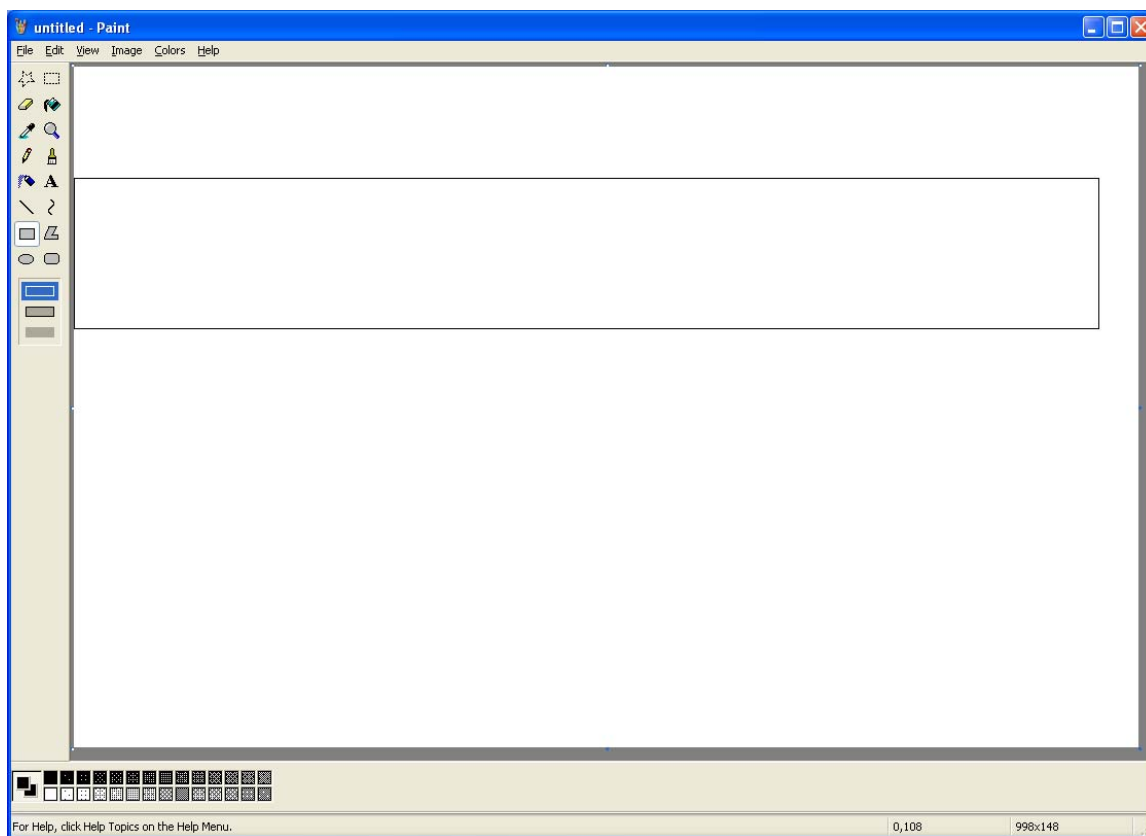
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
1	Create a bitmap file using Microsoft Paint which is of size 1035 pixels width and 661 pixels length, of monochrome (Black and White) colors.



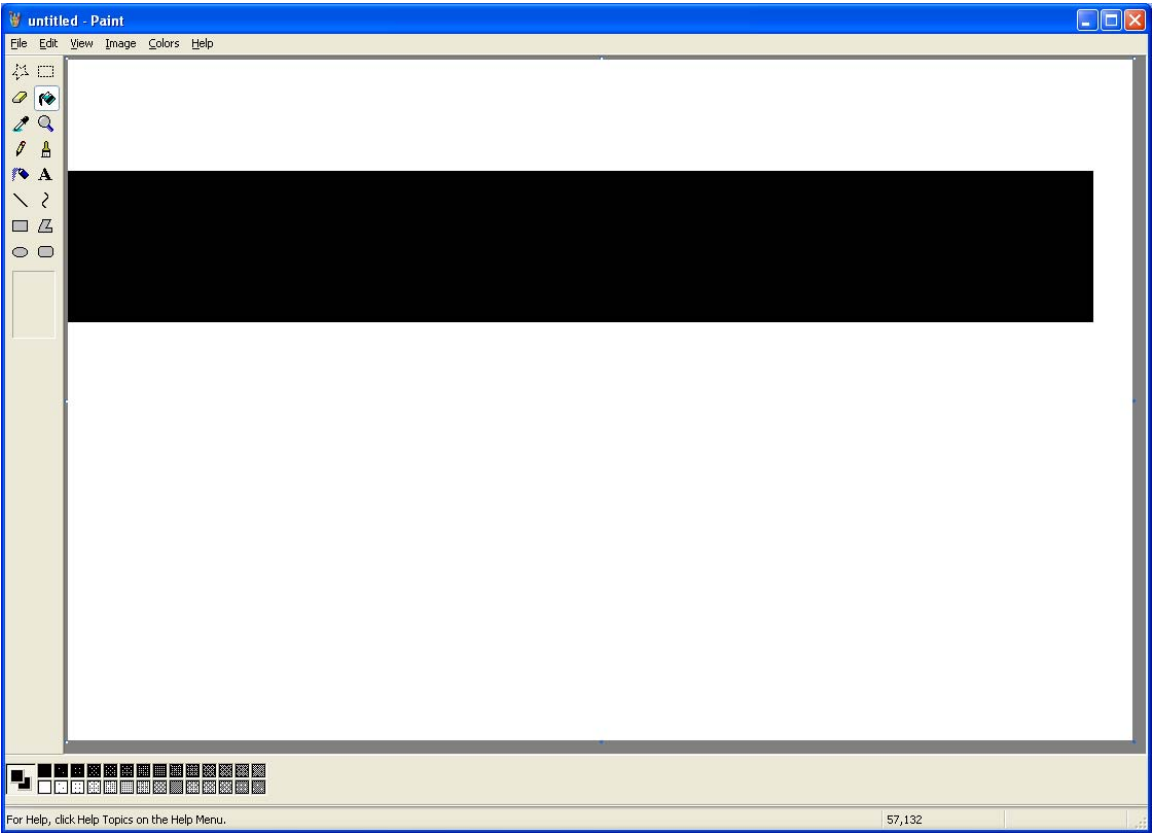
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	Place objects on the image which correspond to the area which are to be inhibited.



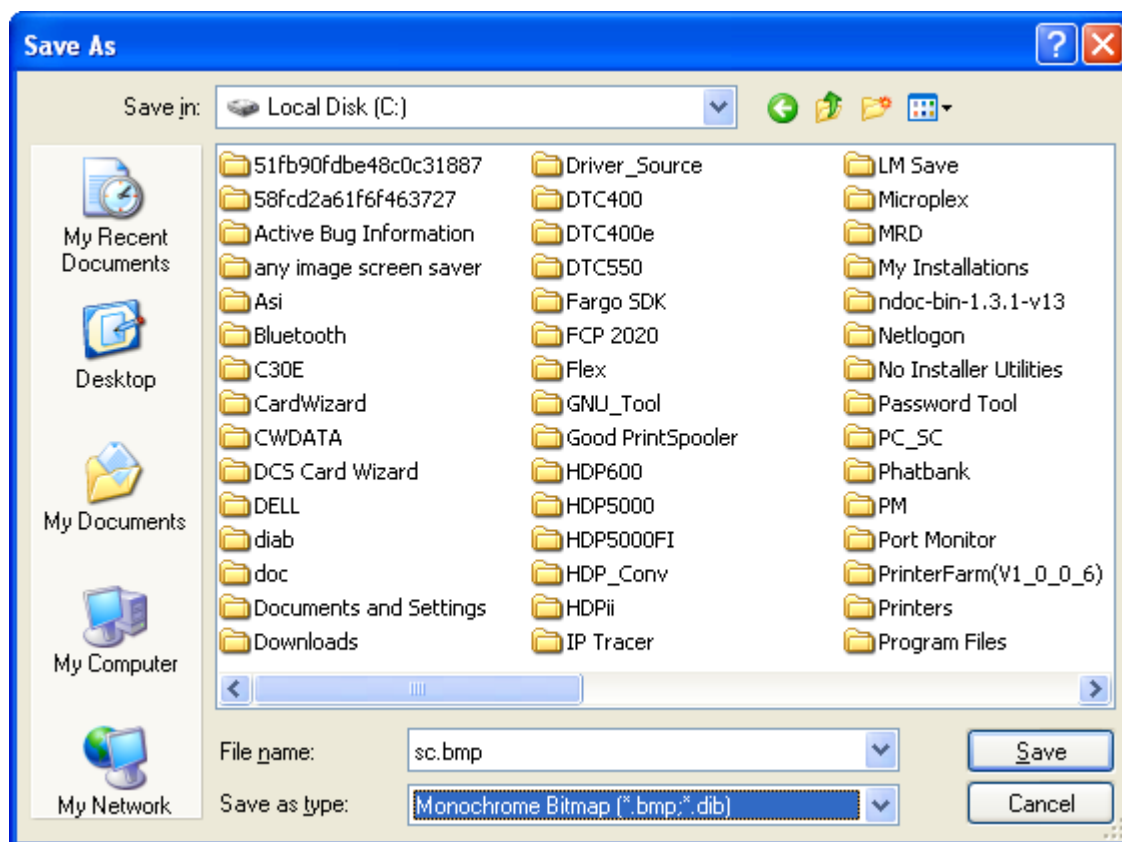
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Fill the inhibit areas with black color.



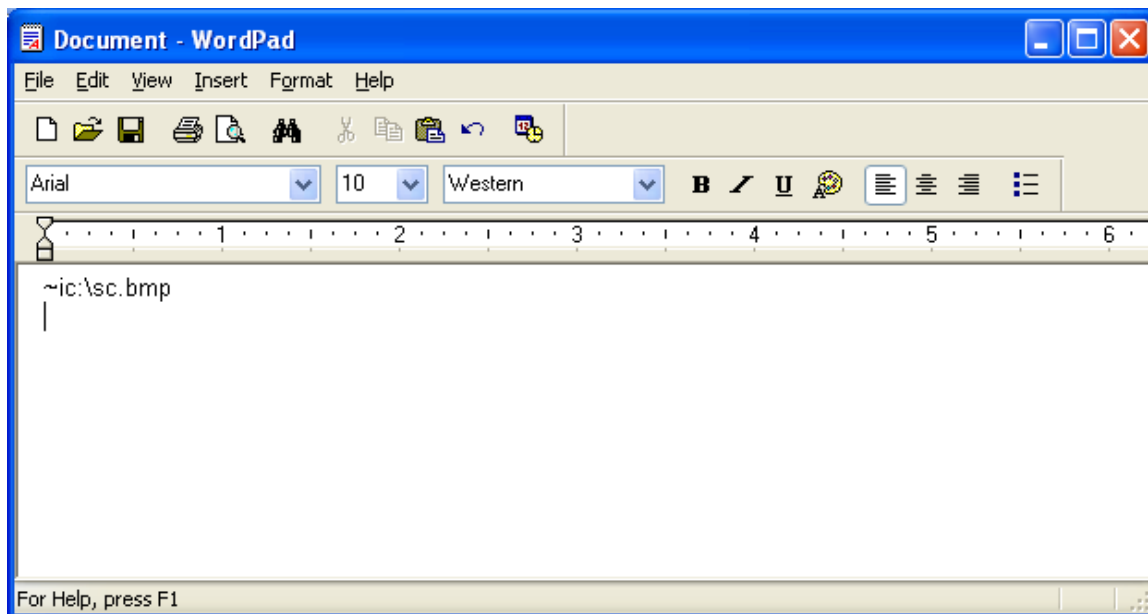
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	Save the file as a BMP from within Paint.



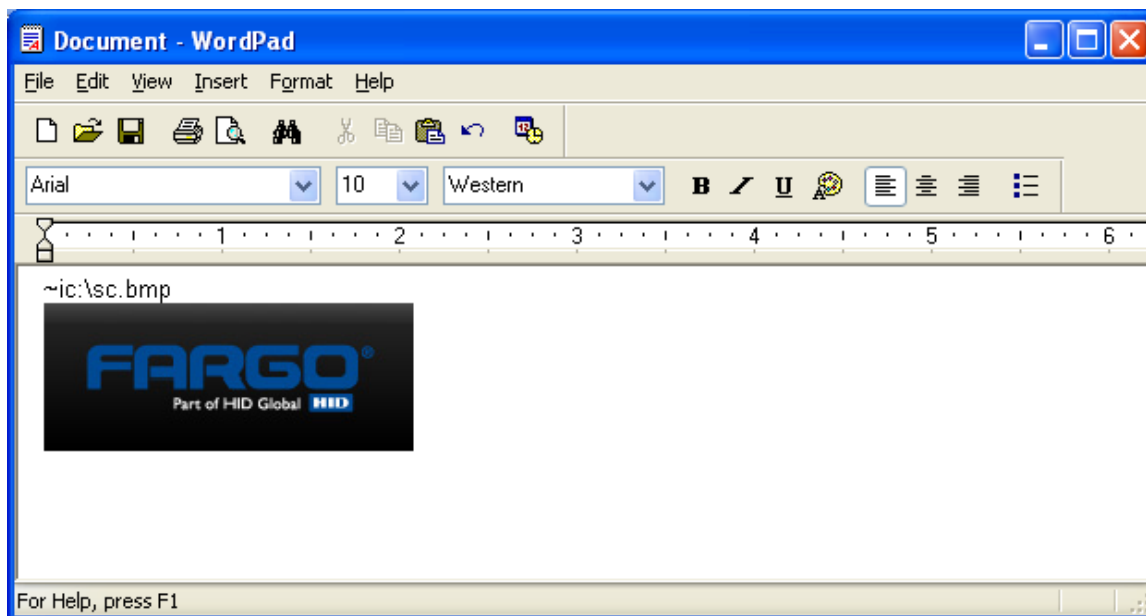
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
5	Add the '~i' command to the application file. In this case Microsoft Wordpad was used.



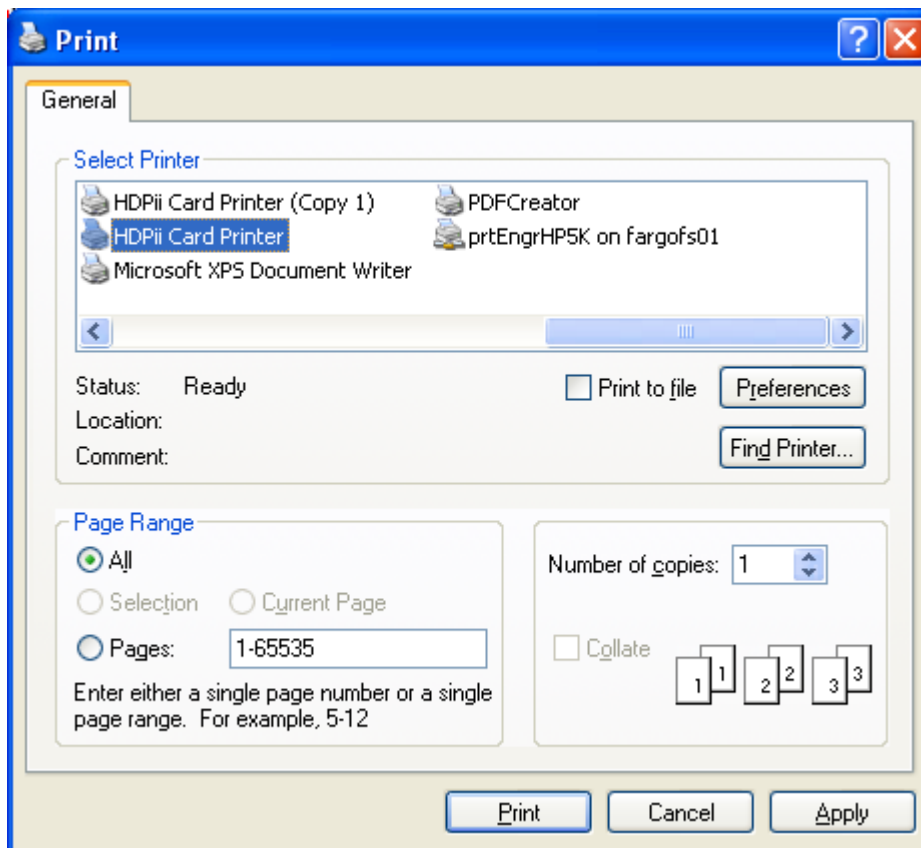
Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application) (continued)

Step	Procedure
6	Create the rest of the card using the application.



Using the Inhibit Panel (via Application)

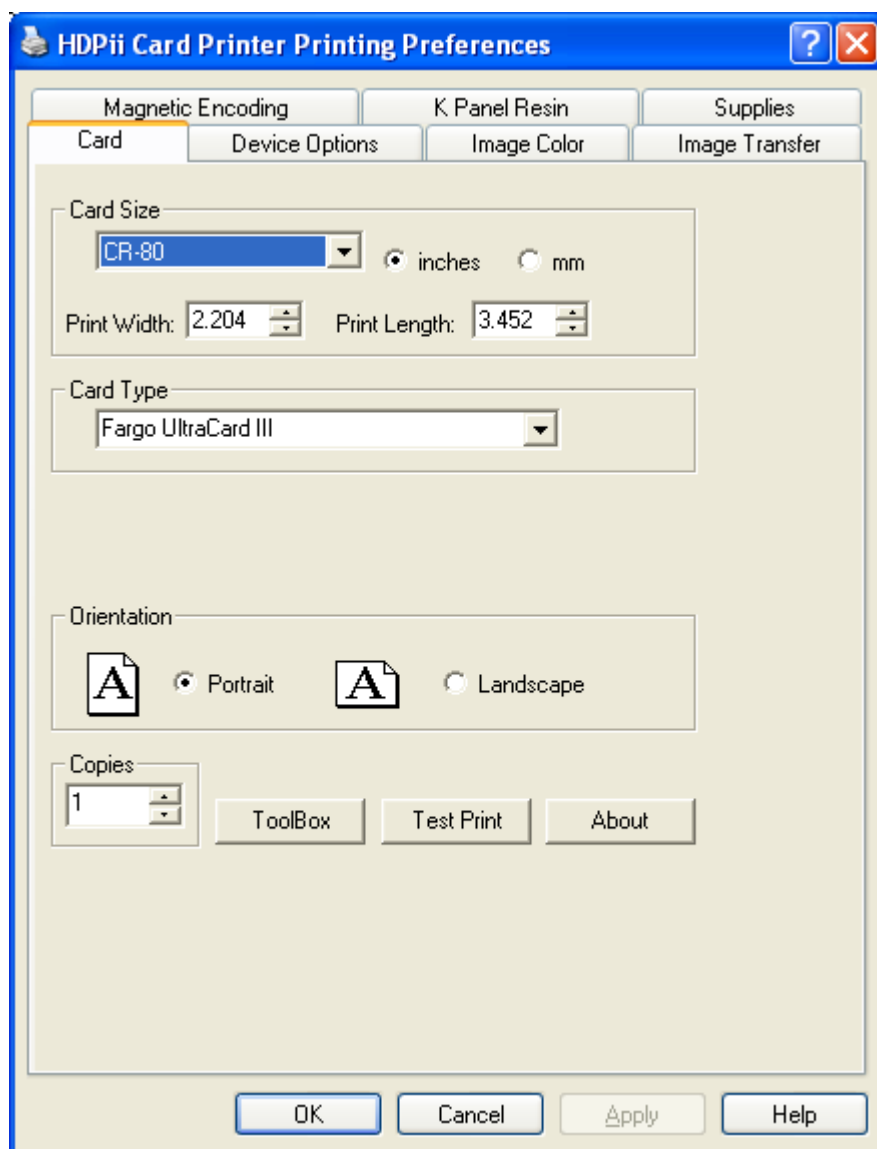
Step	Procedure
7	Print the card from within the application. In this case, use File -> Print .



Using the Test Print

The printer has a test print file which can be sent to the printer to verify the Inhibit Panel functionality. To test the I Panel, perform these steps.

Step	Procedure
1	Bring up the Printer Preferences dialog via Start -> Settings -> Printers and Faxes . Right click on the HDPii printer instance, then left click on Printer Preferences to select the Card tab.
2	Click the Test Print button.



Inhibit Panel Feature Operation

The Inhibit feature allows the user to define areas on the card surface which will not accept any transfer of print data. With the reverse image transfer technology used in this printer, the color (dye-sublimation, for colors or resin thermal transfer, for black resin) is transferred first onto a transfer film then that transfer film is used to fuse the coloring material onto the surface of the card.

The inhibit material is transferred to the film after any dye-sublimation colors or resin thermal transfer ink are transferred to the film and before transferring the film to the card. **(Note:** Thus the inhibit material prevents the coloring material from being transferred to the card. Examples of where this feature may be used are signature panels, and magnetic stripe areas.)

There are two ways to use the Inhibit Panel feature:

- Define inhibit areas using the Fargo Workbench.
- Define inhibit areas using the application software.

Using the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility For Inhibit Area Placement

The first way to utilize the Inhibit Panel feature is to use the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility to add rectangular inhibit areas. Each print job generated from the client computer will contain the instructions to place the corresponding inhibit area(s) on the card surface.

Using the Fargo Workbench to define the inhibit area works regardless of whether the printer being used to print jobs is a shared instance from another computer (e.g., on a local area network) or an instance local to that computer.

Using the Application For Inhibit Area Placement

The second way of using the Inhibit Panel feature is to use application software together with control commands embedded within the application file. The application must support the functionality of the “TextOut” feature.

- Not all applications provide this functionality. (**Note:** Applications which support TextOut include Corel Draw, Microsoft Word, and Microsoft WordPad. Examples of applications which do not support the use of TextOut commands are Notepad and Paint. Consult the documentation of the application to determine if it supports the “TextOut” command)
- The data required from the application to support the Inhibit Panel feature is a “~i” command within the print job itself. (**Note:** To form the command the “~i” is followed by the file name of a bitmap file. There must be no space between the “~i” and the file name, no quotation marks are required.)
- An example of an acceptable field is “~iC:\Test\inhibit.bmp”. The specified bitmap file is merged with the rest of the data within the print job at the time the print job is processed by the Windows printing system.

Background Information - Windows Printing System

Rendering is the conversion of the print job data from the application software into the various color “panels” that the printer can understand.

- The rendering component of the Windows printing system looks for the inhibit bitmap file within the “~i” command to combine its information into the data that goes to the printer.
- To describe where the inhibit bitmap file must be placed the user needs to understand the environment of the printer instance to which they are printing.
- The environment of the printer instance determines on which workstation the print job is rendered. Where the inhibit bitmap file needs to be placed depends upon what workstation the job is rendered.

Inhibit Bitmap - Local Printer Instances Functions

If the printer instance is local to the workstation where the print job is created (e.g., the printer instance is not shared from another workstation on a local area network) rendering of the print job occurs on the given local workstation.

Thus the file specified within the “~i” command in a print job being printed on a local printer instance must reside on the local workstation.

Inhibit Bitmap - Network (Shared) Printer Instances Functions

If the printer is a shared instance (e.g., shared from another workstation attached to a local area network) the print job is rendered on the server workstation from which it is shared under Microsoft Windows 2000, XP and 2003.

- Thus the file location specified within the command is relative to the server workstation on Windows 2000, XP and 2003; for example, it must exist in that location on the server workstation.
- Under Microsoft Windows Vista, the rendering of the print job may be performed (a) on either the client (that is printing to that instance) or (b) on the server workstation which is sharing that instance depending upon the setting chosen within the printer instance.
- Thus the file location specified within the command depends upon your settings within that instance for printing under Windows Vista.

Inhibit Bitmap File Placement Examples

For example placing a “~iC:\Test\inhibit.bmp” text object within a Corel Draw print job against a local HDPii printer instance under Windows XP causes the printer driver to look for a file with that name and location on the local workstation.

The location of the inhibit area within the print job is the upper left hand corner of the page where the TextOut string is placed upon the drawing within the application.

Inhibit Bitmap File Description

The inhibit bitmap file must contain one bit per pixel (e.g., Monochrome) at 300 dots per inch. If the inhibit bitmap is larger than the page size it is trimmed to fit.

- The normal print size for a HDPii CR-80 card is 2.204 by 3.452 inches.
- With that print size, the maximum size of the inhibit bitmap area would be 661 by 1035 pixels. Black pixels within the image file produce an inhibit covering on the card.

Section 12: Packing the Card Printer

The purpose of this section is to provide the User with a specific packing procedure for the Printer.

Follow this instruction to pack the Card Printer for transport.

Step	Procedure
1	Clean the inside of the Printer with deionized air. Wipe it down with a lint-free cloth.
2	Clean the Printhead with a Printhead swab.
3	Pack the Printer in the original carton and packing materials.
4	Be sure to enclose any necessary paperwork, test cards, etc.

Section 13: Firmware Updates

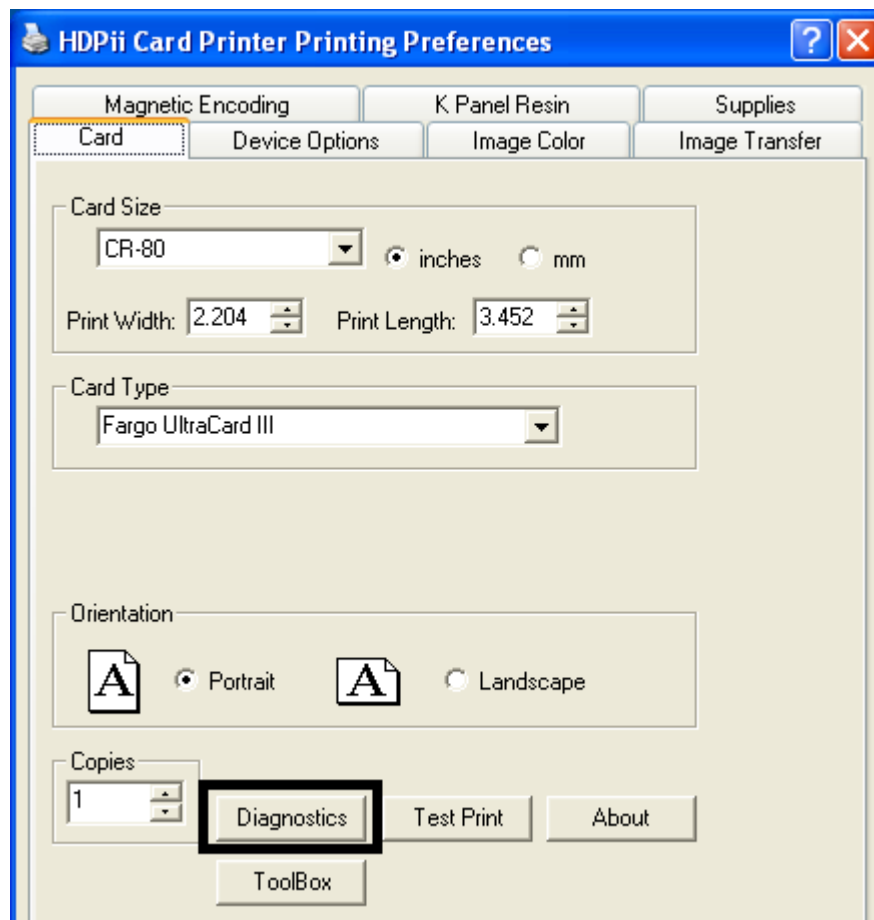
The purpose of this section is to provide the User with information on the internal software or Firmware, which controls all aspects of the Printer's operation. New Firmware versions may be released containing enhancements, such as improved reliability, added features or better print quality. New Firmware updates can be downloaded from the Internet.

- Refer to the **Fargo Workbench Printer Utility User Guide** to download and install Firmware updates. See the Fargo website to access this document.
- **Important:** This is a new Printer. Once new Firmware is released and made available (via Step 2 below), Steps 3 through 14 in this procedure will be enlarged with “real world” populated windows and dialogs. Until that time, please review this procedure only for future use.

Performing the Firmware Updates

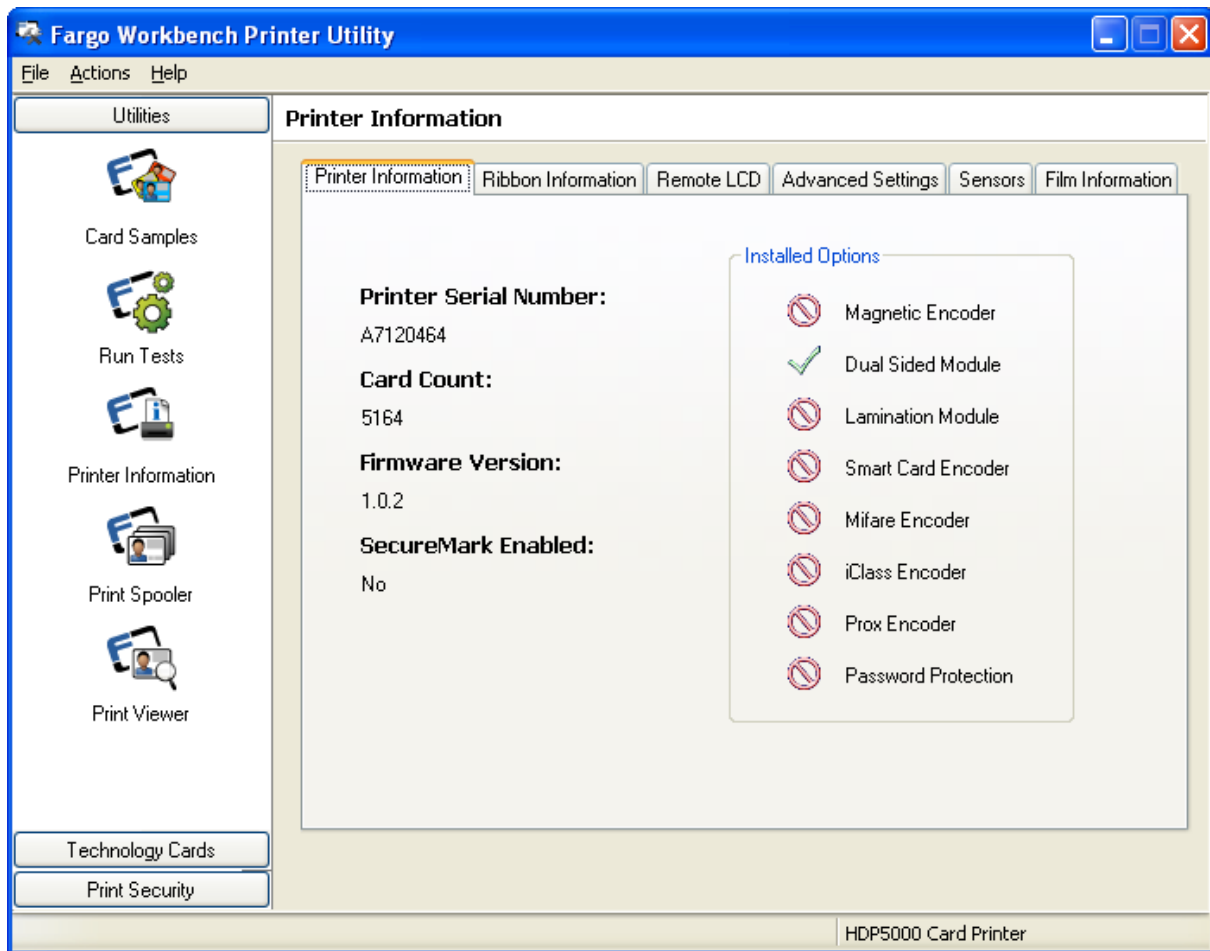
Step	Procedure
1	Type in: www.fargosupport.com to bring up the web site, as shown below.

Display A – Card tab (**Diagnostics** button)



Performing the Firmware Updates (continued)

Display B – Fargo Workbench Printer Utility (Printer Information tab)



Performing the Firmware Updates (continued)

Step	Procedure
2	<p>This will launch the Technical Support page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click on the Firmware selection box. Using the drop down menu, select the Printer. Click on the Go button, as shown below.



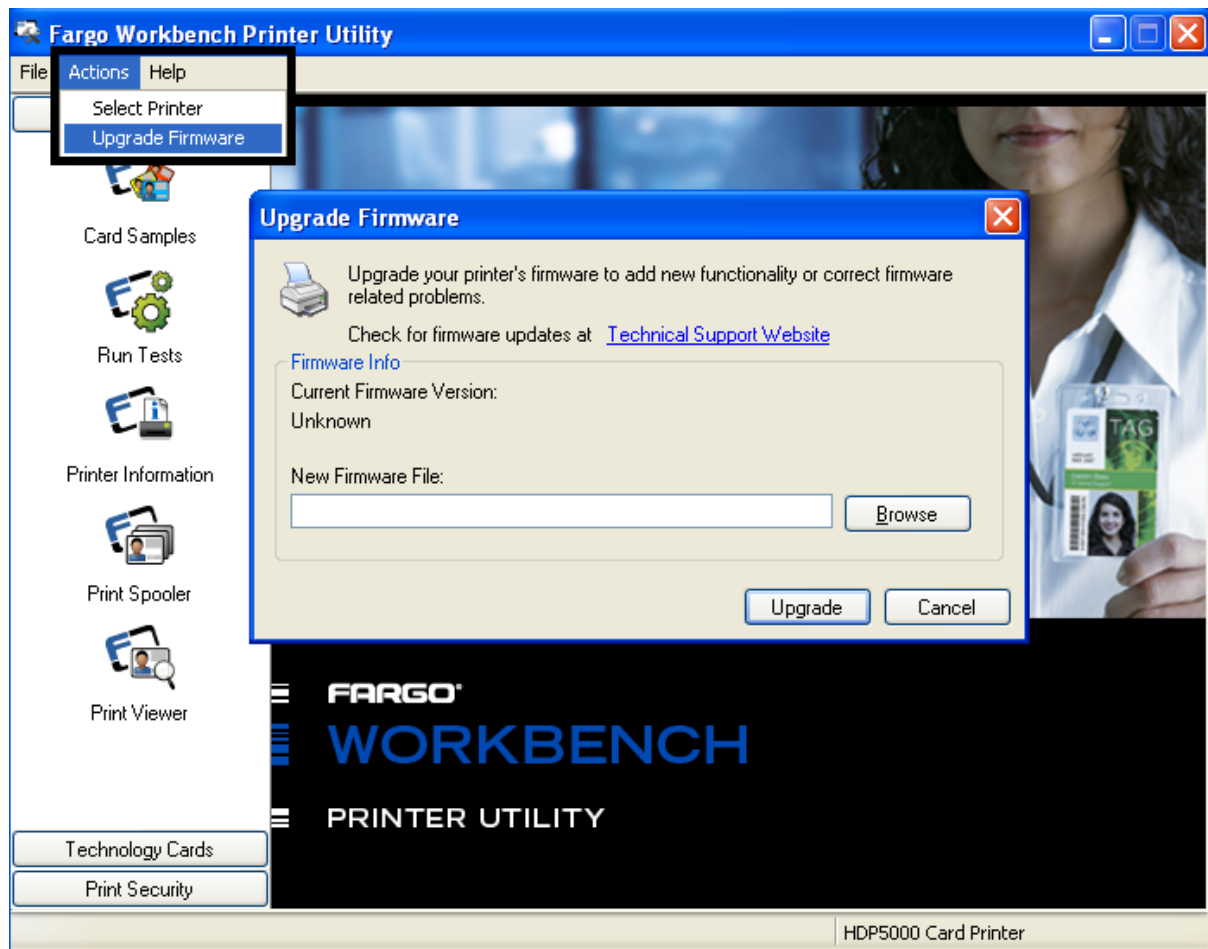
Performing the Firmware Updates (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	Click on the Printer name under Printer Firmware to begin the download.
5	Click on the Save button to save the file.
6	Click on the Save button to save the file to the computer's Desktop.
7	Click on the Close button to close this dialog when the download is completed.
8	From the computer's desktop, double click on the Firmware .exe file to un-zip it.
9	Click on the Browse button on the WinZip Self-Extractor window.
10	Select the Desktop, and then click on the OK button in the Browse for Folder dialog.
11	Click on the Unzip button in the WinZip Self-Extractor window to unzip designated files.

Continued on the next page

Performing the Firmware Updates (continued)

Step	Procedure
12	Select Upgrade Firmware in the Actions dropdown menu, as shown below. This brings up the Upgrade Firmware window, as shown below. See the Fargo Workbench Printer Utility User Guide at this time.



Performing the Firmware Updates

Step	Procedure
13	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select the Desktop from the Browse menu.• Click on the .frm file.• Click on the Open button.• Click on Upgrade to send the Firmware to the Printer.
14	This completes the Firmware Update process.

Section 14: Fargo Technical Support

The purpose of this section to provide the User with an efficient, step-by-step procedure to be used when contacting Fargo Technical Support as needed for the Printer.

Contacting Fargo Technical Support

Step	Procedure
1	<p>Read the suggested Sections of the Technical Service and Maintenance Manual in order to troubleshoot the Card Printer.</p> <p>As needed, contact the Fargo Technical Support Group by phone at (952) 941-0050 or by fax at (952) 941-1852 for additional, technical assistance.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Contact Fargo Technical Support via the Web: http://www.fargosupport.com/</p>
2	<p>Position a phone near the Printer and Computer so Fargo technicians can troubleshoot the Printer(s) with efficiency.</p>
3	<p>Please have a self-test and a sample card ready when calling Fargo Technical Support.</p>

Reading the Serial Numbers on a Fargo Printer

The purpose of this section is to provide updated instructions for reading serial numbers on a Fargo Printer.

Finding out when a Card Printer was manufactured

You can determine when your card Printer was manufactured by reading directly from the serial number (affixed to your card Printer).

1. **Year Built:** The first two digits in the serial number indicate the year that the Printer was manufactured.
2. **Week Built:** The second two digits indicate the week.
3. **Numeric Order:** The last four digits indicate the sequence number for the numeric order in which the Printer's were built.

Reviewing Example No. 1: Serial Number A9007001

1. **A9007001:** The first two digits in the serial number indicate the year the Printer was built (e.g., the letter and digit A1 indicate the year 2009).
2. **A9007001:** The third and fourth digits in the serial number indicate the week the Printer was built (e.g., the digits 07 indicate week 7 of that year).
3. **A9007001:** The last four digits indicate the sequence number for the numeric order in which the Printer's were built.

Section 15: Reviewing Spare Parts Lists

Reviewing Spare Parts List for

HDPii Series



Recommended Spare Parts List

Effective Date: To be added at a later date



For current pricing see http://www.fargopartner.com/support_services/

Section 16: HDPII Parts Replacement

The purpose of this section is to provide the User with specific replacement procedures for the Card Printer. Please see the next page to review standard precautions (to take) while performing these replacement procedures.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.  Danger: Wear proper eye protection to perform the procedures in this section.
2	Be sure to reverse the disassembly steps to reassemble the Card Printer.
3	<i>NOTE: Print out the Advanced Setting Card for future reference. If the main board or the printhead is replaced these numbers will need to be added back into the Advanced Settings Options within the driver. From the front display select OPTIONS to MENU to TESTS. Print out the Printer Setting keep for future use.</i>

Safety Messages (review carefully)

Symbol	Critical Instructions for Safety purposes
Danger: 	<p>Failure to follow these installation guidelines can result in death or serious injury.</p> <p>Information that raises potential safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <p>To prevent personal injury, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol.</p> <p>To prevent personal injury, always remove the power cord prior to performing repair procedures, unless otherwise specified.</p> <p>To prevent personal injury, make sure only authorized service personnel perform these procedures.</p>
Caution: 	<p>This device is electrostatically sensitive. It can be damaged if exposed to static electricity discharges.</p> <p>Information that raises potential electrostatic safety issues is indicated by a warning symbol (as shown to the left).</p> <p>To prevent equipment or media damage, refer to the following safety messages before performing an operation preceded by this symbol.</p> <p>To prevent equipment or media damage, observe all established Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures while handling cables in or near the Circuit Board and Printhead Assemblies.</p> <p>To prevent equipment or media damage, always wear an appropriate personal grounding device (e.g., a high quality wrist strap grounded to avoid potential damage).</p> <p>To prevent equipment or media damage, always remove the Ribbon and Cards from the Printer before making any repairs, unless otherwise specified.</p> <p>To prevent equipment or media damage, take jewelry off of fingers and hands, as well as thoroughly clean hands to remove oil and debris before working on the Printer.</p>

Cover Replacement Procedures

Important: These procedures can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

The HDP Printer now uses fewer screws to attach parts, such as, Covers and Sensors.

Many of the parts use a SNAP and CLIP process. Each procedure will notify you of the SNAP and CLIP process used.

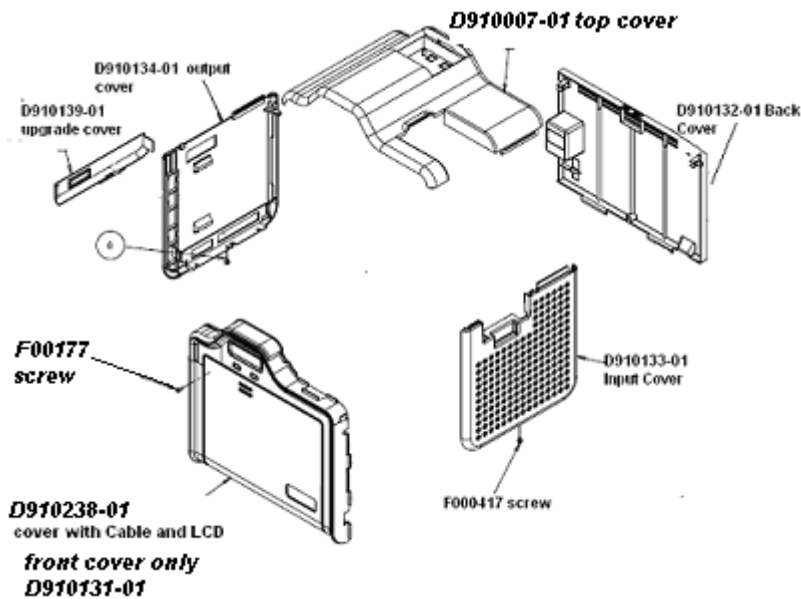
Most Sensors and Rollers SNAP in and out to attach.

Caution: When replacing the Covers or any parts, do NOT pinch any wires.

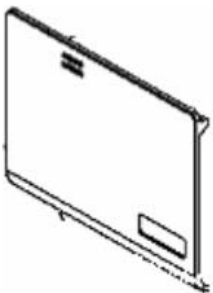



Caution: Please be careful not to force any of the snapping parts as they could break with too much pressure.

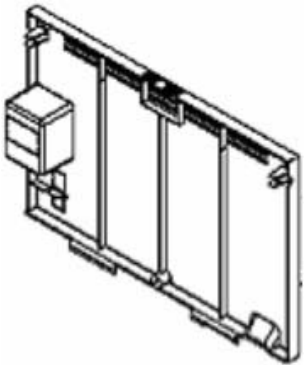

Reviewing the HDPii Covers- Printer



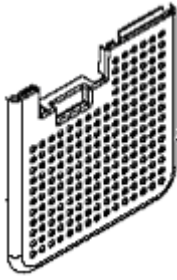
Replacing the Front Door Assembly (D910131-01)

		<p>Tools needed: Uses the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.	
3	Open the Cover (D910131-01). Flex the Front Cover Assembly (D910131-01) from the center bottom to release the two (2) side pins from the Frame.	
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	

Replacing the Back Cover Assembly (D910132-01)

		<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx and small flathead screwdrivers; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.	
3	Remove the screw at the base of the Back Cover Assembly (D910132-01). Use a small screwdriver to pry the center tab slot to release the Cover. Bend out and down to remove from the lower tab slots.	
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. (Note: First insert the tabs located at the bottom edge of the Cover.)	


Replacing the Input Side Cover (D910133-01)





Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes

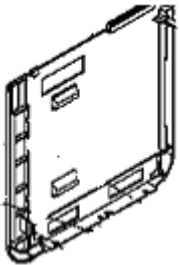

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.
3	Turn the Printer on the back and loosen the one (1) screw at the base of the Cover (D910133-01).
4	Remove the Input Cover Assembly (D910133-01) by pulling it out and off.
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. (Note: First insert the tabs located at the upper edge of the Cover.)

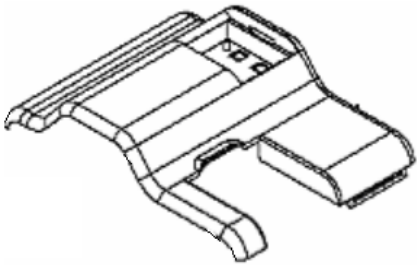

Replacing the Output Side Upgrade Cover (D910139-01)

		<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 1 minute</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.	
3	Use a small flathead screwdriver to release the one end. Pry the rest of the cover off of the Output Side Upgrade Cover (D910139-01).	
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. Leave it off for Upgraded Printers to access the port.	

Replacing the Output Side Cover (D910134-01)

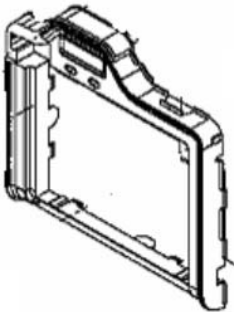


	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.
3	Turn the Printer over and loosen the one (1) screw at the base of the Cover (D910134-01).
4	Remove the Output Cover Assembly (D910134-01) by pulling it out and off.
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. (Note: First insert the tabs located at the upper edge of the Cover.)

Replacing the Top Cover (D910007-01)

	<p>Tools needed: Uses the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	<p>Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges.</p> <p>Remove the Input Side Cover (D910133-01) and Output Side Cover (D910134-01) first.</p> <p>Remove the Top Cover Assembly (D910136-01) by pulling it up and off.</p> <p>Starting with the input side, grasp the two (2) sections from underneath. Then pull out and up to release the small tabs that hold this Cover to the Frame. See display A.</p> <p>Lift the Top Cover Assembly (D910136-01) off from the Output side.</p>
3	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. (Note: Start with the input side to latch the tabs, and then snap down on the output side to attach it.)</p>



Replacing the Front Panel Trim Cover (D910283-01)

		<p>Tools needed: Uses the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 1 minute</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p> <p>This part contains the LCD board and cables.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the Ribbon, Film and Card Cartridges. Remove all of the Covers to access this Front Panel Trim Cover (D910283-01). Remove the Magnetic Cover (D910138-01).	
3	Gently pull off the Frame.  Caution: Do not tilt it. Pull the Frame straight out from the Frame.	
4	Disconnect LCD cable. (Note: The Cable routing extends within the Front Frame.)	
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. (Note: Line it up, and then snap the Frame into place.)	

Replacing the Magnetic Cover (D910138-01)




Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

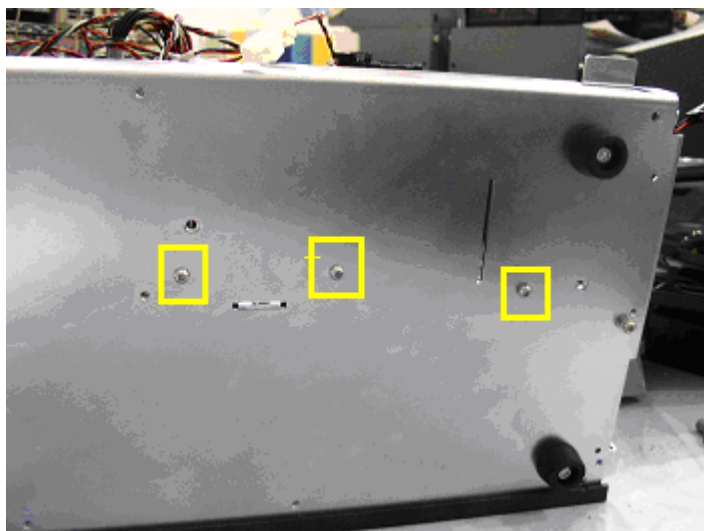
Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

This part is contained in the Front Panel Trim Cover

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove the screw from the Magnetic Cover (F000177). See the photo above. Remove the Magnetic Cover Assembly. Replace it.
3	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Removing the Baseplate





Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver

Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

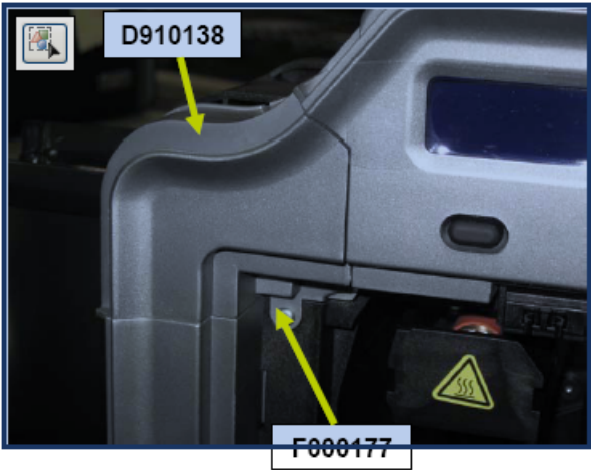
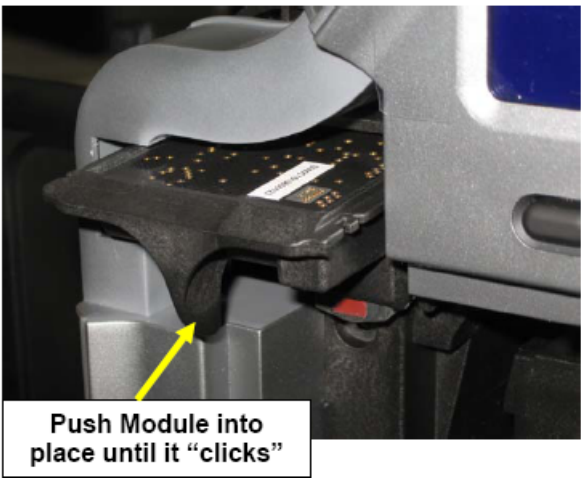
This procedure is used when replacing the Main Board.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove the two (2) screws from the Front of the Printer body. Turn the Printer on its front and remove the three (3) Torx screws from the bottom center of the Printer base.
3	Remove the wire connections. (Note: Ensure each wire is labeled correctly.) Tilt base back to access the wires.  Caution: Do not allow any part of the metal Printer body to touch the Main Board.
4	Gently ease the Baseplate off of the Printer body from the Motor side of the Printer.

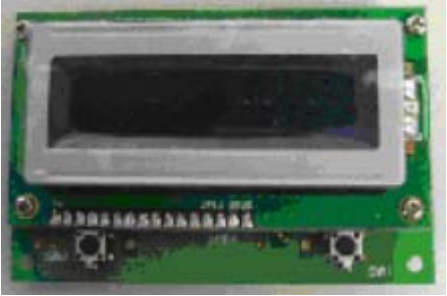

Board Replacement Procedures

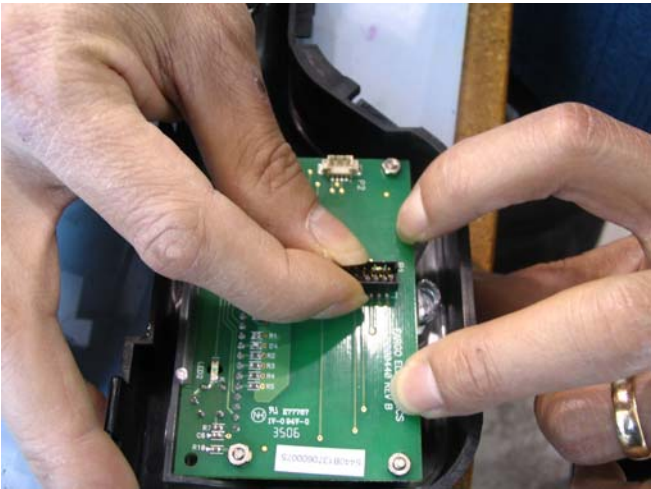
Replacing the Magnetic Head Assembly (089201; Module Kit)

		<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p> <p>Board and Magnetic head are one piece assembly</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	<p>a. Remove the screw (F000177) from the Magnetic Cover (D910138).</p> <p>b. Remove the Magnetic Cover Assembly.</p>	
3	<p>a. Pull out the Magnetic Head and Board Assembly.</p> <p>b. Install new Magnetic Head and Board</p>	
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	

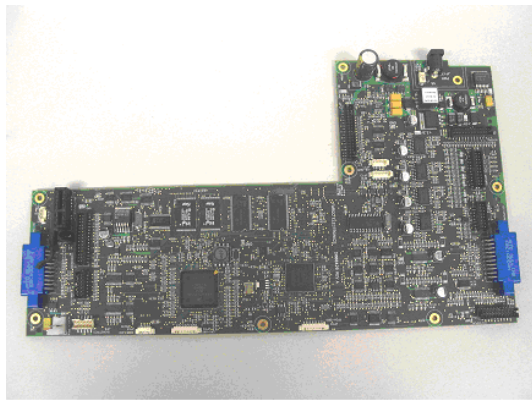


Replacing the LCD Board Assembly (A000440)

		<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver – Uses the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 5 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the Front Panel Trim Cover (D910067-01).	
3	Detach the wire to the Cover Switch at P2 and the Data Ribbon cable at P1 from the LCD Board	
4	Unclip the LCD Board Assembly (A000440) from the Front Panel Assembly. See display A.	
5	Replace the LCD Board Assembly (A000440).	
6	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	



Replacing the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03)




Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

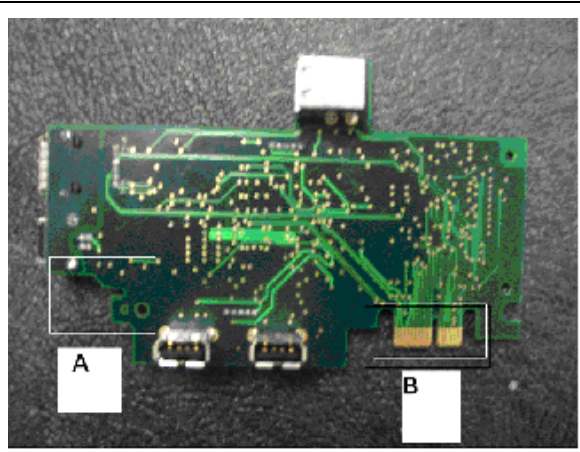

Preparation: Remove Covers. See procedure above.

Mainboard is located on the Baseplate. See Remove Printer from base procedure.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

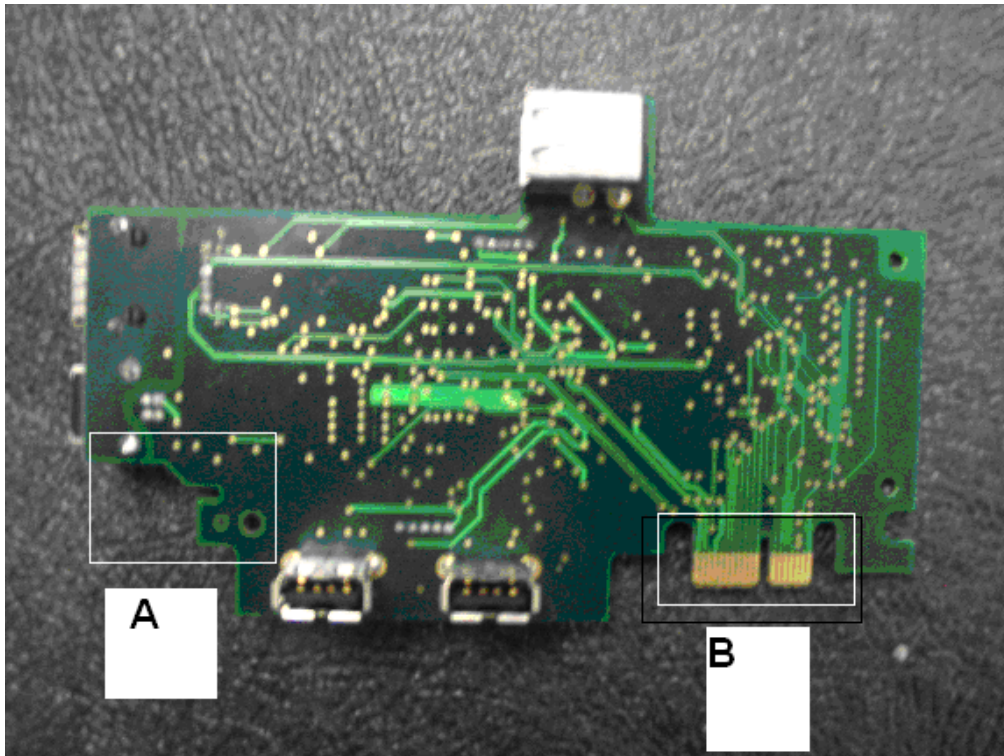
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer. Do not allow any part of the metal Printer body to touch the Main Board.
2	<p>The Main Board Assembly (A000475-03) is located underneath the Printer assemble. (Note: The Main Board contains the power connection port and the accessory connection port (Output Module).)</p> <p>Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Remove the Printer from the base. See Removing Printer from base procedure.</p>
3	Remove Ethernet Board if applicable.
4	Remove the eight (8) screws that attach the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03) to the Baseplate.
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441)

	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p> <p>A000441 connects to the Mainboard A000475-03</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Note: The USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441) is used for the communication port of the USB and Ethernet.</p>
2	<p>The USB/Ethernet Board is located vertically and connected to the main Printer Board at location JP9.</p> <p>Do not remove the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03) for this procedure.</p>
3	<p>Remove the Back Cover.</p> <p>Remove the Output Side Cover</p>
4	<p>Hold the Board at an angle and insert the NOTCH (A) into the slot of the metal base Frame on the USB port side of the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03).</p> <p>See Display A on the next page.</p>
5	<p>Carefully Insert the connector tab (B) into the slot on the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03). The location is JP9 ETH/USB. (Note: The locking arm located towards the rear must be released if the Board is installed or removed.)</p> <p>See Display B in this section.</p>
6	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.</p>

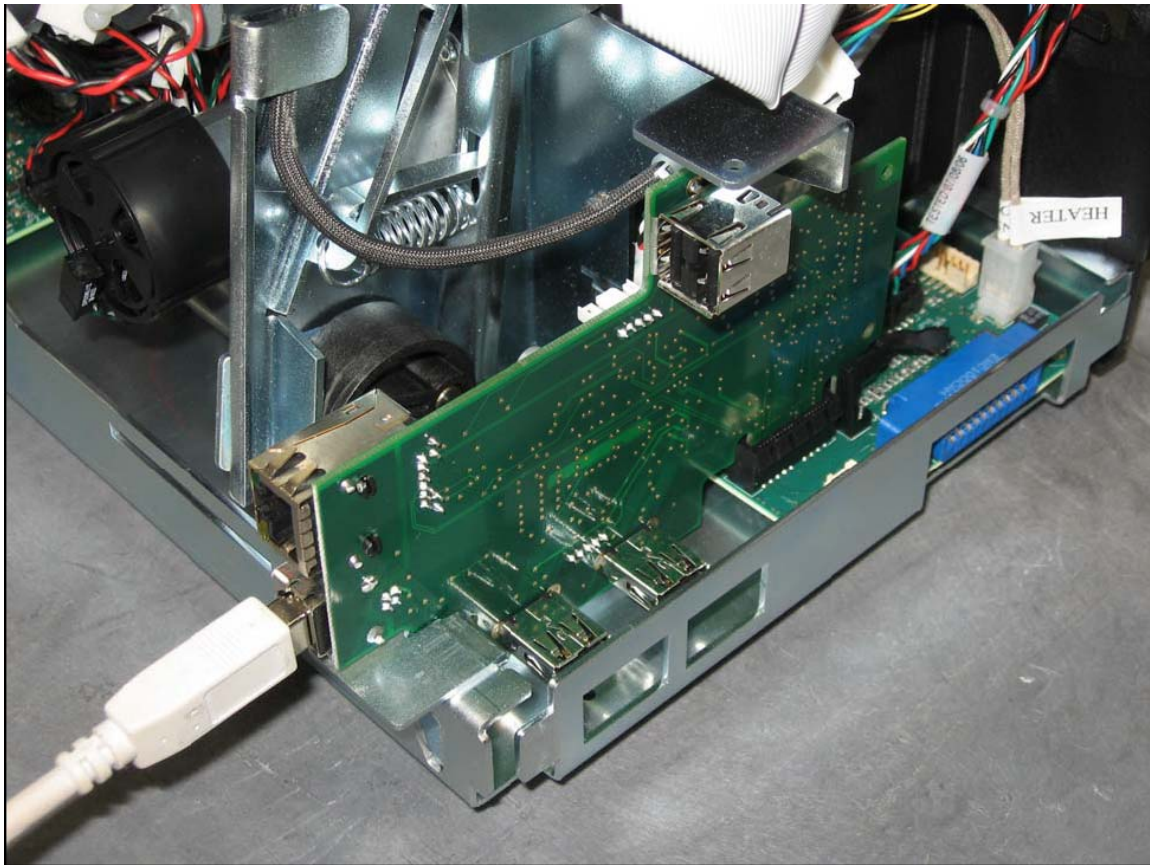
Installing the USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441) (continued)

Display A – See Procedural Step 4 in this procedure.





Installing the USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441)

Display B – See Procedural Step 5 in this procedure.

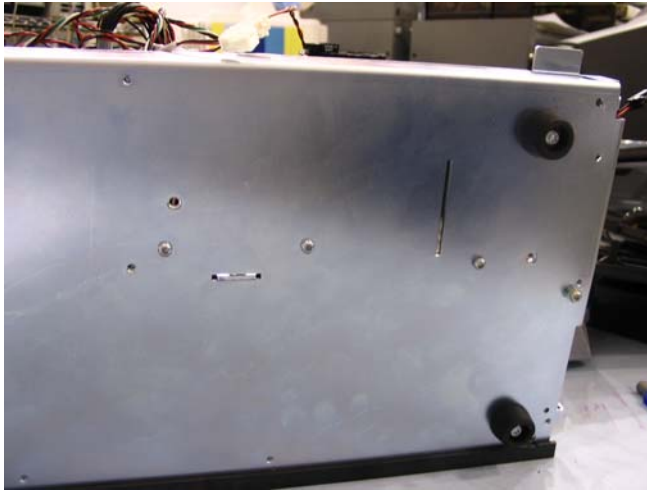


Replacing the RFID Board Assembly (A000365)

		<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers. Remove Printer from base to access this part.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Power off the Printer by unplugging the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the appropriate Supply Motor. See instructions above	
3	<p>The complete Printer body must be removed from the Baseplate to allow clearance to remove the RFID Board.</p> <p>Remove the two (2) screws from the Front of the Printer body.</p> <p>Turn the Printer on its front and remove the three (3) Torx screws from the bottom center of the Printer base. Lift Printer body from base. See Display A within this procedure.</p>	

Replacing the RFID Board Assembly (A000365)

Display A: See Step 3 in this procedure.



Replacing the RFID Board Assembly (A000365)

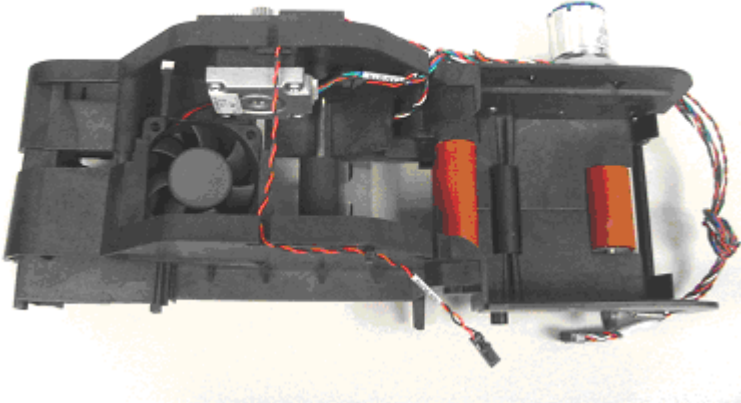

Step	Procedure
4	Replace the RFID PCB Board (A000365) by sliding into place under the holding tabs. See Display B (within this procedure.).
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Display B: See Step 4 in this procedure.



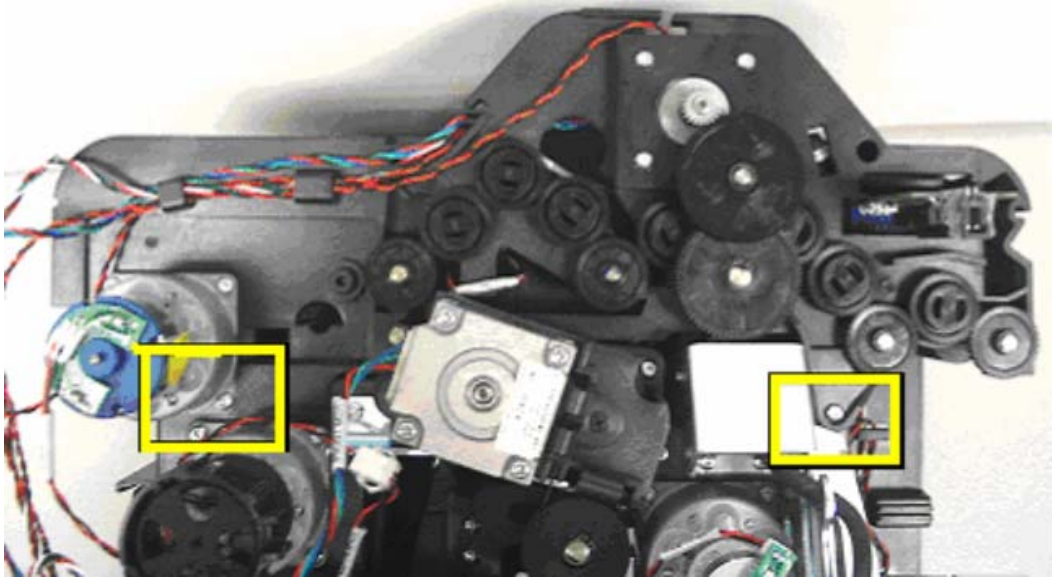
Card Path and Roller Replacement Procedures

Replacing the Card Path Assembly (D910006)

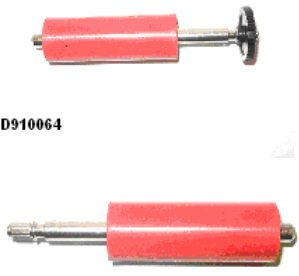

		<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the two (2) screws from the card path. (Note: One screw is located at the back next to the Card Feed Motor Assembly (D910074). One screw is located at the back opposite side.)</p> <p>See Display A.</p>	
3	<p>Gently slide the Card Path Assembly (D910006) and slide out from the back side.</p>	
4	<p>Detach the wire connections. (Note: Leave the other wires attached to the assemblies in this upper section- JP1 cable stays on the card path assembly)</p>	
5	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.</p>	

Replacing the Card Path Assembly (D910006)

Display A: See Step 2 in this procedure.

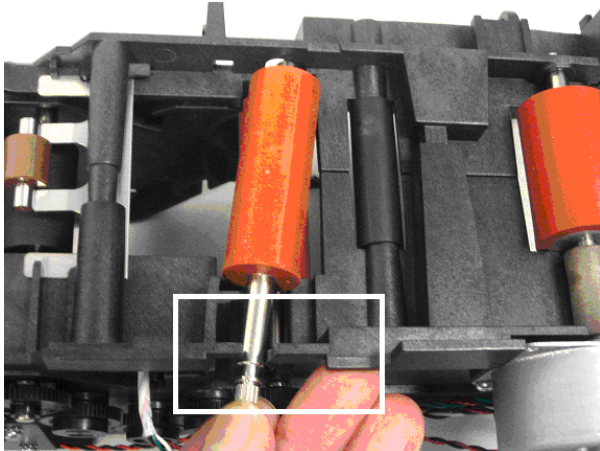


Replacing the Card Rollers, Upper Roller (D910064) and Lower Roller (D910107)

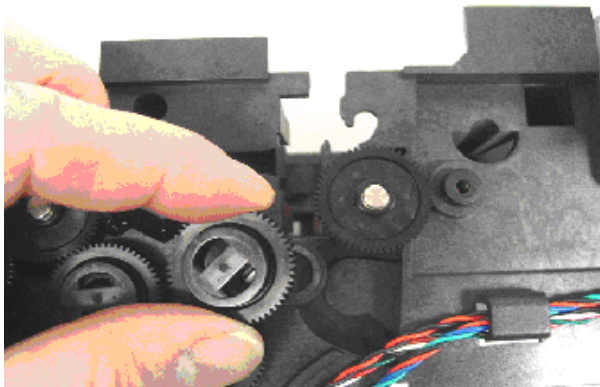
 <p>D910064</p> <p>D910107</p>	<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver - small flathead screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	Remove the Card Path Sensor.
3	Remove the Roller D910107 by snapping it out from the Frame. Turn card path over to access this Roller. See Display A in this section.
4	Replace the Roller (D910107) and reassemble (if not changing the D910064 Roller).
5	<p>Remove the Roller (D910107) to access the Roller (D910064).</p> <p>Remove the Main Gear D910110 next to the Roller to clear access for removal. See Display B.</p> <p>Remove the Roller D910064 by snapping it out from the Frame. See Display C.</p> <p>Leave the Gear attached to the Roller Shaft and gently work this out from the Frame. It is snapped into place.</p>
6	Replace the Card Sensor by snapping into place. (Note: The tabs will click when the Sensor is properly installed.)
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Card Rollers - Upper Roller (D910064) and Lower Roller (D910107) (continued)

Display A: Relates to Roller (D910107). Push down and out to unlock the Shaft from the Frame. See Step 3 in this procedure.

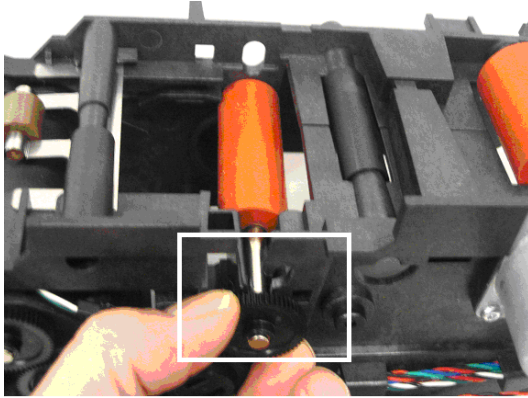


Display B: You should remove this Gear to clear access for Roller removal, which snaps on and off easily. See Step 5 in this procedure.





Replacing the Card Rollers - Upper Roller (D910064) and Lower Roller (D910107) (continued)

Display C: Relates to Roller (D910064). Push down and out to unlock the Shaft from the Frame. Leave the Gear attached to the Roller Shaft. See Step 5.



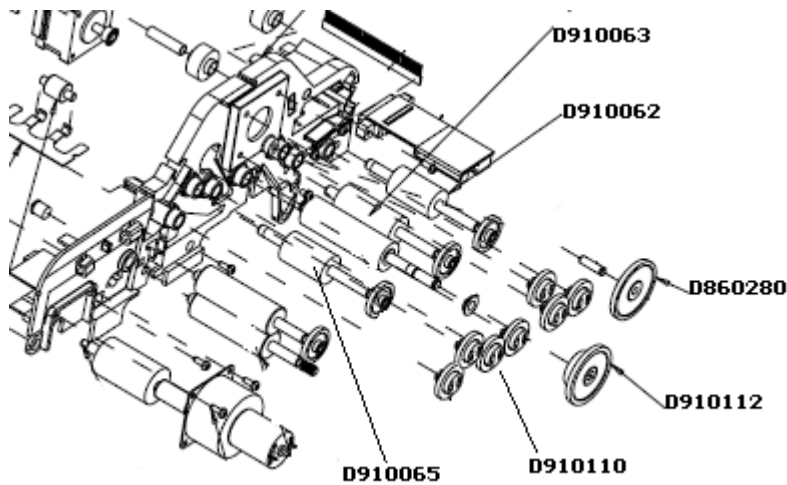
Replacing the Card Rollers (D910062), Card Roller (D910063) and Card Roller (D910065)

 <p>D910063</p> <p>D910062</p> <p>D910065</p>	<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 30 minute</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier.</p>
2	<p>Remove the two (2) large Gears (D860280 and D910112) to access the Rollers. (Note: These Gears are attached with an E-Clip and a C-Clip.)</p> <p>See Display A within this procedure.</p>
3	<p>Remove the three (3) Main Plastic Gears (D910110) to access the Roller (D910062). (Note: These are snap-on Gears.)</p> <p>See Display B within this procedure.</p>
4	<p>Unsnap the Roller Shaft (D910062) from the Frame and slide it out.</p> <p>Leave the Gear on the Shaft.</p>

Replacing the Card Rollers (D910062) and Card Roller (D910063) and Card Roller (D910065) (continued)

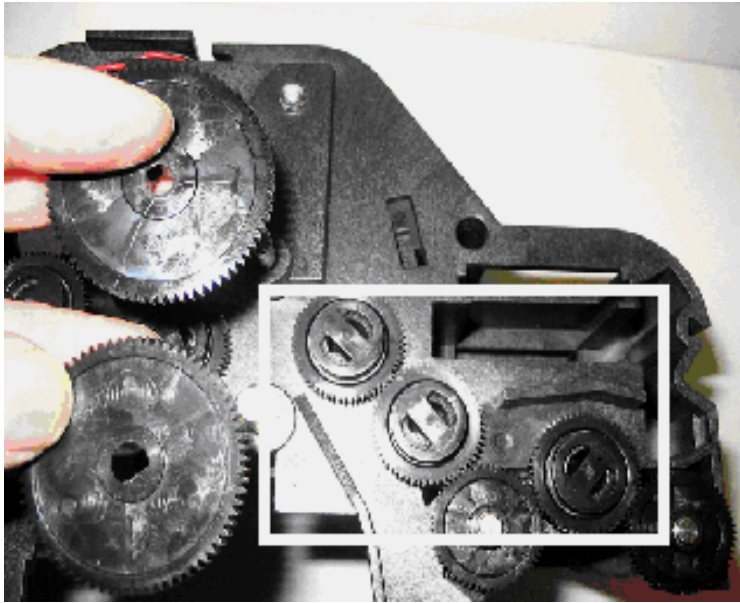
Step	Procedure
5	Remove the Roller (D910065) according to Steps 1 to 4 (above). (Note: The Gear remains on the Shaft.)
6	To remove the Card Roller (D910063) located in the center of the Card Path, remove the two (2) Gears (D910110) See Display C within this procedure.
7	Move the Roller on the Shaft up and out through the hole provided. See Display D within this procedure.
8	The Card Idler Roller (D910295) can fall out when the Roller is removed. See Display E within this procedure.

Display A: See Step 2 in this procedure.

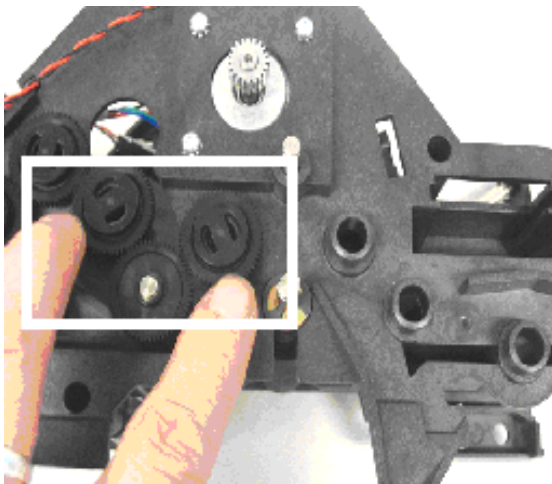


Replacing the Card Roller (D910062) and Card Roller (D910063) and Card Roller (D910065)

Display B: See Step 3 in this procedure.

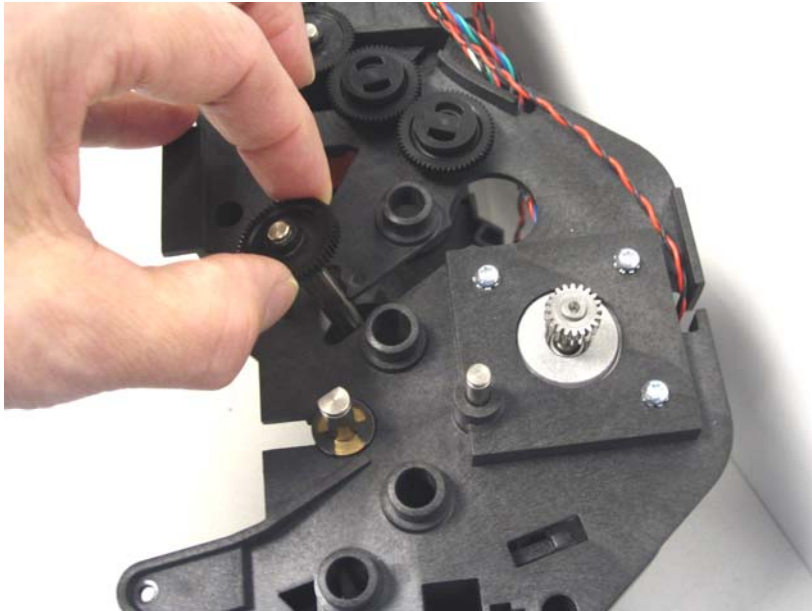


Display C: See Step 6 in this procedure.

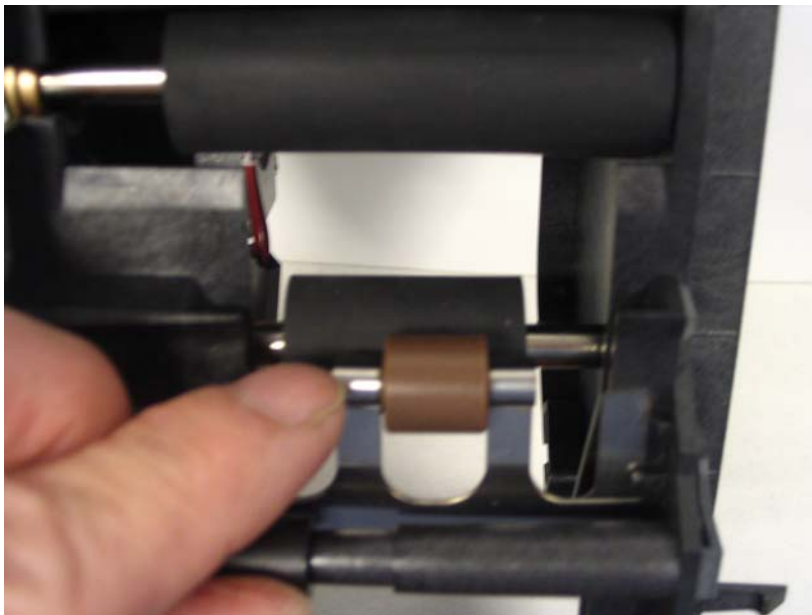


Replacing the Card Roller (D910062) and Card Roller (D910063) and Card Roller (D910065)



Display D: See Step 7 in this procedure.



Display E: See Step 8 in this procedure.

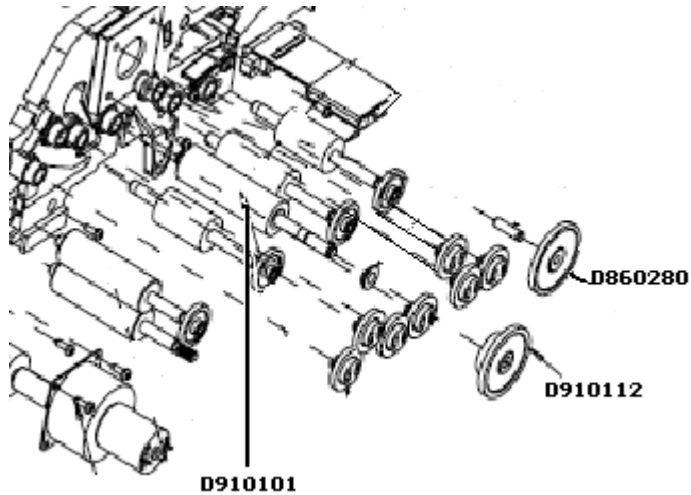


Replacing the Platen Card Roller (D910101)

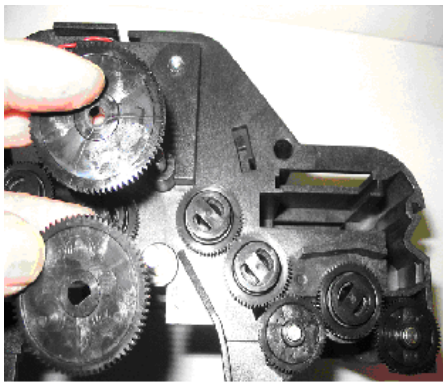
	<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures.</p>
2	<p>Remove the two (2) large Gears D860280 and D910112 to access the Rollers. These Gears are attached with an E-Clip and a C-Clip.</p> <p>See Display A.</p>
3	<p>Remove the E-Clips on both sides of the Platen Roller</p>
3	<p>Remove the bushings.</p>
4	<p>Remove the Platen Roller by sliding it up and out. See Display B.</p>
5	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.</p>

Replacing the Platen Card Roller (D910101)

Display A: See Step 2 in this procedure.



Display B: See Step 4 in this procedure.



Replacing the Print Platen Roller (D910109)




Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes

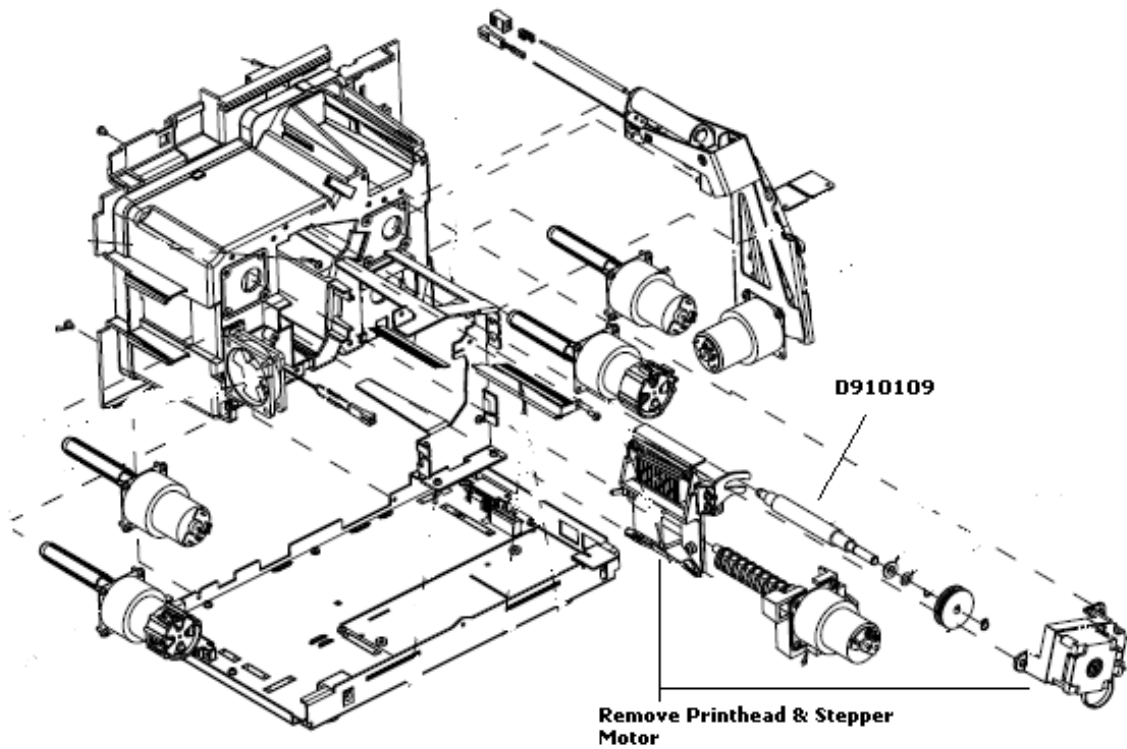
Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures...</p>
2	Remove the Printhead Assembly. See Printhead Replacement Procedures.
3	Remove the Stepper Motor. See Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093-2 used) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Gear (D840888). See Display A.
4	Hold the Gear on the Shaft and lift up the Shaft to the left to remove the Roller.
5	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. Refer to Display B in this procedure for washer placement.</p> <p>Fit the Shaft end into the hole provided. Notice the flat side of the bushing goes to the flat side of the Frame. (Note: There is a small notch on the bushing to indicate the flat side. This notch faces to the right. Refer to Display C in this procedure.)</p> <p>Replace the Pulley (D840889) as needed.</p>

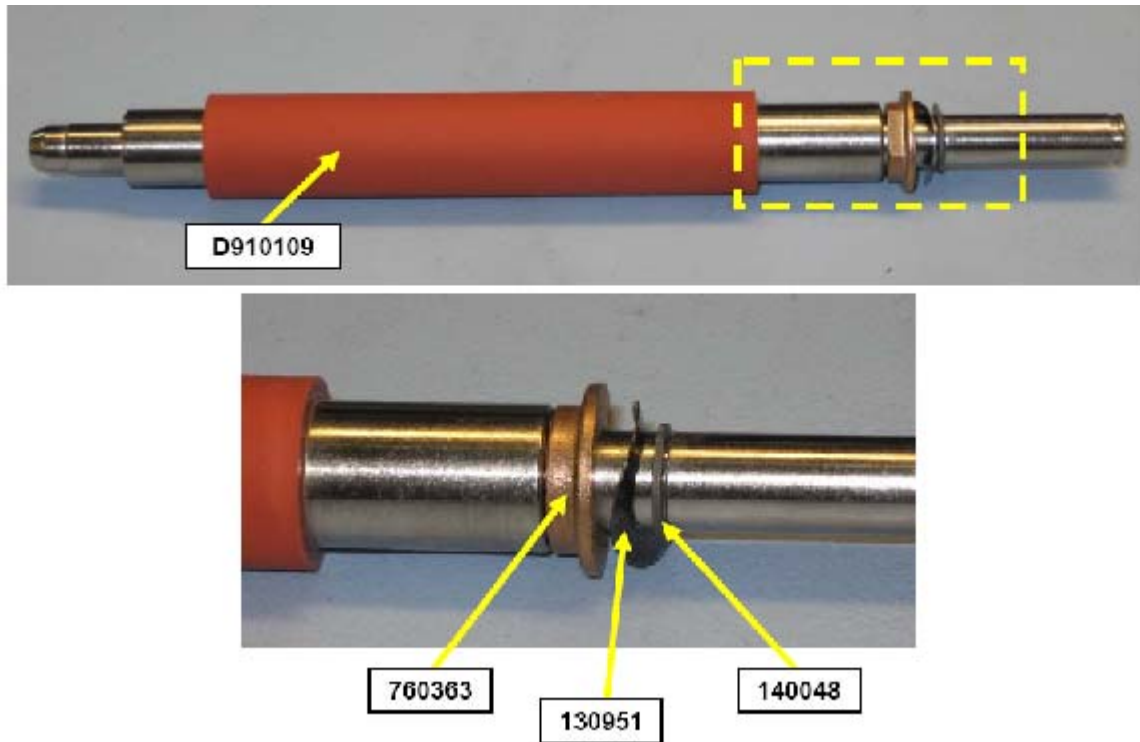
Replacing the Print Platen Roller (D910109) (continued)

Display A: See Step 3 in this procedure.



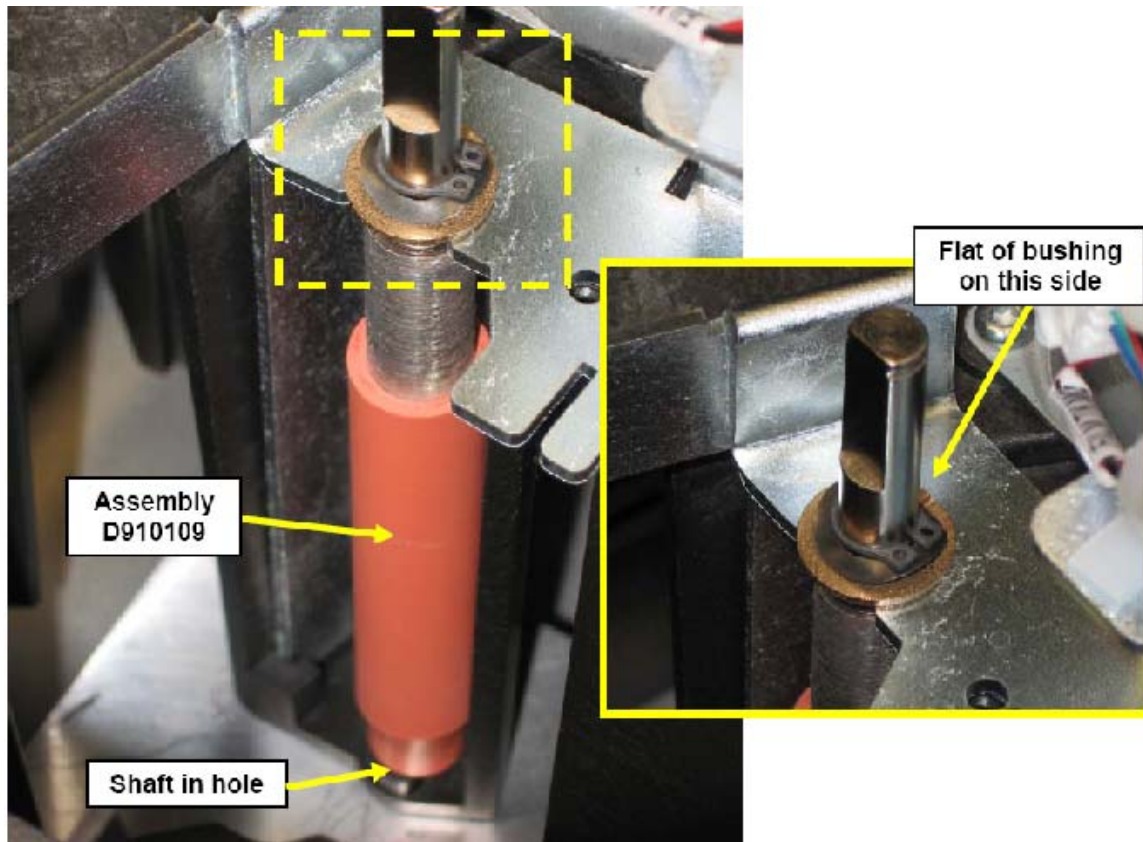
Replacing the Print Platen Roller (D910109) (continued)

Display B: See Step 5 in this procedure.



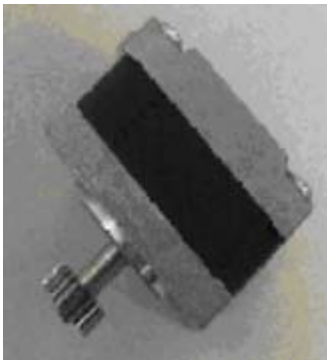

Replacing the Print Platen Roller (D910109) (continued)

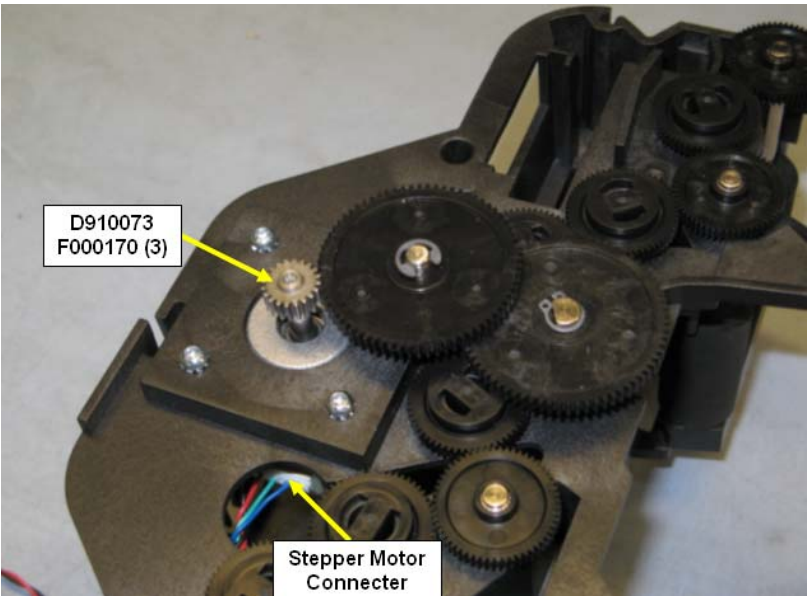
Display C: See Step 5 in this procedure.



Motor Replacement Procedures

Replacing the Drive Train Stepper Motor Assembly (D910073; Card Path location)



		<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove all of the Covers.	
3	Remove the three (3) screws from the Stepper Motor (D910073). See display below.	

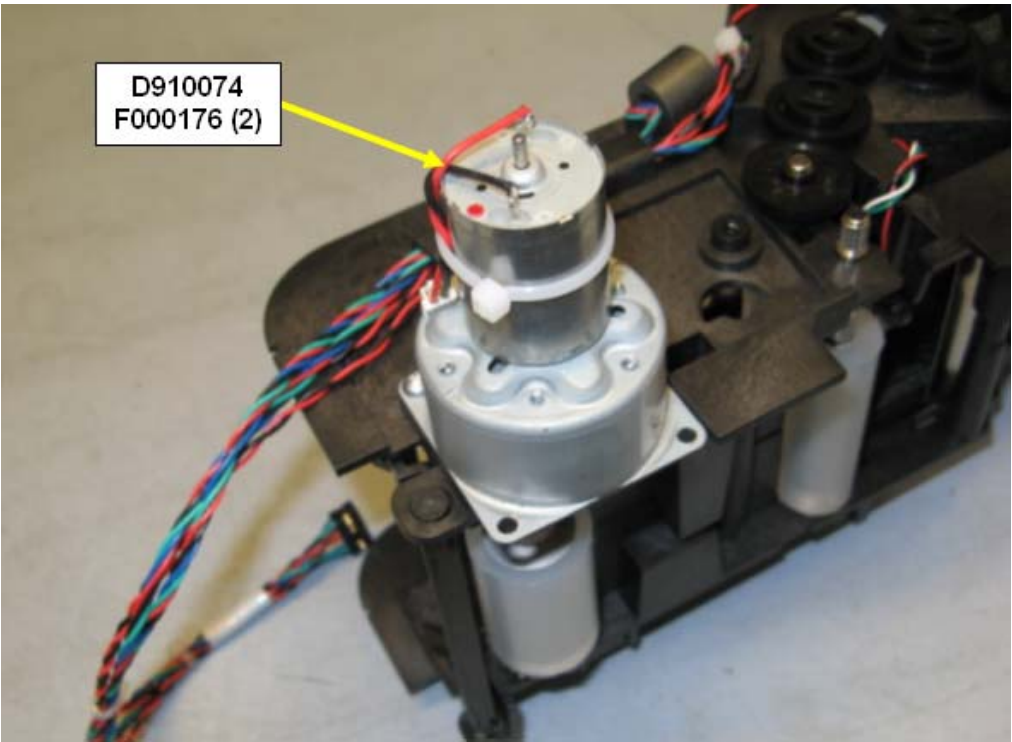


Replacing the Drive Train Stepper Motor Assembly (D910073) located in the Card Path

Step	Procedure
4	Unplug the Motor wire from the side of the Motor (D910073).
5	Slide out the Fan to allow for room to remove the Motor (D910073).
6	Pull out the Motor and replace it with the new Motor (D910073).
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Card Feed Motor/Roller Assembly (D910074)


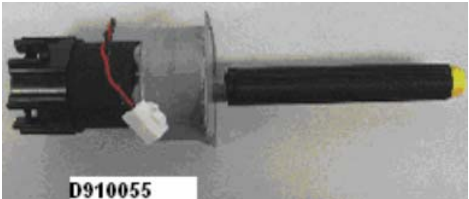


		<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers</p> <p>Remove the Card Path Assembly. See Replacing the Card Path Assembly (D910006).</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the two (2) screws from the Card Feed Motor and Roller (D910074). See display below.	



Replacing the Card Feed Motor/Roller Assembly (D910074)

Step	Procedure
3	Unplug the wire from the Motor.
4	Pull out the Motor with the Roller (D910074).
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. Insert the Shaft end into the hole provided. (Note: The Motor and screws will only fit one way.) Replace the wire.

Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055), Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057), and RFID Board (A000365)

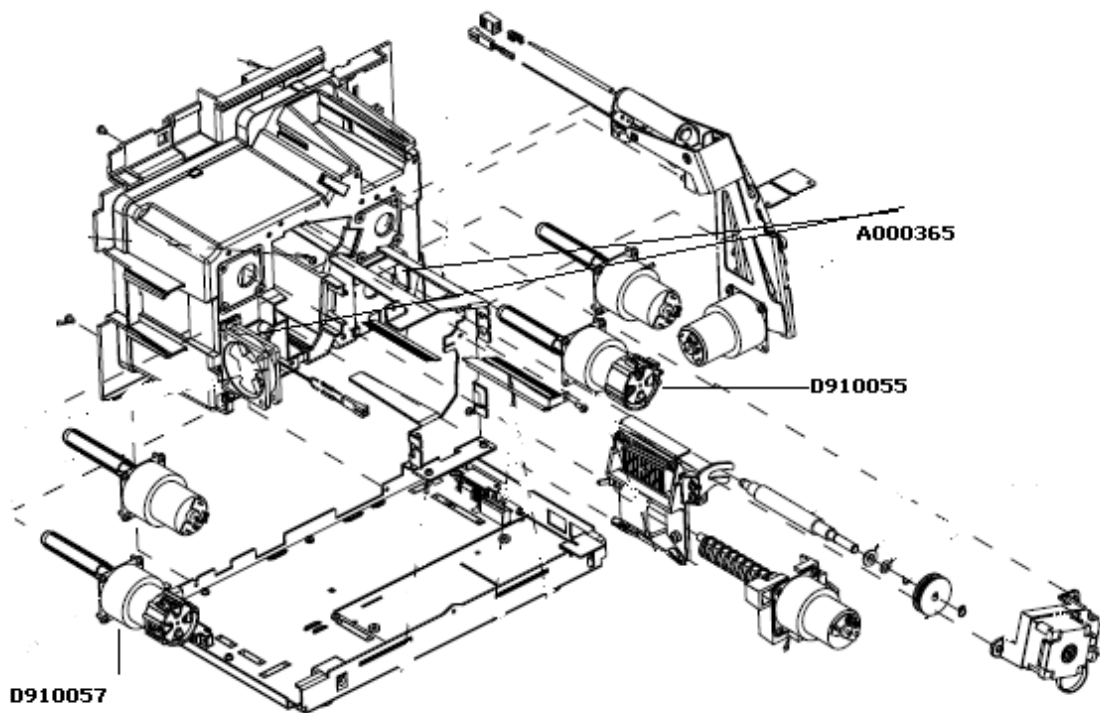
<div><div><p>A000365-01</p></div><div><p>D910055</p></div><div><p>D910057</p></div></div> <div><p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p><p>Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes each</p><p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p><p>For RFID replacement, remove the Printer from the base. See the Removing the Baseplate procedure.</p><p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p></div>	
Step	Procedure
1	<div><p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p><p>This procedure is used to replace the RFID Boards (A000365). The same procedure is used for both Supply Motors (D910055 and D910057).</p></div>

Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055) and the Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057) (continued)

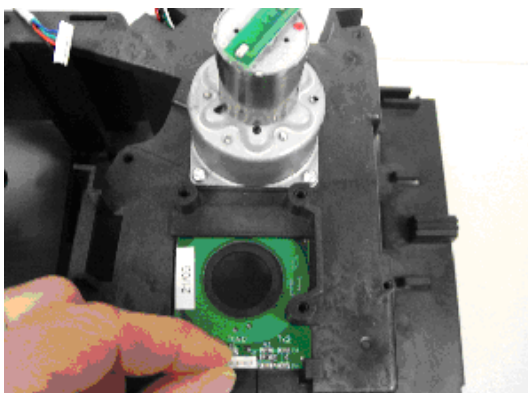
Step	Procedure
2	To remove Film Supply Motor (D910055) or the Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057). Disconnect the wire connection from the cable harness. Refer to Display D below. Leave the black plastic Encoder wheel collar on the Motor.
3	Remove the three (3) screws that hold the Supply Motor to the Frame.
4	Pull out the Supply Motor.
5	Replace it with the new Film Supply Motor (D910055 or Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057). Line up the screw holes. (Note: The Motor will only fit in one way.)
6	Remove the appropriate Supply Motor. See the instructions above.
7	Remove the complete Printer body from the Baseplate to allow clearance to remove the RFID Board. See the Removing the Baseplate procedure.
8	Disconnect the wire from the RFID Board. See Display A on the next page. Slide out the Board. See Display A on the next page.
9	Replace the RFID PCB Board (A000365).
10	Place the Sensor. See Display C for Sensor Placement.
11	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055) and the Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057) (continued)

Display A: See Step 8b (above) in this procedure.

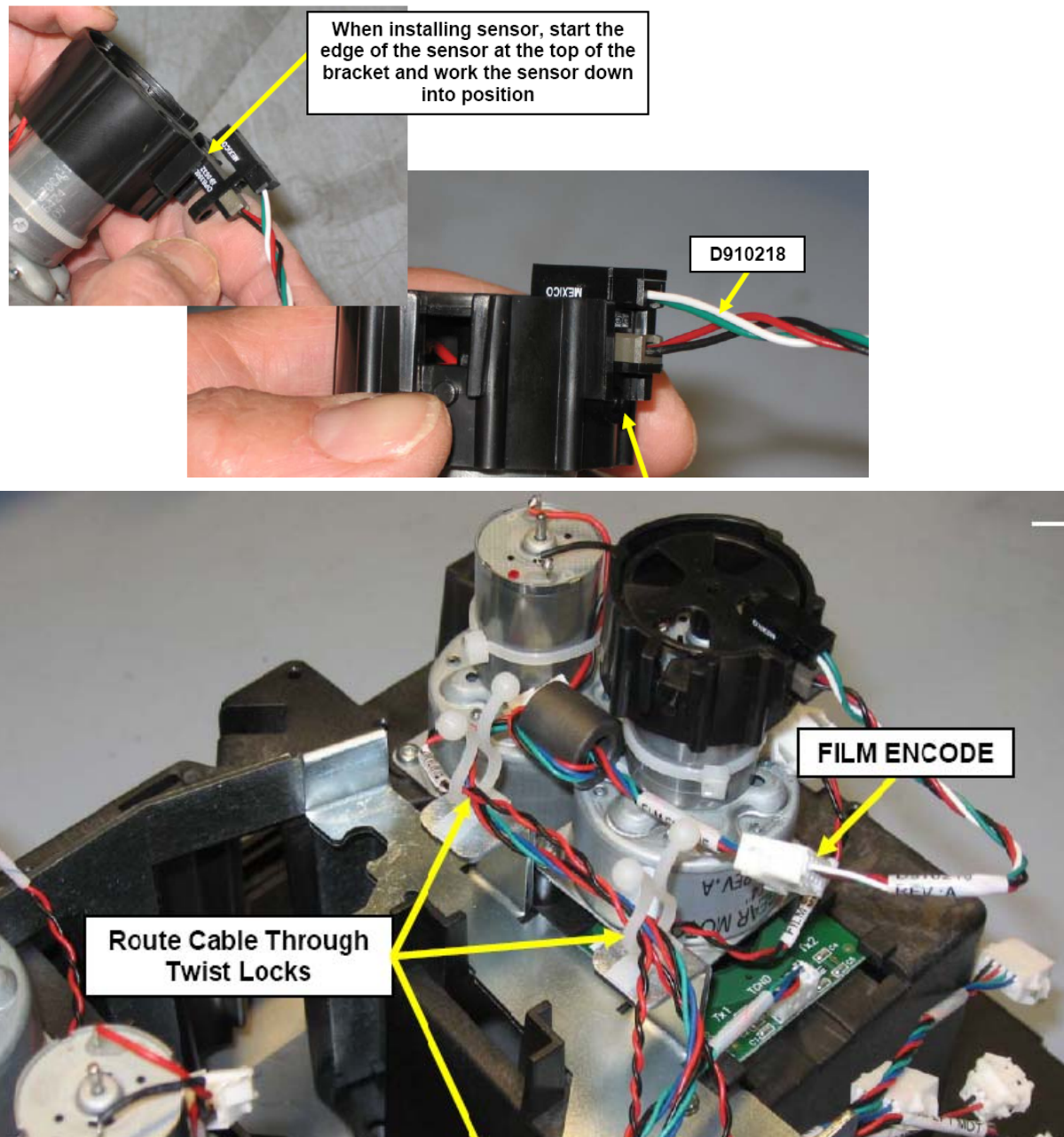


Display B: See Step 8b (above) in this procedure.



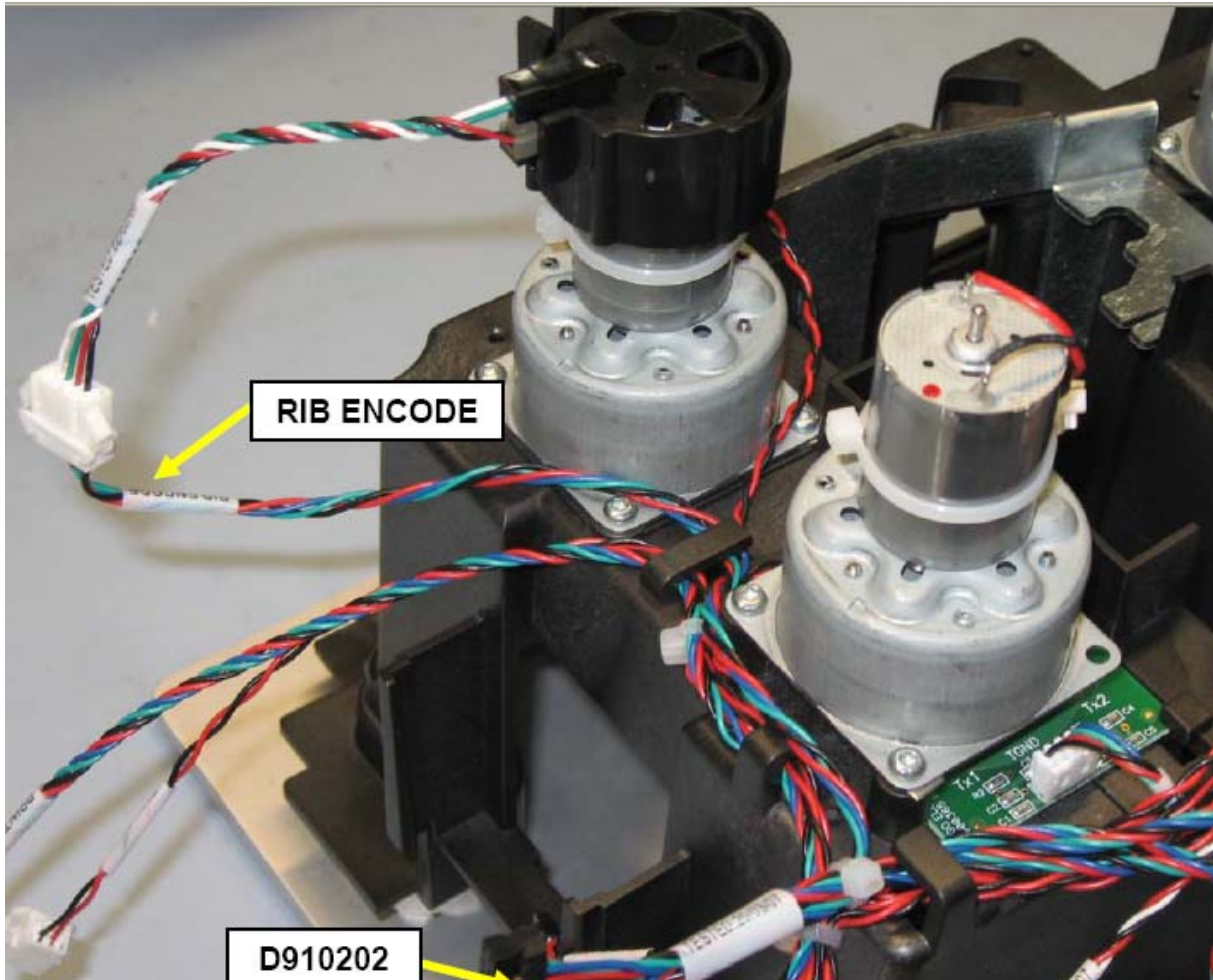
Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055) and the Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057) (continued)

Display C: See Step 10 in this procedure.

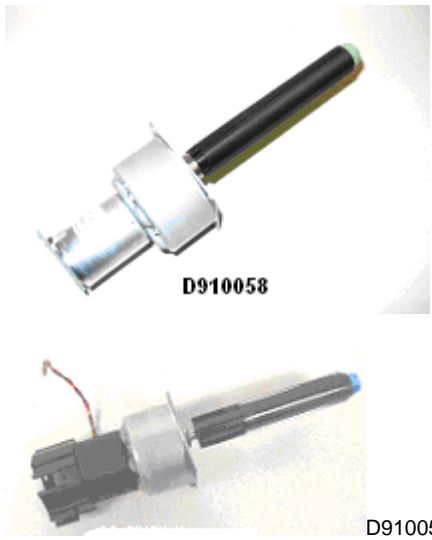



Replacing the Film Supply Motor (D910055) and the Ribbon Supply Motor (D910057) (continued)

Display D: See Step 10 in this procedure.

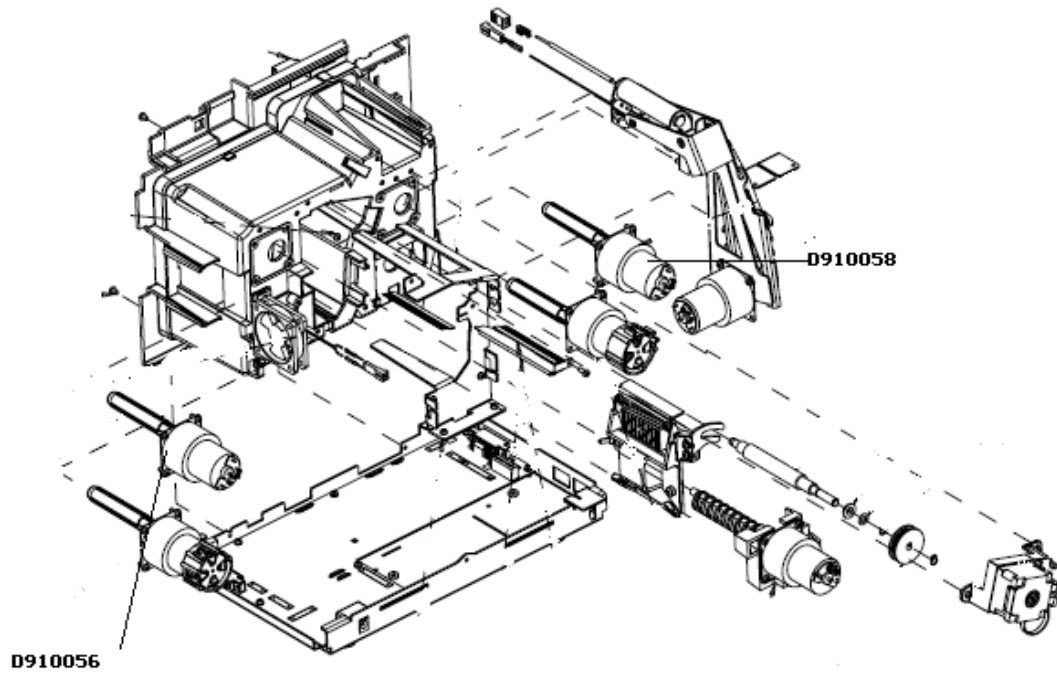


Replacing the Film Take-Up Motor (D910058) and Ribbon Take-Up Motor (D910056)

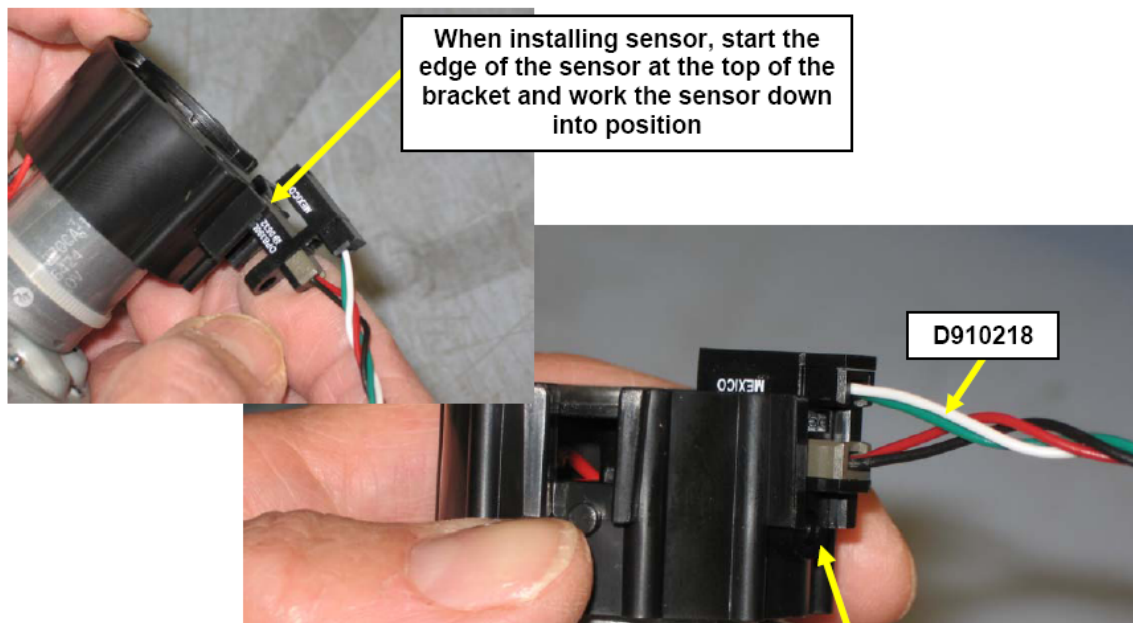
 <p>D910058</p> <p>D910056</p>	<p>Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 20 minute</p> <p>The same procedure is used for both Motors.</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	<p>Detach the Sensor wire from the Motor. Applies to the Film Take-Up Motor (D910058) and the Ribbon Take-Up Motor (D910056).</p> <p>See Display A for Sensor placement.</p>
3	<p>Remove the four (4) screws that hold the Motor to the Frame.</p>
4	<p>Pull out the Motor.</p>
5	<p>Replace the Film or Ribbon Take-Up Motor.</p>
6	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble. See the next page.</p>

Replacing the Film Take-Up Motor (D910058) and the Ribbon Take-Up Motor (D910056)

Display A: See Step 2 in this procedure.



Display B



Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D910216)




Tools needed: Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.


Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

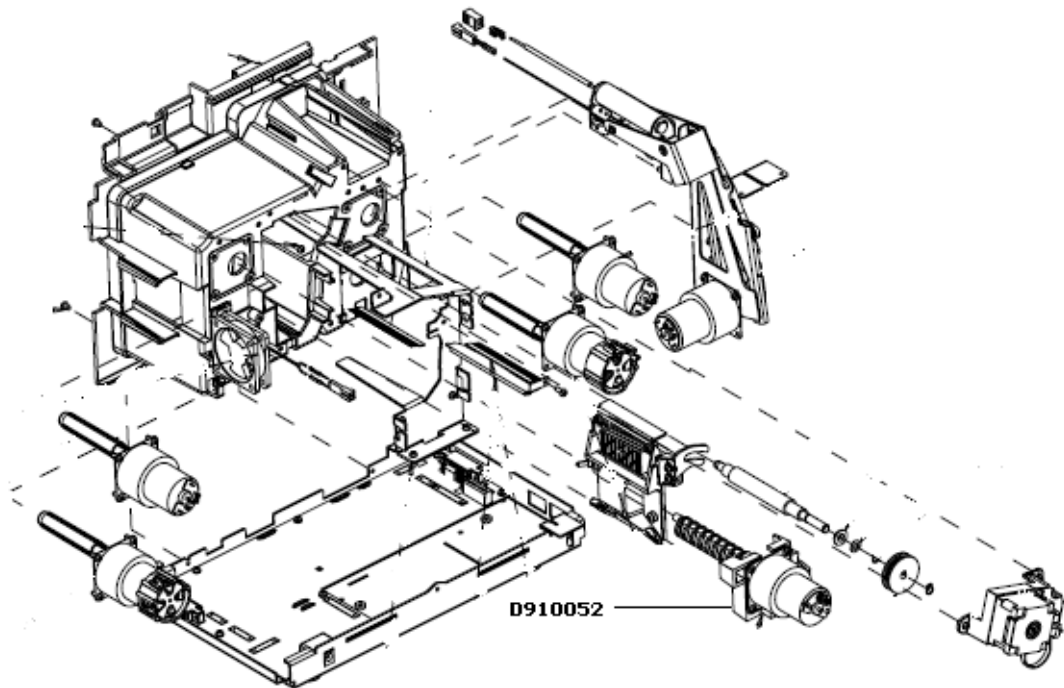
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Detach the Sensor wire (D910216) from the top of the Headlift Motor (D910052).
3	Remove the one (1) screw that holds the Mount to the Frame. (Note: The Mount is flush with the Frame when properly fitted.) See Display A within this procedure.
4	Pull out the Motor. Press the locking tab located on the right side of the Motor IN to release the Motor. See Display B within this procedure.
5	Disconnect the Headlift Sensor from the Harness. Leave the Sensor (D910216) in the Mount (if not replacing it).

Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D910216)

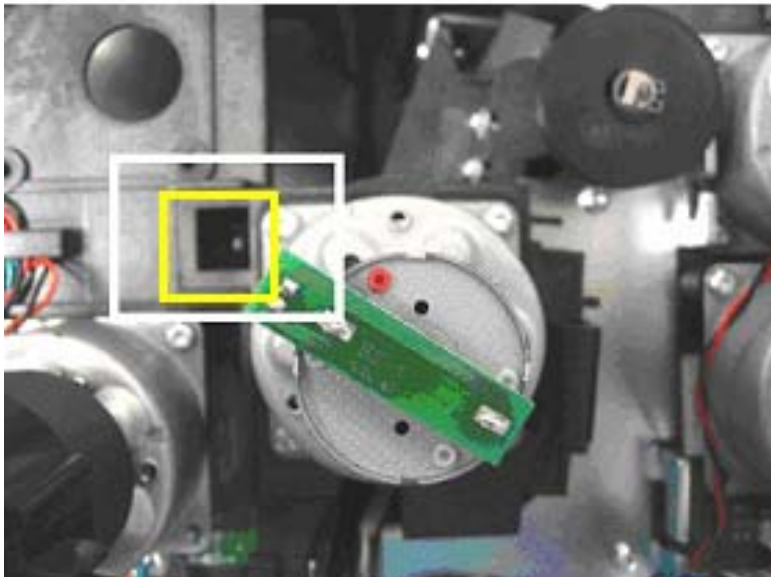
Step	Procedure
6	<p>If you need to replace the Sensor use a small flathead screwdriver to release the Sensor. Move the flag from out of the Sensor area to clear the Sensor.</p> <p>Slide the Sensor out from the tabs.</p> <p>Replace it with the new Sensor and click it back into place.</p> <p>See Display C within this procedure</p>
7	<p>Replace the Headlift Motor. Ensure the Shaft tab fits in to the hole provided in the Frame. (Note: The top spine of the Shaft faces up. The point of the Shaft must fit into the Frame hole provided.) See Displays C and D (below).</p>
8	<p>Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.</p> <p> Caution: Do not pinch the wires. Note how wires are feed through. See Displays E and F within this procedure.</p>

Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D910216) (continued)


Display A: See Step 3 in this procedure.



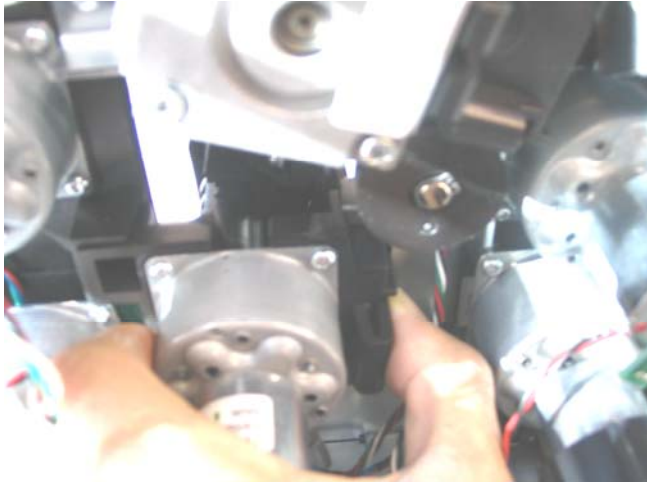
Display B: See Step 4 in this procedure.



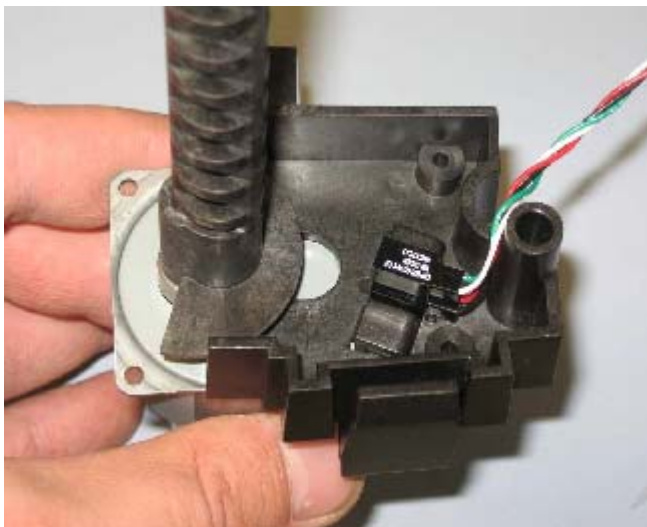
Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D910216) (continued)

Step	Procedure
9	Replace the Headlift Motor. Ensure the Shaft tab fits in to the hole provided in the Frame. (Note: The top spine of the Shaft faces up. The point of the Shaft must fit into the Frame hole provided.) See Displays C and D (below).
10	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.  Caution: Do not pinch the wires. Note how wires are feed through. See Displays E and F within this procedure.

Display C: See Steps 6, 7, and 9 in this procedure.

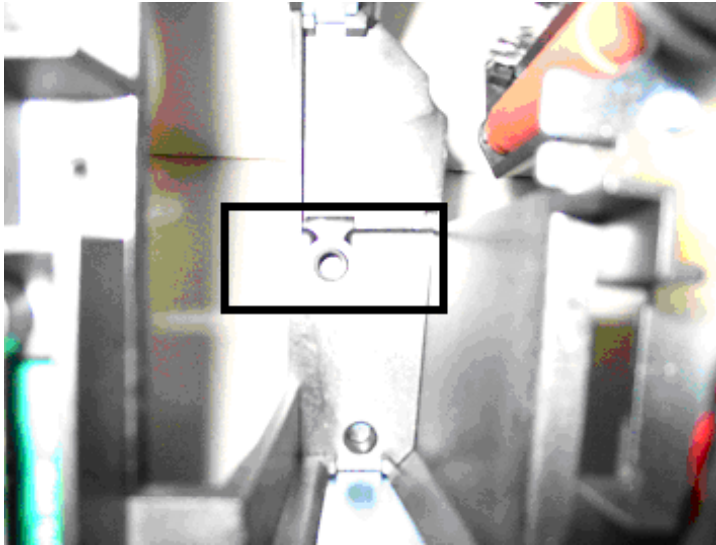


Display D: See Steps 7 and 9 in this procedure.

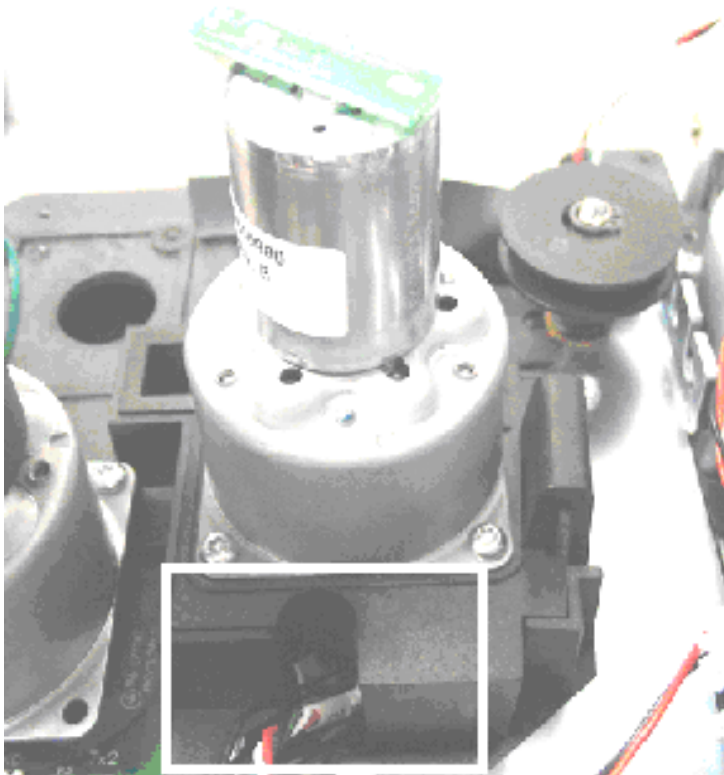


Replacing the Headlift Motor (D910052) and HeadLift Sensor (D910216) (continued)

Display E: See Step 10 in this procedure.



Display F: See Step 10 in this procedure.



Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093; 2 belts) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Pulley (D840888)




Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

Preparation: Remove all Covers

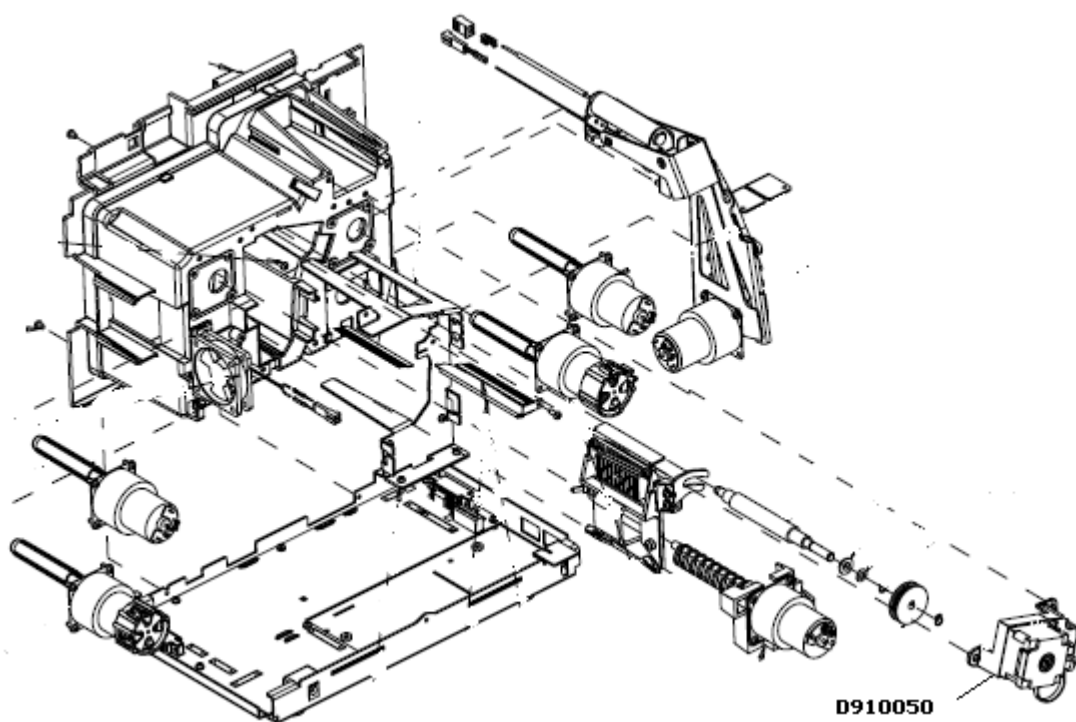
Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Detach the Sensor wire from the Print Stepper Motor (D910050).
3	Remove the three (3) screws that hold the Motor (D910050) to the Frame. See Display A within this procedure.
4	Roll the Motor (D910050) in a downward angle CCW to release the Print Stepper Motor Belt (F000093) from the Pulley.
5	Check the Belts and Pulley for excessive wear. Replace the Belt (F000093) or the Pulley (D840888).
6	If replacing the Gear, remove the clip that attaches the Gear to the Shaft. Replace it with the new Gear (D840888). Replace the clip on the Shaft.

Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093- 2 used) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Pulley (D840888)

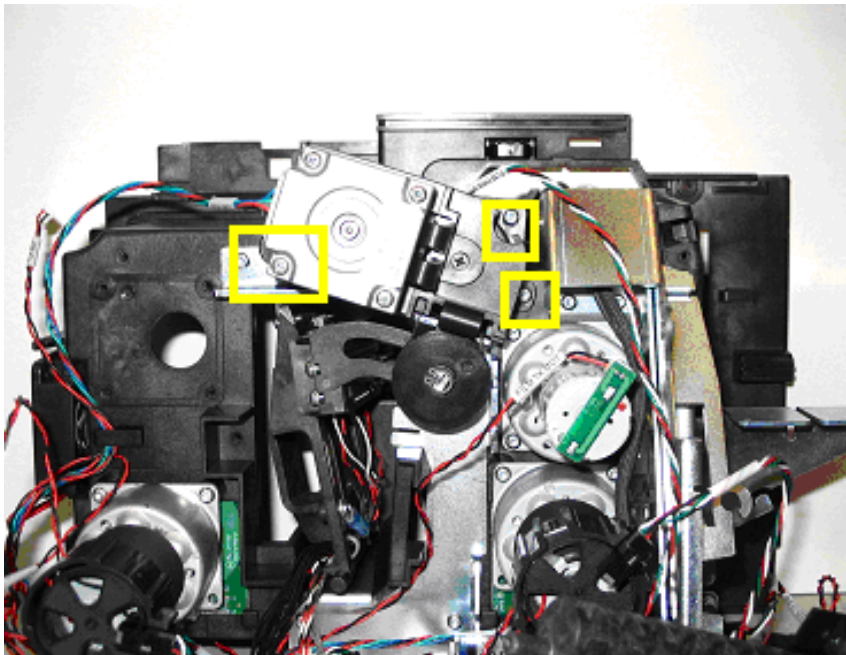
Step	Procedure
7	<p>Replace the two (2) Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093-2) as needed. (Note: One of the Belts goes around the Print Platen Roller Gear (D910109) See Display B.</p> <p>Attach Belt to pulley first then roll the Motor up to set into place. See Display C within this procedure.</p>
8	<p>This stepper Motor Mount provides a self adjusting feature.</p> <p>Keep the four (4) screws loose while holding the Mount Frame.</p> <p>Allow the Belts to self-adjust. Then tighten the four (4) screws.</p>
9	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Display A-1: See Step 3 in this procedure.

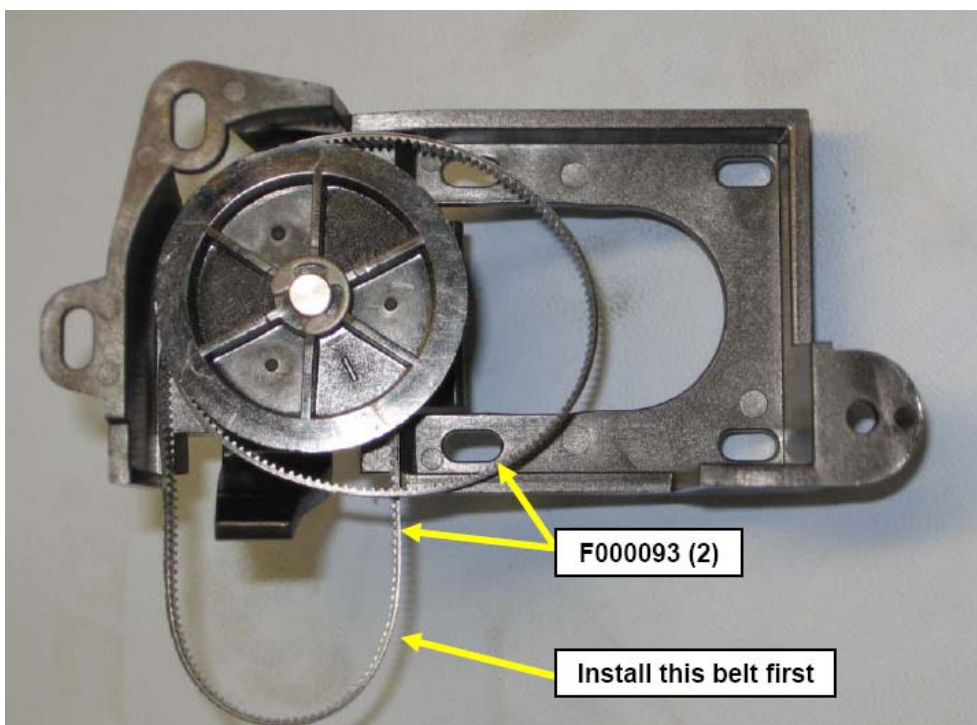


Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093- 2 used) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Pulley (D840888) (cont.)

Display A-2: See Step 3 in this procedure.

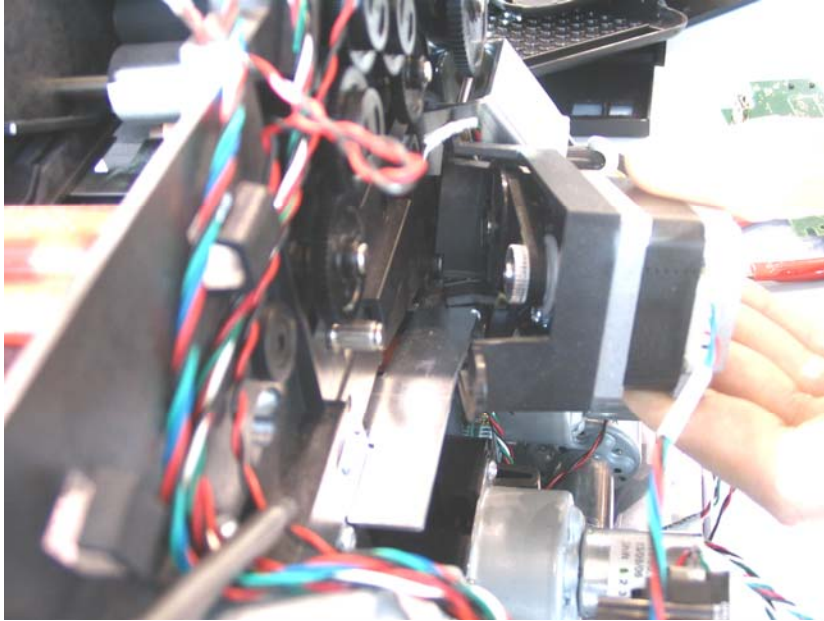


Display B: See Step 7 in this procedure.



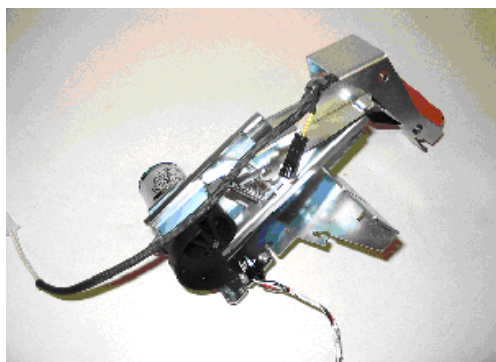
Replacing the Print Stepper Motor (D910050) and/or the Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093- 2 used) and/or the Print Motor Stepper Pulley (D840888) (cont.)

Display C: See Step 7 in this procedure.



Replacing the Lamination Mechanism (D910054)

Only the motor and Sensor is field replaceable. For any other parts please replace complete assembly.




Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

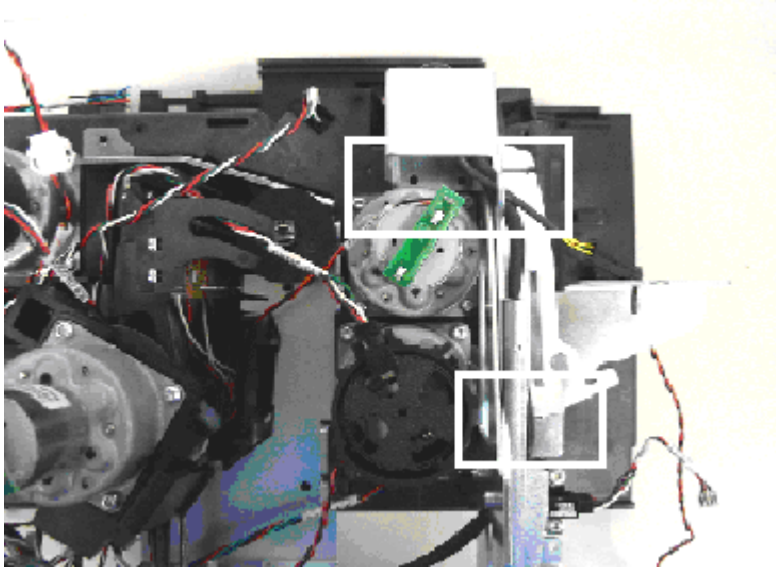
Estimated Repair Time: 20 minute

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

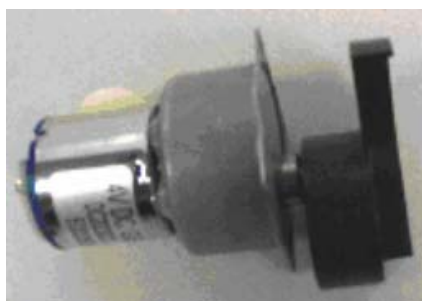
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer. Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures.
2	This procedure is used to replace the Motor (D910072) and the Lift Sensor (D910216). Remove the three (3) screws that attach the lamination mechanism (D910054) to the Frame. See Display A on the next page. Turn printer over to remove the one (1) screw at the baseplate.
3	Unplug the Sensor wire and the heater wire from the Main Board Assembly (A000475-03).
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Lamination Mechanism (D910054)

Display A: See Step 2 in this procedure.



Replacing the Lamination Mechanism Lam Cam Motor (D910072)




Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p> <p>Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures.</p>
2	<p>This procedure is used to replace the Motor (D910072) and the Lift Sensor (D910216)</p> <p>Unplug the Sensor wire from the top of the Motor.</p>
3	Remove the three (3) screws that attach the Motor to the Frame.
4	Be careful of the Sensor when removing and replacing the Motor Cam. Move the Cam to the side to clear the Sensor.
5	Replace the Motor (D910072).
6	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Lamination Mechanism Lam Cam Sensor (D910216)




Preparation: Remove all Covers.

Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

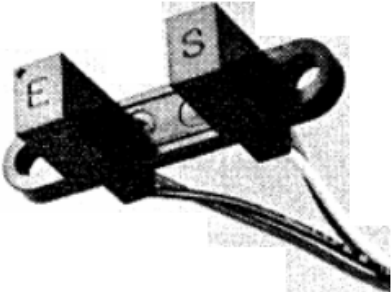


Estimated Repair Time: 10 minute

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer. Important: Card path removal makes parts removal easier. Relates to other procedures.
2	This procedure is used to replace the Motor (D910072) and the Lift Sensor (D910216). Unplug the Sensor wire from wire Harness.
3	Remove the two (2) screws that attach the Sensor to the Lamination Mechanism Frame.
4	Replace the Sensor (D910216).
5	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Sensor Replacement

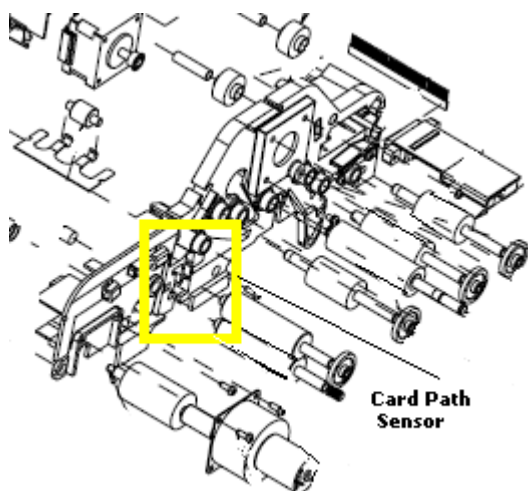
Replacing the Card Path Sensor (D910200)

		<p>Tools needed: Uses the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove all Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	<p>Remove the Card Path Sensor.</p>  Caution: The Card Path Sensor is clipped in. Be careful. Do not to force this Sensor to come loose. <p>Use a small flathead screwdriver to gently pry the two (2) tabs that hold this Sensor in place. Slide the Sensor out.</p> <p>See Displays A, B and C in this section.</p>	

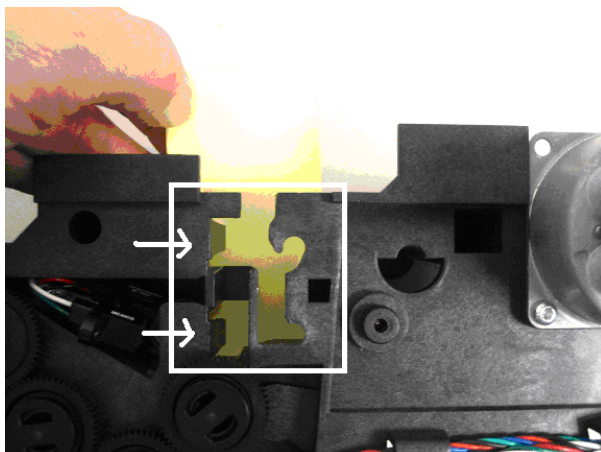
Replacing the Card Path Sensor (D910200) (continued)

Step	Procedure
3	Replace the Card Sensor by snapping into place. (Note: The tabs will click when the Sensor is properly installed.)
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Display A-1: See Step 2 in this procedure.

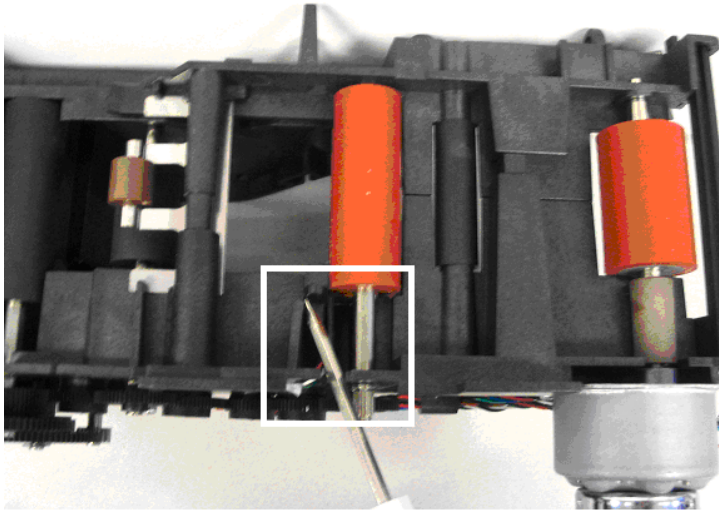


Display A-2: Indicates the two (2) tabs that hold the Sensor in place. Be careful not to damage the Sensor in the process. See Step 2 in this procedure.

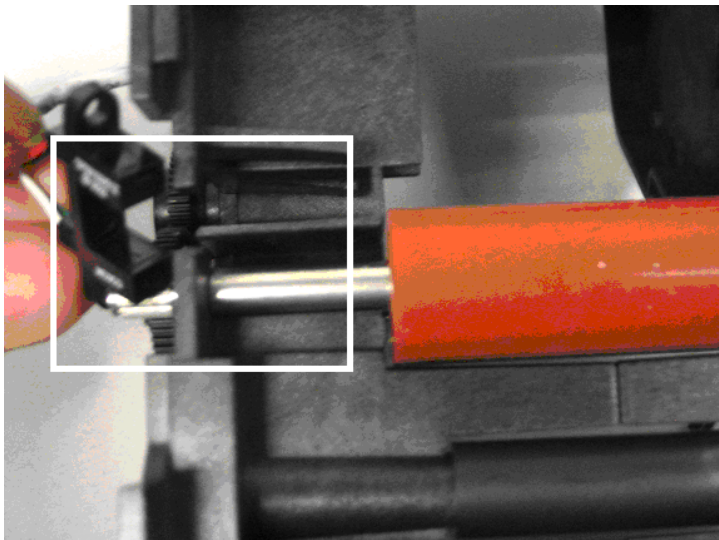


Replacing the Card Path Sensor D910200 (continued)



Display B: Note the screwdriver leverage needed to hold the tab back away from the Sensor. You would need to loosen two (2) tabs. See Step 2 in this procedure.



Display C: You should remove this Sensor. See Step 2 in this procedure.

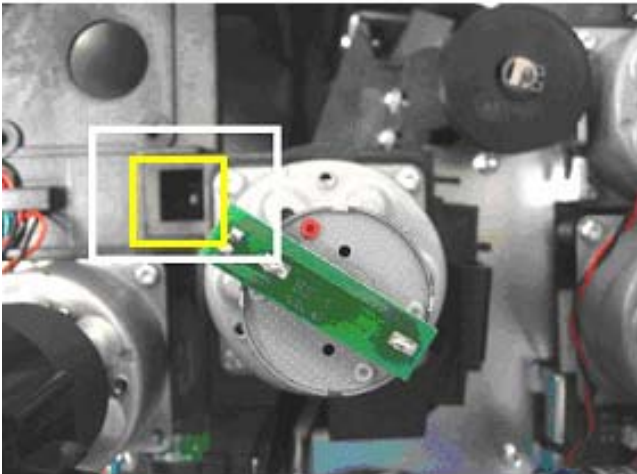



HDPII Printhead Assembly Kit (086091) Replacement Guide

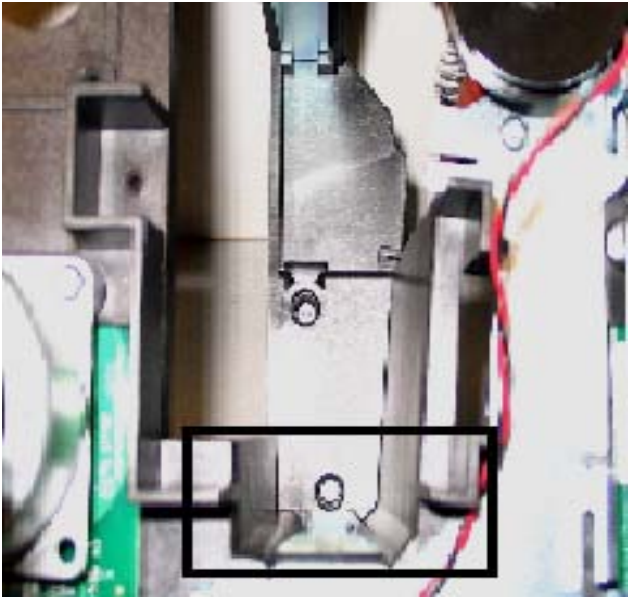
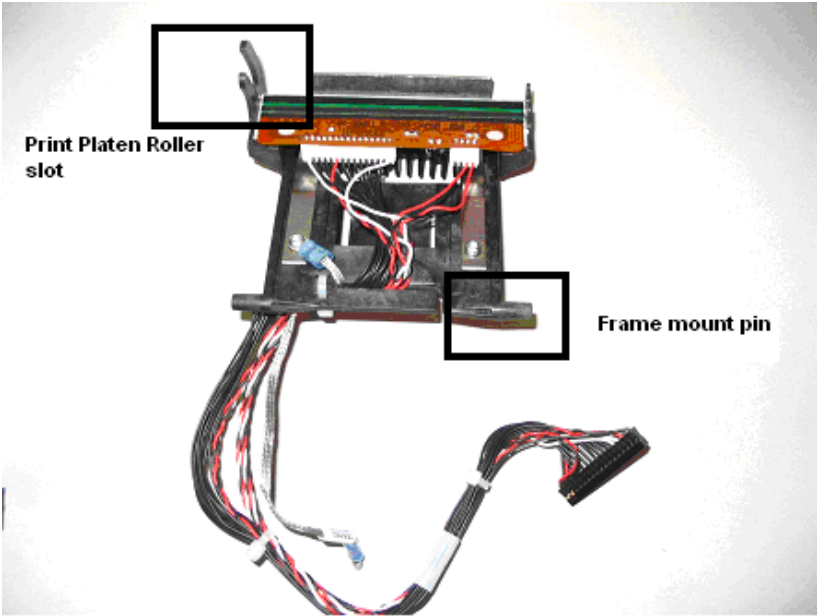
	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 10 minutes</p> <p>Important:</p> <p>This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p> <p>The Printhead will come with the cable harness attached.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove the Ribbon Cartridge (D910022).
3	Remove the Back Cover (D910132-01). Remove the screw at the base of the Back Cover Assembly. Use a small screwdriver to pry the center tab slot to release the Cover. d. Bend out and down to remove from the lower tab slots.

Continued on the next page

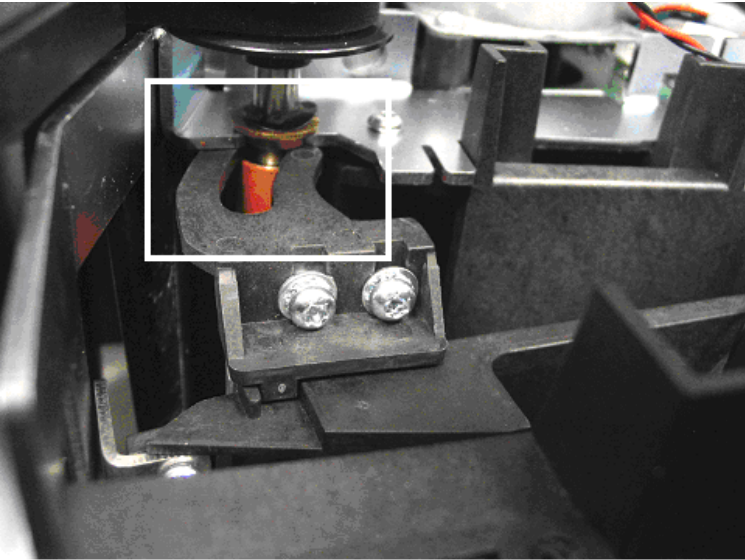
HDPII Printhead Replacement Guide (continued)

Step	Procedure
4	<p>Remove the Headlift Motor (D910052).</p> <p>Remove the one (1) screw that holds the Motor Mount to the Frame, as shown below. (Note: The Mount should be “flush” with the Frame when properly fitted.)</p> 
5	Remove the ground strap of the Printhead.
6	Unplug the Printhead cable from the Main Board (A000475-03).
7	Carefully lift out the complete Printhead Assembly.
8	<p>Replace the complete Printhead Assembly.</p> <p>Replace the Printhead cable and ground strap.</p> <p>Replace the Headlift Motor (D910052).</p> <p> Caution: When replacing the Printhead Assembly, ensure that the Printhead surface does not get scratched by any other Printer parts.</p>

HDPII Printhead Replacement Guide (continued)

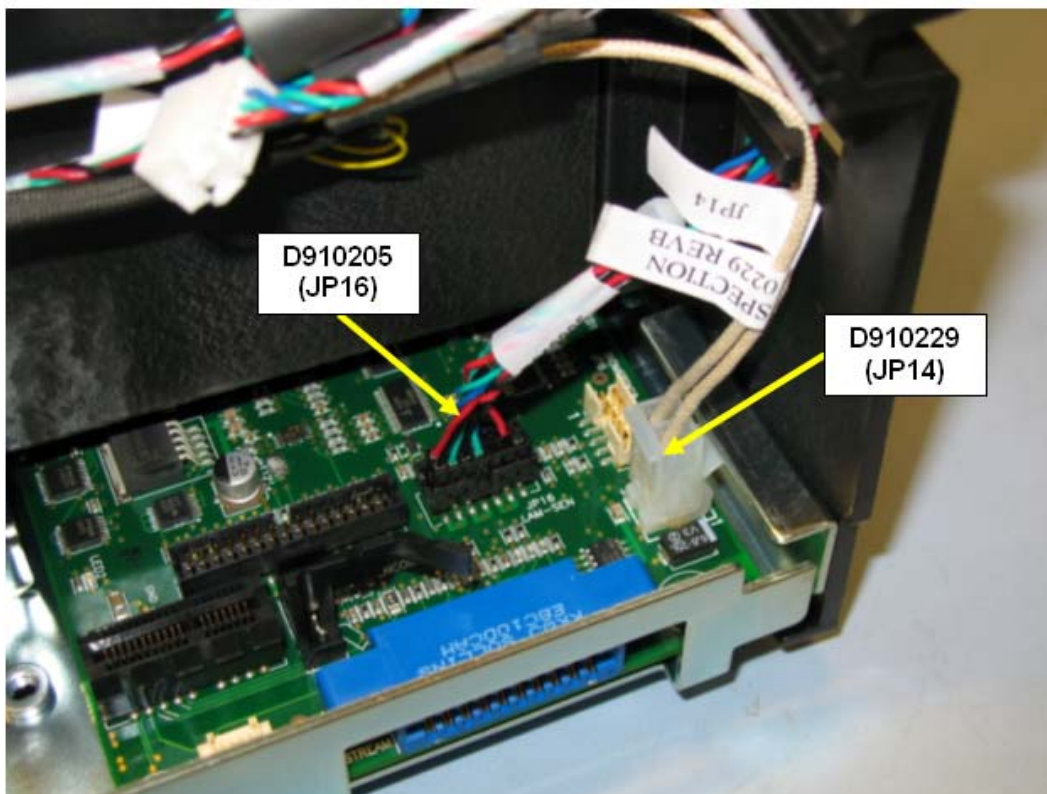
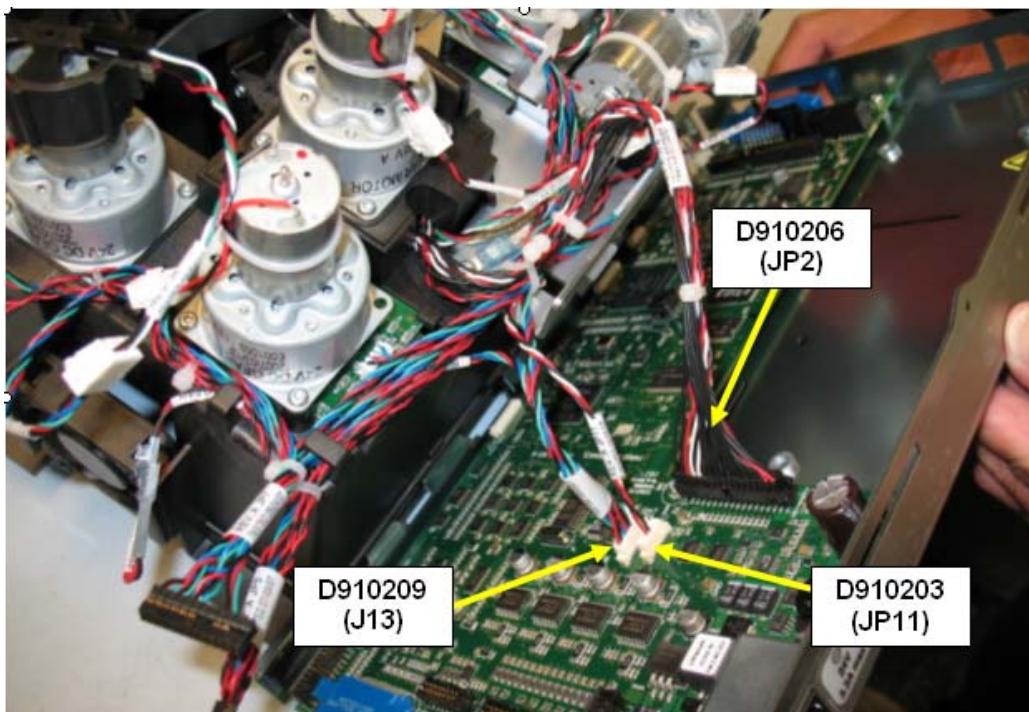
Step	Procedure
9	<p>Fit the Frame Mount pin into the slot, provided within the Printer Frame. (Important: It must click down solidly into the exact hole, as shown below.)</p> <p>Display – Frame Mount Pin (Step 9)</p>  <p>Display – Print Platen Roller Slot and Frame Mount Pin (Step 9)</p> 

HDPII Printhead Assembly Replacement Guide (continued)

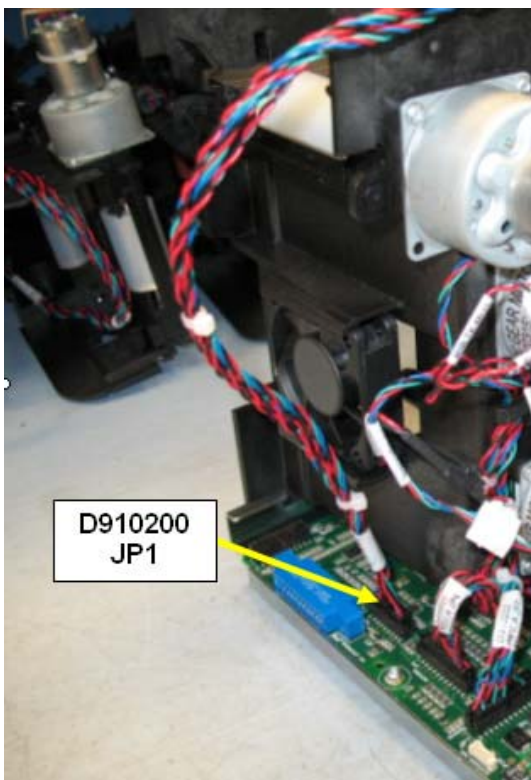
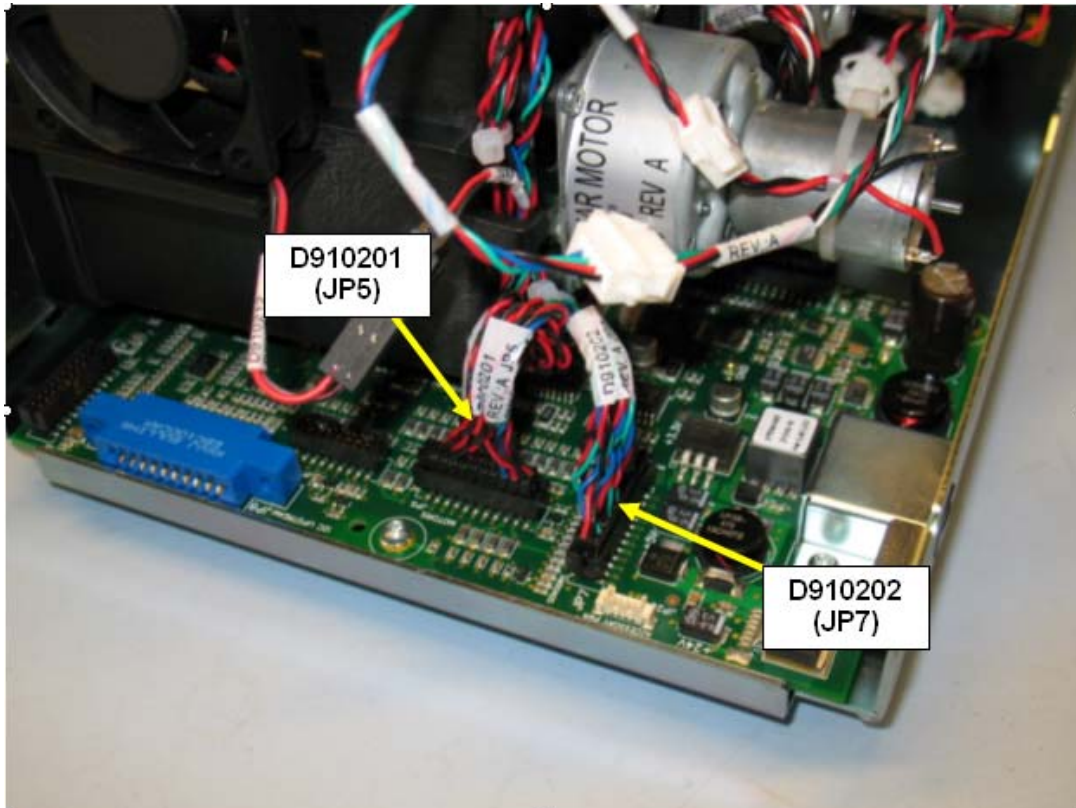
Step	Procedure
10	<p>Note how the Print Platen Roller Slot would fit properly onto the Roller bushing, as shown from the back side (below).</p> 
11	<p>You have completed this procedure.</p>

HDPII Mainboard Cable Connection

Reviewing the HDPII Printer Main Board connections



Reviewing the HDPII Printer Main Board connections



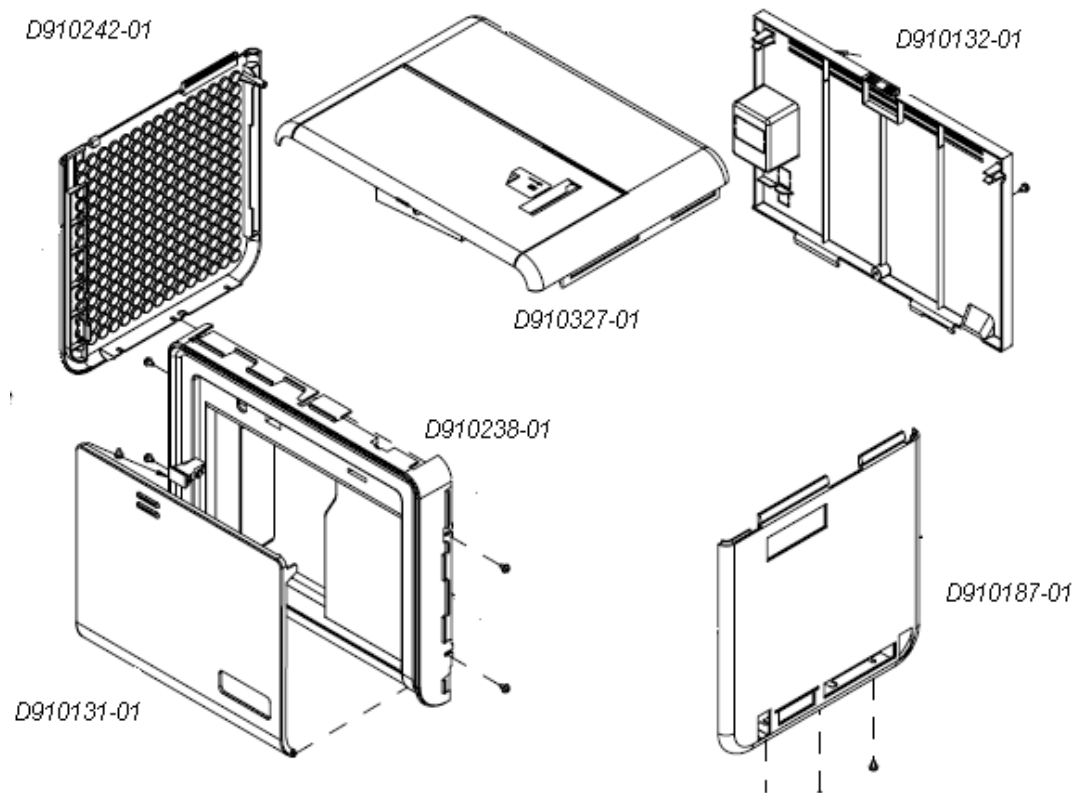
HDPii Output Module Cover Removal Procedures

Use this procedure for the replacements of all parts. All Covers must be removed to access the parts within the module.

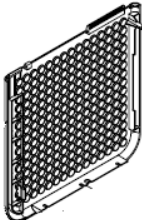
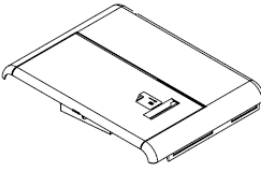
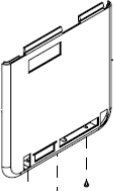

The HDPii Printer now uses fewer screws to attach parts such as the Covers and Sensors. Many of the parts use a SNAP and CLIP process.

Be careful not to force any of the snapping parts as they could break with too much pressure. Each procedure will notify you of the SNAP and CLIP process used.

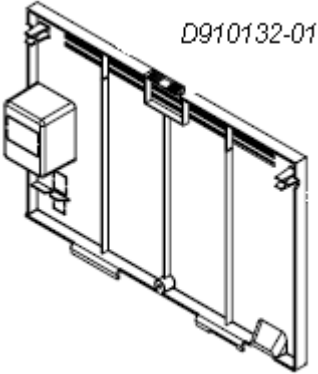

Most of the Sensors and the Rollers simply SNAP IN and OUT for attachment. Remove covers in the order shown.



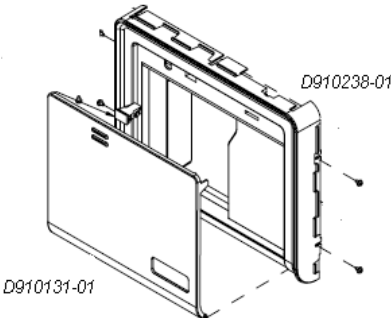

Replacing the Output Side Cover (D910242-01) and Input Side Covers (D910187-01) and Top Cover (D910327-01).

	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver - Snap; also, Clip</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p> <p>D910242-01</p>   <p>D910327-01</p>  <p>D910187-01</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
3	Turn the Output Module over and loosen the Torx screw, located on the base plate of each side panel. Turn printer back up.
4	UNLOCK the top cover.
5	Lift it up from the bottom of both sides to remove the top cover and both sides as one piece.
6	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.


Replacing the Output Module Back Access Assembly (D910132-01)

<div><p>D910132-01</p></div>		<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver - Snap; also, Clip</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	<div><p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p></div>	
2	Remove the Top Cover and both Side Covers.	
3	Remove the screw from the bottom of the Back Cover. Fold down to remove the cover. Release the tab from the slot on the bottom Frame.	
4	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	

Replacing the Output Module Front Cover (D910131-01 & D910238-01)

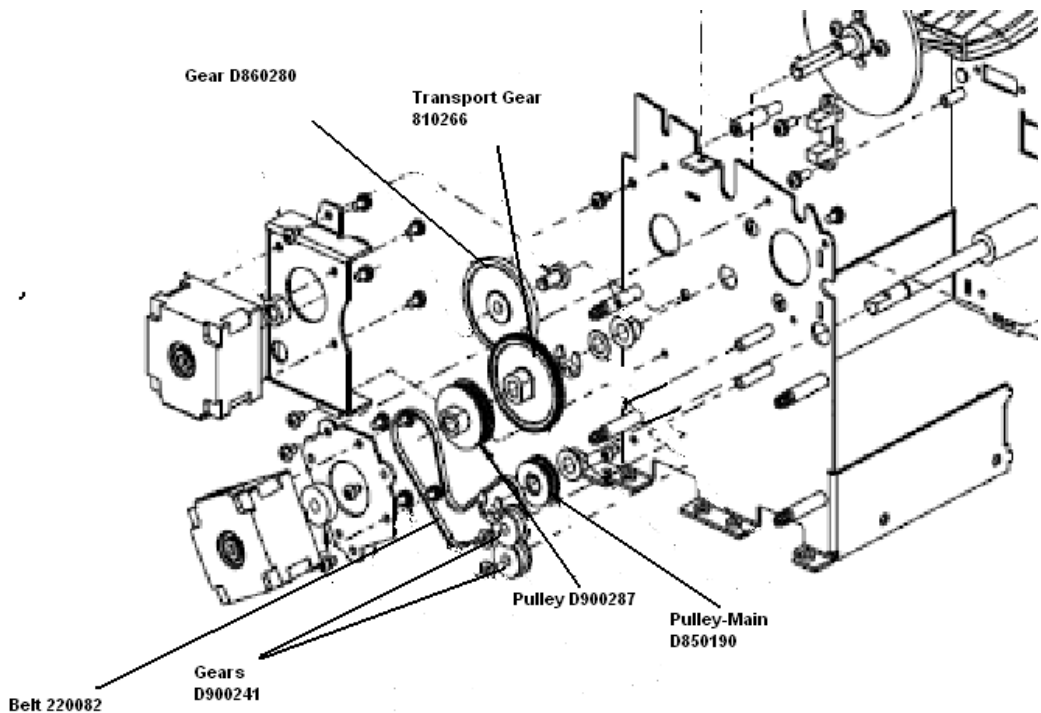
		<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 2 minutes</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove the two (2) Side Covers and Top Cover. Remove the Back Cover.	
3	Remove 2 screws on each side of the Front Panel.	
4	Loosen the two (2) screws on both sides of the Front Cover.	
5	Pull the Front Cover off from the Frame.	
6	Un Snap the D910231 Cover Sensor.	
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	

Replacing the Output Module Gears (D860280) and (810266)

<p>Idler Pulley (D900241)</p> <p>Main Pulley (D850190)</p> <p>Pulley (D900287)</p> <p>Card Transport drive Gear (810266)</p> <p>Gear (D860280)</p> <p>Belt (220082)</p>	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 30 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers.</p> <p>Remove the Card Feed Motor. See Replacing the Card Feed Motor (D9000524; contains E000062 and D900208).</p> <p>Remove the Main Board. See Replacing the Output Module Main Board (A000394).</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.
3	Remove the Card Feed Motor (E000062). See Replacing the Card Feed Motor (D9000524; contains E000062 and D900208).
4	Remove the Main Board. See Replacing the Output Module Main Board (A000394).
5	Use the above procedures in Steps 1 to 4 to make the printer ready for all Gear and Belt replacements. Reverse assembly after each procedure.
6	Remove the one (1) screw that holds each of the Idler Pulley (D900241) to the Frame. (Note: Replace it with the new Gear or Gears.)
7	To replace the Belt (220082) only, the upper Idler Pulley (D900241) needs to be removed. (Note: Replace it with the new Belt.)
8	<p>To replace the Pulley (D900287), remove the lower Idler pulley (D900241) and Belt (220082). (Note: Loosen the set screw in the pulley to remove it.)</p> <p>The neck of the Gear goes up when replaced.</p>

Replacing any of the Output Module Gears (Continued)

Step	Procedure
9	<p>To replace the Main Pulley (D850190), follow Steps 1 to 6. (Note: Remove the lower Idler Pulley to allow clearance for removal of Main Pulley.)</p> <p>Replace it with the new pulley (D850190). This pulley has an inner rib that must be carefully replaced by tilting the flat side in first the press in the pulley to the Shaft.</p>
10	<p>To replace the Gear (D860280), follow Steps 1 to 7. (Note: The Lower Idler Pulley (D900241), the Belt (220082), the Pulley (D900287) and the Stepper Motor must be removed to access the Gear (D860280).)</p> <p>Remove the E-Clip from the Gear (D860280) Shaft. Replace it with the new Gear. (Note: The neck of the Gear (D860280) goes in.)</p>
11	<p>To replace the Card Transport Drive Gear (810266), follow Steps 1 to 9.</p> <p>Remove the Gear. Replace it with the new Gear. (Note: The neck of the Gear goes out.)</p>
12	<p>To replace the Main Pulley (D850190), follow Steps 1 to 6. Pull up on the pulley. Replace it with the new pulley.</p>




Replacing the Output Module Flipper Assembly (D900205)



Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.
Estimated Repair Time: 20 minutes
Preparation: Remove the Covers.



Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from

	the Printer.
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.
3	Remove the pulleys and Gears. See Replacing the Output Module Module Gears.
4	Remove the Card Feed Motor. See Replacing the Card Feed Motor (D9000524; contains E000062 and D900208).
5	Remove the Output Module Sensor. See Replacing the Output Module Sensor bundle (D900249).

Replacing the Output Module Flipper Assembly (D900205)

Step	Procedure
6	Remove both E-Clip s for both sides of the Shaft.
7	Remove the brass bushing form the Motor side. Leave the brass bushing on the Sensor side in place.
8	Replace it with New Output Module assembly.
9	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

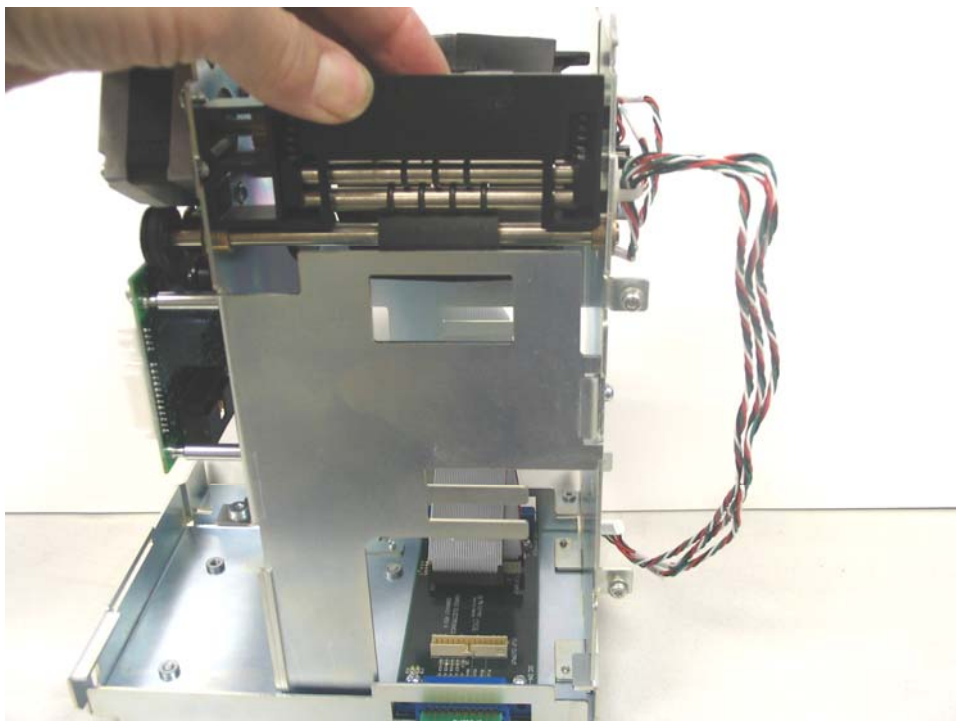
Replacing the Output Roller Assembly (D900236)

		<p>Tools needed: SNAP and CLIP process</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers..</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.	
4	Unwind the Output Module Sensor Bundle Cable from the top of the Output Roller Assembly.	

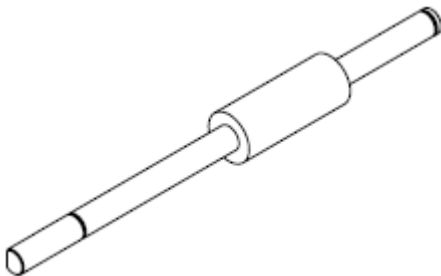

See the next page

Replacing the Output Roller Assembly (D910236)

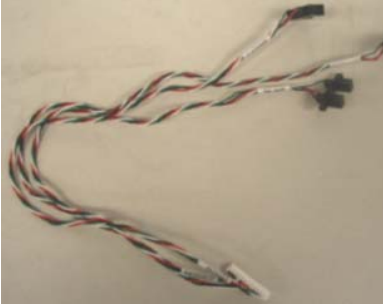

Step	Procedure
5	<p>The Output Roller Assembly (D900236) clips into the two (2) slots on either side of the Frame.</p> <p>Gently pull the Assembly from the Sensor side Frame just enough for the Assembly to be pulled out from its slots.</p> <p>Refer to the display (below).</p>



Replacing the Output Module Flipper Roller (D900123)

	<p>Tools needed: SNAP and CLIP process</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers..</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.
3	<p>Remove the Output Roller Assembly (D900236). (Note: The Output Roller Assembly (D900236) clips into the two (2) slots on either side of the Frame.)</p> <p>Gently pull from the Sensor Side Frame just enough for the assembly to be pulled out from its slots.</p>
4	<p>Remove the Lower Idler Pulley (D900241), the Belt (220082) and the Main Pulley (D850190).</p> <p>Remove the Pulley and Gear. See Replacing the Output Module Module Gears.</p>
5	Remove the E-Clip from the Sensor side of the Output Module Shaft and the bushing (220082)
6	Remove the E-Clip from the Motor side and the bushing.
7	Remove the Output Roller Assembly (D900236) from the Motor side.
8	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Output Module Sensor bundle (D900249)

	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers.</p> <p>This Sensor bundle connects to J3 on the Output Module Main Board. The Sensor bundle contains three (3) optical Sensors used for the Card Input Sensor, Output Module Home Sensor and Table Sensor. All three Sensors must be replaced at the same time if one Sensor is damaged.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.
3	Disconnect the wire bundle from the J3 connection.
4	Unwind the wire bundle to reach the Sensors. Unclip the wires from the holder Mounts.
5	Remove the two (2) screws that hold each Sensor to the Frame.
6	Observe where each Sensor goes. (Note: Each wire is labeled for placement.)
7	Replace the Sensor bundle.
8	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Output Module Motor (D900523)




Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.

Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes

Preparation: Remove the Covers.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove all the Covers. See the previous instructions.
3	Disconnect the cable (D900251) from the top of the Stepper Motor.
4	Remove three (3) screws from the Motor to the Frame.
5	Replace the Motor.
6	Connect the cable to Motor (top).
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Card Feed Motor (D900524)




Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.




Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes

Preparation: Remove the Covers.

Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.

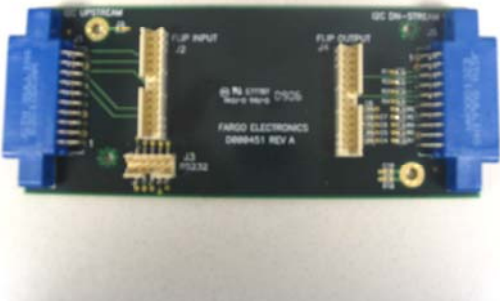

Step	Procedure
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.
2	Remove all the Covers. See the previous instructions.
3	Disconnect the cable (D900251) from the bottom of the Stepper Drive Motor.
4	Remove the Main Board.
5	Remove the two (2) screws that hold the Motor base to the Frame.
6	Replace the Motor Bracket.
7	Reconnect the wires at the Motor (bottom).
8	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Output Module Main Board (A000394)

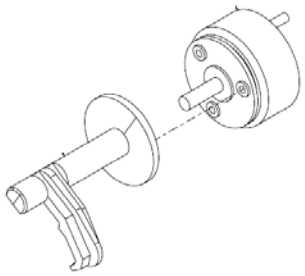

	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver; using the SNAP and CLIP process.</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers..</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	Remove all the Covers. See HDPII Output Module Cover Removal Procedures.
3	Disconnect the cable (D900251) from the Board at J9.
4	Disconnect the cable (D900249) from the Board at J3.
5	Disconnect the Ribbon cable (D900214) from the Main Board at J1.
6	Disconnect the Ribbon cable (D900215) from the Main Board at J2.
7	<p>Remove the Main Board by pulling from the four (4) corners out. (Note: No screws hold the Board. Four (4) pressure tabs hold the Board.)</p>  <p>Caution: Be careful not to break the Board.</p>
8	Replace the Main Board.
9	Reconnect the cables.

10	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.
----	--



Replacing the Accessory Board (A000483)

	
<p>Tools needed: SNAP and CLIP process</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers..</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>	
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	Remove all the Covers from the Output Module Module. See the previous instructions.
3	Disconnect the cables from the Main Board and from the Accessory Board.
4	Use a long Torx screwdriver to remove the four (4) screws that attach the Board to the base plate. Work from the top of the Output Module.
5	Replace it with the new Accessory Board (A000483)
6	Reconnect the cables.
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.

Replacing the Output Module Solenoid/Lock (D920032)

		<p>Tools needed: nut wrench</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure	
	This part is used in conjunction with the tubular lock for the internal unlocking mechanism via software command rather than key	
1	 Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.	
2	Remove all the Covers from the Output Module.	
3	Disconnect the cable.	
4	Remove the 2 nuts that hold the solenoid to the frame.	
5	Replace it with the new solenoid (D920032)	
6	Reconnect the cables.	
7	Reverse the instructions to re-assemble.	

Replacing the Sensor Bundle (D910219)

	<p>Tools needed: 10 Torx screwdriver</p> <p>Estimated Repair Time: 15 minutes</p> <p>Preparation: Remove the Covers.</p> <p>Important: This procedure can only be performed by authorized service personnel.</p>
Step	Procedure
1	 <p>Caution: Turn OFF the Printer and unplug the power cord from the Printer.</p>
2	<p>Remove all the Covers from the Output Module.</p> <p>Find cable or sensor to replace using J connection location</p>
3	<p>D910219</p> <p>J4 bundle used for Hopper full, Hopper present, Cover Solenoid sensors. These disconnect from the sensor and do not contain the actual sensors</p>
4	<p>D910249</p> <p>Output Module Sensor Cable</p> <p>Cable contains 3 sensors on one wire for J 3 connection. Table Home, Flipper Home and Card Present sensors</p>
5	<p>D900251</p> <p>Motor Cable</p> <p>Cable only connects to J9- one wire for both flipper motor and drive motor</p>
6	<p>D910217</p> <p>Hopper Present Sensor with Cable</p>
7	<p>D910231</p> <p>Cover Sensor Cable</p> <p>J10 connection contains wire and sensor</p>

Section 17: Glossary of Terms

Term	Definition
24-bit color	A color depth for an image that uses 8 bits for each color (red, blue, green) combining the possible 256 shades to provide a color depth of 16.7 million colors.
AC - Alternating Current	An electrical current that reverses its direction at regular intervals (typically 50 - 60 times a second).
Adhesion	The firm attachment of a material to the card surface, confirmed by using the Tape Test -pulling an applied piece of adhesive tape (Scotch 600 or equivalent) off the card at 1 sec/in to see if any material is pulled off by the tape.
Algebraic	A type of color matching that takes the colors value of pixels and applies them to an algebraic equation to adjust the levels of hue, saturation and brightness.
ANSI (American National Standards Institute)	The United States Representative to ISO, providing standardization for U.S. Manufactures prior or in addition, to acceptance by ISO.
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange)	A standard for processing information in computer processors. An 8-bit character set of 255 decimal numbers, each assigned to numbers, letters, punctuation and special characters.
AT	Refers to an IBM standard in early computing with regard to the chipset and function of the Parallel Port, set up in the BIOS.
B (Black)	Black Dye-Sublimation panels are distinguished from the black panel using resin by the use of B for Dye-Sublimation black. K denotes resin black.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Barcodes	A series of alternating black and white stripes, of varying widths (each character denoted by a set number and width of black stripes) that allows characters to be optically read by a computer.
batch print	A file sent down from the computer that contains commands to print a number of cards, sequentially.
Battery Back-up	A power supply that can keep AC electronic equipment running for a short time when power is interrupted, allowing enough time for the user to save data and close the machine properly.
Bi-directional	A communication standard that allows two-way data transfer between PC and Printer.
BIOS (Basic Input/Output System)	The part of the operating system in a computer that handles communication between the PC Board and its peripherals. Typically residing in chip-based, non-volatile memory.
Bit	An abbreviation for binary digital. Each bit is an element of information that can have two states: off and on.
Bit map	A graphic produced by an array of pixel elements with the color hue, brightness and saturation information stored in bits. The more bits, the more values and thus the greater variety. 1 bit color is black and white, 8-bit color produces 256 shades of gray and 24-bit color can produce 16.7 million colors.
Board	A term used for the circuit Board, a hard mylar plate made of many layers, that holds the electronic circuit elements and wire traces.
Boot-up	A series of operations that the Printer runs through when power is first applied including a series of initializing, status testing and a diagnostics program to ensure a ready state.
Buffer	A block of memory, in the Printer or PC, that holds print files until the processor is ready to print them.
Cable	A set of conductors wrapped together and often concealed within insulation, used for signal transfer from one device to another, with connectors on either end that allows the cable to be removed.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Cache	A type of memory Buffer to store data temporarily, used to hold information that is most often exchanged between controller and peripheral, to expedite data transfer.
Calibrating	A procedure to adjust an electro-mechanical device so that it operates within established parameters.
Cleaning Roller	High tack Rollers positioned just after the input hopper to lift debris off the card as it rolls over it. A clean card surface improves print quality.
CD (Compact Disc)	A 4.75 inch (12 cm) optical disk that stores data, written too and read from using a laser.
DMA (Direct Memory Access)	Channels designated within the Windows operating environment that are used for dedicated high-speed communication between the PC and the Printer port.
Centronics	A parallel communications interface that has become the standard for connections to Printers, designed by the Centronics Corp.
Coercivity	The property of a Magnetic Stripe that indicates the amount of force needed before magnetic saturation, measured in Oersted (Oe).
Color matching	The process of adjusting color hue, saturation and brightness, to duplicate a desired color. An algorithm within the Driver, which adjusts the color balance and provides output with the desired color, automates this process.
Compressed air	Air stored in a tank or produced by an aerosol can, delivered by through nozzle at a high speed. Used in the Printer to blow out debris.
Contrast	The degree of difference in luminance of two areas.
Control panel	The panel on the Printer from which the user can control Printer functions. The Printer is usually composed of the control buttons and an LED or LCD display.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
CR-79	A card dimension standard of 2.0625 L X 3.3125 W (+/-0.002 W, +/-0.005 L) or 52.400 X 84.150 mm.
CR-80	A card dimension standard of 2.125 X 3.370 (+/-0.002 W, +/-0.005 L) or 53.975 X 85.598 mm.
CR-90	A card dimension standard of 2.375 X 3.625 (+/-0.002 W, +/-0.005 L) or 60.325 X 92.075 mm.
CR-100	A card dimension standard of 2.625 X 3.875 (+/-0.002 W, +/-0.005 L) or 66.675 X 98.425 mm.
Cursor	The marker in the LCD display Window that indicates the active selection.
Darkness	A reference to color saturation.
DB-9	A 9 pin, D-shaped connector, typically used in serial port interfaces.
DC Motor	A Motor that works on DC with continuous motion.
DC (Direct Current)	Electronic flow that is unidirectional, flowing from the positive (+) to negative (-) of a power source.
Default	A setting or parameter that comes preset from the factory in Driver or Firmware. Performance parameters can be customized in the Driver, but can be reset to the factory values usually through the push of the default button. The default values for the Firmware are usually denoted on a label attached to the Printer.
Defrag	Abbreviation for defragmenting. The process of positioning the data in contiguous sections on a hard drive so that it uses space more efficiently.
DIP switches (Dual In-line Package Switches)	A small array of mechanical switches installed on the Board that can be configured to change Printer operations including providing a variety of self-tests.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Direct-to-Card (DTC) Printing	The Direct-to-Card printing process prints digital images directly onto any plastic card with a smooth, clean, glossy PVC surface.
Dither	A system of distributing dots to control the hue, brightness and/or saturation. In monochrome printing, this controls the brightness. In color printing, Dithering can supply a larger color gamut than non-Dithering. In the Driver, Dither modes can be selected to provide better image quality depending on the type of image to be printed.
Dongle	A peripheral that attaches to a port to act as a key for an installed application. The PC is able to run that application only when the dongle is installed. Typically, it works as a pass-through device and is connected in serial to the parallel cable.
Dot	The smallest unit of an image that the Printer is able to produce. The smaller the dot, see dot pitch, the sharper the image.
Dot pitch	A measurement of image sharpness denoting the width of the dots that makes up a pixel. The smaller the pitch, the sharper the image.
Download	The transfer of a data file from one device to the other over a network or cable, typically from the Internet to a PC.
DPI (Dot Per Inch)	A measurement of the Printer resolution indicating how many dots a Printer can produce in a linear inch.
DRAM (Dynamic Random Access Memory)	A microchip based volatile memory storage device. The Printer uses this to Buffer a print job, transferred from the PC, until the Printer is able to process the packet.
Driver	Software utility installed in Windows, that interfaces an application to rasterize image data and include command codes so the Printer can process the file.
Duplex Printing	Printing on the front and the back of the card.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Dwell Time	The speed at which the card moves across the Transfer Roller, measured in seconds/inch (sec/in). This can be adjusted in the Driver to ensure adhesion and card flatness.
Dye Migration	The diffusion of dye out of the card surface and into another receptive surface, such as a vinyl pouch card holder, resulting in a faded image.
Dye-Sublimation	Also called dye diffusion/thermal transfer, it is the process of heating a dye suspended in a cellulosus substrate until the dye can flow, diffusing into the dye receptive surface of the card or InTM film. This produces the image in the surface of the card.
E-card	An abbreviation for electronic card. A generic term used to reference any card with built-in electronic devices such as Smart Cards or prox cards.
E-card Docking Station	The device in the Printer that accepts Smart Cards with an ISO Smart Card contact Station. This allows the user to write to the Smart Card chip with a standard RS-232 interface in the back of the Printer or with the optional built-in Encoder.
Edge-to-Edge	Refers to the maximum printable area on a card resulting in printed cards with virtually no border.
ECP Mode (Enhanced Capabilities Port Mode)	A type of Parallel Port mode, developed by Microsoft, to increase the port throughput and improve performance.
EE Memory	An abbreviation for EEPROM.
EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory)	A microchip based non-volatile memory storage device that can be rewritten in the field. The chip can hold new values as the Printer adapts its operational parameters.
Encoder (Smart Card)	An electro-mechanical interface to transfer data from the PC to a chip or Magnetic Stripe built into the card.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Encoder (wheel)	An electromechanical device, attached to a shaft that detects the change in rotational position, incremented to count ticks per revolution. The Printer's Encoder wheel both detects motion and measures the amount of rotation in the movement of the Ribbon.
Engine	A generic term for a collection of systems and mechanisms that is dedicated to executing a specific function. A Printer that also laminates would have both a print engine and a Lamination engine.
EOF (End Of Form)	The trailing edge of the card, detected to indicate when the Printer should stop printing.
EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port)	A type of Parallel Port mode, developed by Intel, to increase the port throughput.
EPROM (Electrically Programmable Read Only Memory)	A microchip based non-volatile memory storage device that cannot be rewritten in the field. Firmware for many Fargo Printers is stored on these chips and so a change of the chip is necessary for an upgrade.
Escape sequence	A string or control character that indicates to the processor that what follows is a command and not data.
ESD (ElectroStatic Discharge)	The discharge of static electricity (high voltage, low current) that can damage electronic devices.
Ethernet	A system of networking a series of computers for the sharing of data or peripherals.
Film	A thin flexible transparent sheet used to carry dye-impregnated material or resin to be transferred to the card.
Firmware	The instruction set, stored in chip memory, inside the Printer that controls functional and operational data. Some models require a chip change for updates; some Firmware can be changed by reprogramming from the PC.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Flash Memory	A microchip based non-volatile memory device that holds its data when power is removed. This allows for field reprogramming of the Printer commands, such as Printer Firmware upgrades, without the necessity of changing chips.
Font	A character set similar in style and form. Fonts can be graphical or mathematical constructs, represented by a series of dots or an Assembly of curves and lines.
FPGA (Field Programmable Gate Array)	A microchip with configurable logic circuits installed that takes care of the very high speed and intensive data manipulations needed by the printing engine.
Full bleed	Printing that covers the entire card surface.
Gamma	The degree of contrast of an image or the display of a monitor determined by the slope of a characteristic curve relating optical density to relative log exposure.
Glossy / Matte	A smooth polished surface in comparison to a rougher matte surface. Fargo matte cards have a surface index (Ra) of approximately 65 microinches while glossy have a Ra = 3.
Glossy PVC	A card made of PVC with a smooth polished surface (Surface roughness of approximately 0 - 10 micro-inches). This is required for direct to card Dye-Sublimation printing.
Graphical Device Interface (GDI)	A Windows standard for protocol between Drivers and applications and the Windows interface. An application uses a Driver to rasterize the data in the format necessary for the Printer but also for the Windows interface to execute the print commands.
Gray Scale	A graduation through the various brightness levels from white to black.
Halftoning	A process in monochrome printing that simulates continuous tone by using changes to the distribution of single dots. Increasing the number of dots in a given area increases the darkness even though the individual dots stay the same size.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Hard Drive	A high capacity storage device in a PC consisting of non-removable magnetically encodable platters.
Hardware	Physical components of a system such as the Printer, the PC, the power supply.
(High Definition Printing™)	The High-Definition Printing process prints full-color images onto clear transfer film (In™). The film is then fused to the card through heat and pressure via a heated Roller. The Printhead is capable of 256 shades with a sharper print and better color match.
Head	Abbreviation for Printhead.
Heat sink	A device used to dissipate heat into the ambient.
Heat Seal	A resinous film transferred by the Printhead onto the back of an intermediate transfer film to facilitate adhesion.
HiCo (High Coercivity)	The Coercivity value of magnetic media between 2500 - 4000 Oe (ISO 7811-6). Most High Coercivity cards are 2750 Oe.
HTML (HyperText Markup Language)	A standard protocol used to format text files for use in a browser or on the Internet.
HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol)	A standard protocol by which computers can transfer data, compatible through multiple platforms.
IC (Integrated Circuit)	An electronic device that contains many individual circuits interconnected and placed within a discrete package.
ID (Identification)	An abbreviation for identification.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
IEEE 1284 (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers 1284)	A standard method of signaling for a bi-directional parallel interface on personal computers. To ensure proper Printer communications and image output, Fargo recommends a parallel interface cable that complies with this specification.
Image	A collection of pictures or graphical elements that compose the visual features on a card. Also refers to the digital representation.
Inhibit (panel)	The Inhibit or I designation under YMCKI indicates the ability to prevent the transfer of film to the card surface. Users can select these Ribbon types to prevent film from transferring over security features, signature panel or other areas of special interest on the card surface.
Input	Any data or material being transferred to the Printer.
Input Hopper	The area of the Printer that stores the blank cards, ready to print.
Intermediate Transfer Media (InTM)	A thin flexible material coated with a resin material into which the dye is transferred from the Ribbon by the Printhead. The film is then transferred to the card surface by the Transfer or Hot Roller.
ISO	From the Greek, iso, meaning same. Used to represent data from the International Organization for Standardization.
JIS II (Japanese Industrial Standard)	The standard for encoding to a Magnetic Stripe provided by the Japan Standards Association. The single track is as wide as ISO tracks 1 and 2 combined and in the same approximate location as those tracks but on the front of the card. The Coercivity level is 600 Oe.
K Panel	An area of a multicolored Ribbon (e.g., YMCK) that contains black resin for transfer to the card surface. Also used in reference to the application of preference to items printed on the card - those using the black panel in lieu of a process (YMC) black.
Lamination	The application of a film or resinous substance, fused by heat and pressure, to the surface of a card.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
LAN (Local Area Network)	An array of several computers connected through a series of data transfer cables for the sharing of data and peripherals.
Landscape	A document layout that is viewed with the document's long axis in a horizontal orientation.
LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)	A device that contains a liquid crystal between two pieces of polarized film through which reflected or ambient light can pass. When a current is applied, the liquid's polarity changes and blocks the passage of the light resulting in an opaque area of the display. The areas are arrayed to form characters.
LED (Light Emitting Diode)	A semiconductor that emits light when a current is applied.
Media	A generic reference to anything onto which the Printer can transfer an image including cards, Ribbon and film.
LoCo (Low Coercivity)	The Coercivity value of magnetic media between 250 - 600 Oe (ISO 7811-2). Most Low Coercivity cards are 300 Oe.
LPT Port (Line Printer Port)	The system abbreviation for a PC's parallel Printer port.
Mag encoding	The process of orienting successive magnetic bits to produce a serial data string.
Mag stripe	An area of the card with an applied or impregnated ferrous material that can hold encoded data through a series of prescribed polarity changes.
Mag Track	An area of a magnetic strip running the length of the card, with a given width and position, constitutes a track. This is the area dedicated to one data string, restricted to specific rules of format. ISO standards specify three Magnetic Tracks on the back of a card. The JIS standard specifies one track on the front.
Mag Verify	A process to confirm proper magnetic encoding. After encoding, the information is read off back and compared to the intended string.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
MB (Megabyte)	A unit of storage that equals 1,048,576 bytes.
Memory	A generic term for any device that stores digital information using magnetic media or digital chip storage device.
Menu	A descriptive list of headings above nested functions that aid navigation to a specific operation. These are found in computer applications, with the heading at the top of a subset of like functions. They are also on the Printer LCD control panel.
Monochrome	An image composed of a single color.
Network	A series of computers connected by data transfer cable for communication and sharing of functions and peripherals.
Oersted (Oe)	The unit of magnetic field strength named after Dutch scientist Hans Christian Oersted who found the science of electromagnetism.
Offset	The prescribed distance between a reference point and the target point. The offset in card printing can refer to the position of the image relative to the leading edge or the distance of the start of magnetic encoding from the leading edge of the card.
O-Ring	A rubber ring used as a belt in several media driving applications.
OS (Operating System)	The instructions installed on the computer hard drive that run the computer's operations and applications. The Driver used for any given OS will differ from other platforms. The correct version Driver must be loaded for the Printer to interface with the OS and the application to print.
Output	Any product of the Printer including card image, encoded data and Lamination.
Output hopper	The portion of the Printer that accepts the completed cards.
Overlay	A resin-like substance that is transferred by the Printhead to the card surface over a printed dye image to prevent image fading, increase abrasion durability and prevent dye migration.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Oversized Cards	Oversized cards are used for more efficient visual identification and are available in many non-standard sizes. The most popular sizes are CR-90 (3.63 x 2.37/92mm x 60mm) and CR-100 (3.88 x 2.63/98.5mm x 67mm).
Overlamine	Protective clear or holographic material to increase security and durability applied over the printed surface with a hot Roller.
Parallel	A method of data transfer in which serial data is divided into sections and sent simultaneously down parallel wires to speed transfer rate.
Parallel Port	A communication socket on a device that allows for parallel data transfer.
PC (Personal Computer)	A stand-alone, programmable, electronic device that can store, retrieve and process data consisting of a CPU, mouse, keyboard and monitor.
PCB (Printed Circuit Board)	A solid, multi-layered plate on which electronic elements are attached, either through the Board or on the surface.
Peel	The removal of a film or Ribbon from a card surface (at a perpendicular angle) to ensure proper transfer, then separation, from the card surface.
Peel-Off	A bar on the Lamination section that holds the film at the correct position and provides proper peel angle.
Peripheral	Any device that is attached externally to a PC. These often share the same data cable or port as a Printer and can be the source of communication problems.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Pinch Roller	A free spinning (non-driven) Roller that presses the card against the drive Roller, on the opposite side, to ensure an adequate normal force for proper traction.
Pixel	Short for picture element. The smallest element of a graphic.
Platen	The hard rubber Roller that drives the media through the Printer, providing support to the backside of the media during printing or laminating.
PET	Abbreviation for polyester terephthalate, often called polyester. Sheets of PET are laminated with sheets of PVC to produce thermal acceptance composite cards.
Port	A communication interface, serial or parallel, used for the transference of data. Includes USB and Ethernet.
PolyGuard Overlamine	A 1-mil or .6-mil thick polyester material that enhances card security and durability applied over the printed surface with a hot Roller. Available as clear or with embedded holographic-type security images.
Portrait	A document layout that is viewed with the document's long axis in a vertical orientation.
Potentiometer	An electronic resistor with a variable resistance value that can be mechanically set.
Print Driver	A software utility that serves as an interface between the Printer and the Windows GDI (Graphical Device Interface), making the Printer's functions available through the software application. It also provides the format information for the rasterizing of the print file including any necessary escape or function commands.
Print Job	A file of one or more cards for the Printer to print, including image data and Printer functions, transmitted through the parallel interface and at times stored temporarily in the print Buffer and spooler.
Print Server	A device used to connect and control a Printer on a network.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Printhead	The device on a Printer that produces the image on the media.
PVC	Abbreviation for polyvinyl chloride, often called vinyl. PVC is the component of the 0.002 thick clear, dye receptive film on the surface of the identification card and is the primary component of the identification card cores.
Queue	A sequence of files or sets of data, awaiting transmission or processing.
Proximity (Prox) Card	Proximity cards allow access and tracking utilizing contactless technology, usually by communicating through a built-in antenna.
RAM (Random Access Memory)	A storage device for digital information to be held temporarily, to facilitate processing.
Rasterize	The process of converting the elements of a graphic into a bitmap to be printed.
Reboot	Cycling the power to the Printer so that it resets and reinitializes.
Registration	The quality of the alignment of the separate primary-color images: YMCK.
Resin	A semi-solid material.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Resolution	The number of individual pixels in a graphic, taken over a given length, used to indicate the sharpness of the picture and the level of detail. The number of elements in the Printhead determines Fargo Printer resolution.
RFI (Radio Frequency Interference)	Electromagnetic waves radiated by poorly shielded cables or electronic devices that interfere with the operation or data transfer of another device.
RFID (Radio Frequency Identification)	This is a way of transmitting information via radio frequency. Data is sent from an RFID transceiver to an RFID tag (that is embedded in a Resin Ribbon).
RGB (Red/Green/Blue)	The three primary colors of the luminance or additive, model. Combinations of these three colors can produce practically all the colors of the spectrum that humans can detect. Computer monitors operate on an RGB model.
Ribbon	The dye impregnated film that is used for color printing.
Ribbon cable	Parallel wires held flat in a row by plastic insulation.
RMA number (Return Merchandise Authorization number)	A number, acquired from Technical Support, which authorizes the return of merchandise for repair or credit.
Roller	Elements of the Printer used for the transport of media consisting of a rotating steel shaft (for Ribbon) or a rotating steel shaft with a rubber cylinder installed at the shaft midpoint (for moving cards).
RS-232	An interface standard, established in 1969 by the Electronic Industries Association, regarding the connecting of computer peripherals.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Saturation	A measure of the degree of color, from gray, with the same brightness.
Self-test	A pre-determined print file used to confirm Printer operation typically sent from the Driver or stored in the Printer's memory.
Sensor	An electro-mechanical/electro-optical device used to indicate a change in state in the Printer such as when a card reaches a certain location.
Serial communications	The transfer of data, one bit at a time and in sequential order, using a single wire.
Serial interface	A sub D 9 pin input/output port on the Printer, used for serial communication with the PC for AS400 operating systems or for e card encoding.
SIMM (Single In-Line Memory Module)	An array of memory chips, attached to a printed circuit Board that installs in a slot on the main Board.
Simplex	Single-sided printing.
Smart Card	Smart cards have an embedded computer circuit that contains either a memory chip or a microprocessor chip. There are several types of Smart Cards: Memory, Contact, Contactless, Hybrid (Twin), Combi (Dual Interface), Proximity and Vicinity.
Software	Instructions saved in computer memory that directs the computer to perform certain tasks and functions.
Spooler	A computer application that allows the spooling of print jobs.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Spooling	Rather than moving a print job directly to the Printer, the job is written to the disk so that the user can access the application faster while Windows takes care of printing in the background.
SS (Start Sentinel)	The character denoting the end of a magnetic data string.
Stacker	The device that moves the finished cards onto the output column ordering them First In, First Out.
Stepper Motor	A Motor whose shaft turns in discrete steps, rather than continuously.
String	A sequence of characters that form a line of data.
Surface mount	A method of mounting circuit elements onto the surface of a circuit Board, attached at solder pads, rather than through holes in the Board.
Surge Protector	An electronic device, placed in serial to the Printer's power supply, that prevents damage to the Printer from electronic surges and electrical current that is outside of the normal parameters.
Switch Box	An electromechanical device to which a user can connect several peripheral devices to the Parallel Port simultaneously, yet using the selector switch to designate the active port.
TAC	Thermal Acceptance Composite cards. Card stock produced by laminating sheets of PVC with sheets of PET for better thermal distortion resistance. Ultra III cards.
Temp file	A temporary file, generated automatically by Windows, to store the information for an active document. Windows should delete these files when the application is closed.
Test Print	A file stored in or generated through windows that is sent to the Printer to test basic functionality.
Thermistor	An electronic resistor on the Printhead with a resistance value that varies in proportion to the heat to which it is exposed.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
Thermocouple	A device for measuring temperature using a junction of two wires of dissimilar metals that produce a voltage when heated that varies proportionally with the temperature.
Thin Film Overlamine	A 0.25-mil thick resin material that enhances card security and durability applied over the printed surface with a hot Roller. Available as clear or with embedded holographic-type security images.
Through-hole	A method of mounting circuit elements with the leads passing through holes in the circuit Board and soldered on the opposite side.
Timeout	An interruption of a print job that occurs when a function is not completed in the time allotted by the operating system.
TOF (Top of Form)	The leading edge of the card, as it travels through the Printer.
Track	The area on a mag stripe designated to contain the magnetic data string.
Troubleshooting	The process of investigating and determining the cause of a problem.
TrueType (TT)	A font format that produces each character using a mathematical equation, rather than a graphical representation, resulting in a much sharper, cleaner image.
Update	The process of installing a new revision of software or Firmware to implement new changes to the Printer's command codes and procedures.

Continued on the next page

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
UPS (Un-interruptible Power Supply)	An AC power supply, typically powered by batteries, which provides temporary power to the PC or Printer during an interruption of the supply voltage.
USB (Universal Serial Bus)	A 1.5M/sec (12Mbit/sec) serial communication interface that can support 127 separate devices consisting of 4 wires: power, ground, data in and data out.
Virtual Memory	A technique used by Windows when chip memory is exhausted, in which data is written to the hard to hold data temporarily and support Window's operations.
Wrinkle	The appearance in the card image of wavy or arched lines, either colored or clear, caused by improper film or Ribbon tension.
YMC	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M) and Cyan (C).
YMCK	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C) and Black (K).
YMCKH	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C), Black (K) and Heat Seal (H).
YMCKK	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C), Black (K), Black (K) (the second K is for backside, black only printing).
YMCKO	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C), Black (K) and Overlay (O).
YMCKOK	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C), Black (K), Overlay (O), Black (K) (used for backside, black only printing).

Glossary of Terms (continued)

Term	Definition
YMCKI	The designation of colored Ribbon by the panels of color in the order in which they are printed: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C), Black (K) and Inhibit (I).

Section 18: Index

- (High Definition Printing™), 17-97
 (Thin Film) Overlamine, 17-107
 .2, 7-89
 .8mm, 7-54
 ±100 Pixels, 7-54
 180 degrees rotation, 7-36
 24-bit color, 17-89
About button, 7-21
 absolute failure, 7-7
 AC - Alternating Current, 17-89
 accelerated wear/dye migration, 7-5
 Accepted Card Compositions, 7-3, 7-13
 Accepted Card Thickness, 2-7
 Accepted Card Types or Compositions, 2-7
Accessory Board (A000451), 16-86, 16-87, 16-88
 Add button – K Panel, 7-83
 adhesion, 7-7
 Adhesion, 17-89
 adhesives, 7-2
 Adjust Image Position controls, 7-53
 Agency Listings, 2-5
 Algebraic, 17-89
 ANSI (American National Standards Institute), 17-89
 Appropriate Printer Driver Settings, 7-3
 ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange), 17-89
 AT, 17-89
 B (Black), 17-89
Back Cover Assembly (D910132-01), 16-5
 Barcodes, 17-90
 Baseplate (D860060), 3-7
 batch print, 17-90
 Battery Back-up, 17-90
 Bi-directional, 17-90
 BIOS (Basic Input/Output System), 17-90
 Bit, 17-90
 Bit map, 17-90
 black graphics, 7-84
 black text or barcodes, 7-84
 Board, 17-90
 Boot-up, 17-90
 Buffer, 17-90
 Cable, 17-90
 Cache, 17-91
 Calibrating, 17-91
Cancel button, 2-19
 Card Capacity, 2-7
 Card Cleaning Assembly, 2-17
 Card Count, 5-36
 Card Design, 2-21
Card Feed Motor (E000062 + Gear, D900208), 16-84
Card Feed Motor/Card Feed Roller (D910074), 16-39, 16-40
 card grid, 7-87
 Card Illustration, 7-53
 Card Input Guide adjustment, 7-8, 7-9, 7-10
 Card Input Hopper, 2-17, **2-22, 2-23**
 Card Output Hopper, 2-17
Card Path Assembly (D910006), 16-22
Card Path Sensor (D910200), 16-62
card Printer, 16-1
Card Rollers (D910062) and Card Roller (D910063), 16-27
 Card Size, 2-21, 7-12
 card stock selection, 7-2
 Card Surface, 2-21
 Card Type, 7-13, 7-15
 Card Type, 2-7
 Card Type Custom options, 7-58
 Card Type option, 7-4, 7-55
 Card Type Selection, 7-3
 card warping, 7-13
 card's Magnetic Stripe/smart chip, 7-36
 Cards-Matte PVC + H Panel Ribbon ⁽²⁾, 7-4
 Cards-Matte PVC + non-H Panel Ribbon, 7-4
 CD (Compact Disc), 17-91
 Centronics, 17-91
 Clean inside Printer, 10-35
 Clean outside of Printer, 10-35
 Cleaning Cartridge, 10-37
 Cleaning Roller, 10-37, 17-91
 Cleaning Tape loop, 10-37
 Clear Protective Overlay panel, 2-20
 Coercivity, 17-91
Coercivity option, 7-65
 Color Bars YMC, 5-37

color matching, 17-91
 color matching algorithm, 7-40
 Color Matching dropdown, 7-40
 color matching software, 7-40
 colors, 2-7
 Communication Errors, 5-30, 5-31
 Compressed air, 17-91
 Contrast, 17-91
Contrast/Gamma, 7-41
 Control panel, 17-91
 Copies, 7-18
 copyright/version information, 7-21
 Cover Removal, 16-70
 CR-100, 17-92
 CR-79, 17-92
 CR-80, 17-92
 CR-80, CR-90 and CR-100, 7-12
 CR-90, 17-92
 CSA, 2-5
 Cursor, 17-92
 Custom 1/Custom 2 options, 7-4
 custom Image Transfer settings., 7-4
 Custom options, 7-15
 customization options, 7-68
 Darkness, 17-92
 DB-9, 17-92
 DC (Direct Current), 17-92
 DC Motor, 17-92
 Default, 17-92
Default button, 7-43
Defined Area(s) check box, 7-87
Defined Area(s) option, 7-85
 Defrag, 17-92
 Delete button – K Panel, 7-83
 DIP switches (Dual In-line Package Switches), 17-92
 Direct-to-Card (DTC) Printing, 17-93
 direct-to-card printing, 7-2
 disable printing, 7-37
 disassembly steps, **16-1**, 16-70
 disk cleanup utility, 5-31
 Dither, 17-93
 dither method, 7-44
 DMA (Direct Memory Access), 17-91
 Dongle, 17-93
 Dot, 17-93
 Dot pitch, 17-93
 Download, 17-93
 DPI (Dot Per Inch), 17-93
 DRAM (Dynamic Random Access Memory), 17-93
 Drive Train Stepper Motor Assembly (D910073),
 16-37, 16-38
 Driver, 17-93
 Driver control, 2-24
 Duplex Printing, 17-93
 dwell temperature, 7-15
 Dwell Time, 7-7, 17-94
 Dye Migration, 17-94
Dye-Sub Intensity slide, 7-41
 dye-sub printed image, 7-41
 Dye-Sublimation, 2-16, 17-94
 Dye-Sublimation Cyan panel, 2-20
 Dye-Sublimation Magenta panel, 2-20

dye-sublimation Ribbon Panels, 7-41
 Dye-Sublimation Yellow panel, 2-20
 E-card, 17-94
 E-card Docking Station, 17-94
 ECP Mode (Enhanced Capabilities Port Mode), 17-94
 Edge-to-Edge, 17-94
 Edge-to-Edge printing, 7-15
 EE Memory, 17-94
 EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Programmable Read
 Only Memory), 17-94
embedded contaminants, 2-21
 Emissions Standards, 2-5
 Encode Station, 2-19
 Encoder (Smart Card), 17-94
 Encoder (wheel), 17-95
 encoding instructions, 7-37
 Encoding Mode, 7-65
 Encoding Options, 2-10
 End Sentinel (ES)., 7-77
 Engine, 17-95
 EOF (End Of Form), 17-95
 EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port), 17-95
 EPROM (Electronically Programmable Read Only
 Memory), 17-95
 Escape sequence, 17-95
 ESD, 1-2, 7-1, 10-30
 ESD (ElectroStatic Discharge), 17-95
 Ethernet, 17-95
 factory default settings/**Default** button, 7-58
 Fargo Technical Support, 14-1
 Fargo Technical Support via the Web, 14-1
 feed card into encoder, 5-31
 Feeder Station, 2-19
 Field Separator (FS), 7-77
 Film, 7-58, 17-95
 Film Options, 2-11
 Film particles, 7-7
 Film Storage Temperature, 2-11
 Film Supply Motor (D910055) and Ribbon Supply
 Motor (D910057), **16-41, 16-42**
 Film Take-Up Motor (D910058) and Ribbon Take-
 Up Motor (D910056), **16-46**
 Film transfer parameters, 7-2
 Firmware, 17-95
 Flash Memory, 17-96
 Flipper Back Access Assembly (D910188-01), 16-72
Flipper Front Cover (D910186-01), 16-73
Flipper Main Board (A000394), 16-85
 Flipper Module Gears, 16-75
Flipper Motor (E000062 + Pulley, 820524), 16-83
Flipper Output Roller (D900123), 16-81
Flipper Sensor bundle (D900249), 16-82
 Flipper Table, 2-25
Flipper Table Assembly (D900205), 16-76, 16-78
 Font, 17-96
 FPGA (Field Programmable Gate Array), 17-96
 Front Cover Assembly (D910131-01), **16-4**
 Front Panel Trim Cover (D910067-01), **16-10**
 Full bleed, 17-96
 Full Card option, 7-84
 Functional Specifications, 2-16

- Gamma, 17-96
- Glossy / Matte, 17-96
- Glossy PVC, 17-96
- Glossy-PVC or Matte-PVC options, 7-58
- Graphical Device Interface (GDI), 17-96
- Gray Scale, 17-96
- Gray/Align YMCK, 5-32
- Halftoning, 17-96
- Hard Drive, 17-97
- hard Drive space
 - adequate or inadequate, 5-31
- Hardware, 17-97
- Head, 17-97
- Headlift Motor (D910052), **16-51**
- Headlift Motor (D910052) and Headlift Sensor (D9100XXXX), **16-48, 16-49**
- Heat Seal, 7-2, 17-97
- Heat sink, 17-97
- HiCo (High Coercivity), 17-97
- High Coercivity, 7-65
- High Coercivity UltraCard IIIs, 7-65
- Horizontal adjustment, 7-54
- HTML (HyperText Markup Language), 17-97
- HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol), 17-97
- Humidity, 2-11
- IC (Integrated Circuit), 17-97
- IC smart cards/proximity cards, 7-2
- ID (Identification), 17-97
- ID format, 7-31
- ID software applications, 7-77
- IEEE 1284 (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers 1284), 17-98
- Image, 17-98
- Image color tab, 7-43
- Image orientation, 7-53
- Image Position controls, 7-53
- Image Transfer** tab, 7-15
- Inhibit panel, 2-20
- Input, 17-98
- Input Hopper, 17-98
- Input Hopper Card Capacity, 2-11
- Input Side Cover (D910133-01), **16-6**
- Interface, 2-11
- Intermediate Transfer Media (InTM), 17-98
- IPC, 7-7
- ISO, 17-98
- ISO 7811-2 Magnetic Stripe, 7-76
- ISO encoded data format, 7-68
- ISO Track Locations, 7-76
- JIS C 6220 Type II cards, 7-61
- JIS II (Japanese Industrial Standard), 17-98
- K Panel, 17-98
- K Panel Resin options, 7-90
- K Panel Resin tab, 7-84, 7-85
- Lamination, 17-98
- Lamination Mechanism (D910054), **16-57**
- Lamination Mechanism (D910054) and Lam Cam Motor (D910072), **16-59**
- Lamination Mechanism (D910054) and Lam Cam Sensor (D910216), **16-60**
- LAN (Local Area Network), 17-99
- Landscape, 17-99
- LCD (Liquid Crystal Display), 17-99
- LCD and Softkey Control Pad, 2-18, 2-19
- LCD Board Assembly (A000440), **16-14**
- LCD Display, 2-17, 2-18
- LED (Light Emitting Diode), 17-99
 - less heat, 7-42
 - less saturated resin images, 7-42
- LoCo (Low Coercivity), 17-99
- Low Coercivity, 7-65
- lower transfer temperature, 7-2
- LPT Port (Line Printer Port), 17-99
- Mag encoding, 17-99
- Mag stripe, 17-99
- Mag Track, 17-99
- Mag Verify, 17-99
- Magnetic Cover (D910138-01), **16-11**
- Magnetic Encoding** tab, 7-60
- Magnetic Head/Board Assembly (A000445), **16-13**
- Magnetic Stripe Encoding Modules, 7-60
- Magnetic Stripe encoding process, 7-60
- Magnetic Track data, 7-77
- Magnetic Track Options, 7-67
- Magnetic Track Selection, 7-65
- Main Board Assembly (A000429), **16-15**
- matte-finished cards, 7-2
- Maximum Accepted Card Length Range, 2-11
- Maximum Accepted Card Width Range, 2-11
- maximum value, 7-54
- MB (Megabyte), 17-100
- Measuring area positioned on card, 7-89
- Media, 17-99
- Medium Coercivity, 7-65
- Memory, 17-100
- Menu, 17-100
- Monochrome, 17-100
- more heat, 7-42
- Network, 17-100
- New Temperature Setting, 2-24
- No MiFare Encoder, 5-14*
- No Prox Encoder, 5-14*
- Oersted (Oe), 17-100
- Offset, 17-100
- Operating Temperature, 2-12
- O-Ring, 17-100
- OS (Operating System), 17-100
- Output, 17-100
- Output hopper, 17-100
- Output Hopper Card Capacity, 2-12
- Output Module Field upgrade, 3-5
- Output Roller Assembly (D900236), 16-79, 16-80*
- Output Side Cover (D910134-01), **16-8**
- Output Side Cover (D910134-01) / Input Side Covers (D910187-01), 16-71
- Output Side Upgrade Cover (D910139-01), **16-7**
- Overlamine, 17-101
- Overlay, 17-100
- Oversized Cards, 17-101
- Packing the Printer, 12-1
- Parallel, 17-101
- Parallel Interface Port, 2-17

- Parallel Port, 17-101
- Parts Replacement, **16-1**
- Pass Count, 5-36
- Pause** button, 2-19
- PC (Personal Computer), 17-101
- PCB (Printed Circuit Board), 17-101
- Peel, 17-101
- Peel-Off, 17-101
- Peripheral, 17-101
- PET, 17-102
- Photo**, 7-44
- Pinch Roller, 17-102
- Pixel, 17-102
- Platen, 17-102
- Platen Card Roller (D910101), **16-31**
- Platen Rollers, 10-32
- PolyGuard Overlamine, 17-102
- Port, 17-102
- Portrait, 17-102
- Portrait/Landscape, 7-17
- positive/negative image placement values, 7-54
- Potentiometer, 17-102
- Power Port, 2-17
- Print All Black With K Panel, 7-84
- Print Area, 2-13
- Print Back Side First option, 7-33
- Print back side only, 7-34
- print both sides, 7-31, 7-32
- Print Both Sides option, 7-32, 7-34
- Print Driver, 17-102
- Print Job, 17-102
- Print Length, 2-8, 7-12
- Print Platen Roller (D910109), **16-33**
- Print Ribbon, 10-35
- Print Ribbon Options, 2-13
- Print Ribbons, 2-20
- Print Server, 17-102
- Print Speed, 2-14
- Print Speed-Batch Mode, 2-14
- Print Station, 10-36
- Print Status Screen, 2-19
- Print Stepper Motor (D910070), Print Stepper Motor Belts (F000093-2), Print Motor Stepper Gear (D840888), **16-53, 16-54**
- Print Test Image**, 5-32
 - print the first page of a two-page document, 7-33
- Print Width, 2-8, 7-12
- Print YMC Under K and Print K Only options, 7-90
- Print YMC Under K/Print K Only** options, 7-90
- Print/Transfer Stations, 10-32
- printed image, 7-54
- printed text and barcodes, 7-90
- Printer, 2-19
- Printer Cleaning Kit, 10-32, 10-36
- Printer Components, 2-17
- Printer Driver setup, 7-55
- Printhead, 2-17, 17-103
- Printhead Assembly Kit (086091), **16-64, 16-65, 16-66, 16-67**
- Printhead cleaning, 10-36
- Printhead Cleaning Pen, 10-36
- Printing Method, 2-13
- Proper Settings, 7-3
- Proximity cards, **2-21**
- PVC, 17-103
- Queue, 17-103
- RAM (Random Access Memory), 17-103
- Rasterize, 17-103
- Reboot, 17-103
- recorded magnetic data, 7-66
- Registration, 17-103
- Regulatory Compliances, 2-5
- Removing the Baseplate, **16-12**
- Replacing the Card Cleaning Tape, 10-37
- Resin, 17-103
- resin black (K) Panel, 7-85, 7-86, 7-87
- Resin Black panel, 2-20
- resin dither, 7-44
- Resin Heat** slide, 7-42
- resin images, 7-42
- Resin Thermal Transfer, 2-17
- Resolution, 17-104
- RFI (Radio Frequency Interference), 17-104
- RFID (Radio Frequency Identification), 17-104
- RFID Board Assembly (A000365), **16-19, 16-21**
- RGB, 5-37
- RGB (Red/Green/Blue), 17-104
- Ribbon, 17-104
- Ribbon / Cards, 1-2
- Ribbon cable, 17-104
- Ribbon Panels, 7-32
- Ribbon type, 7-24, 7-25, 7-26, 7-27, 7-29
- Ribbon/Cards, 7-1, 10-30
- Right Cards, 7-2
- Right Cards/Print Process, 7-2
- RMA number, 17-104
- Roller, 17-104
- rotate front by 180 Degrees, 7-36
- rotates image, 7-36
- RS-232, 17-104
- safety issues, 1-2, 2-1, 3-1, 4-1, 5-2, 7-1, 10-30, **16-2**
- Safety Standards, 2-5
- Saturation, 17-105
- Scroll controls – K Panel, 7-82**
- second K Panel, 7-32
- Self-test, 17-105
- Sensor, 17-105
- Serial interface, 17-105
- Shift Data Left** option, 7-66
- SIMM, 17-105
- Simplex, 17-105
- Smart Card, 17-105
- smart chip, 7-2
- Softkey Buttons, 2-17, 2-18
- Software, 17-105
- Software Drivers, 2-14
- Software Drivers, 2-11
- special precautions, 1-2, 7-1, 10-30
- Split 1 Ribbon Panels, 7-32
- Spooler, 17-105
- Spooling, 17-106
- SS (Start Sentinel), 17-106

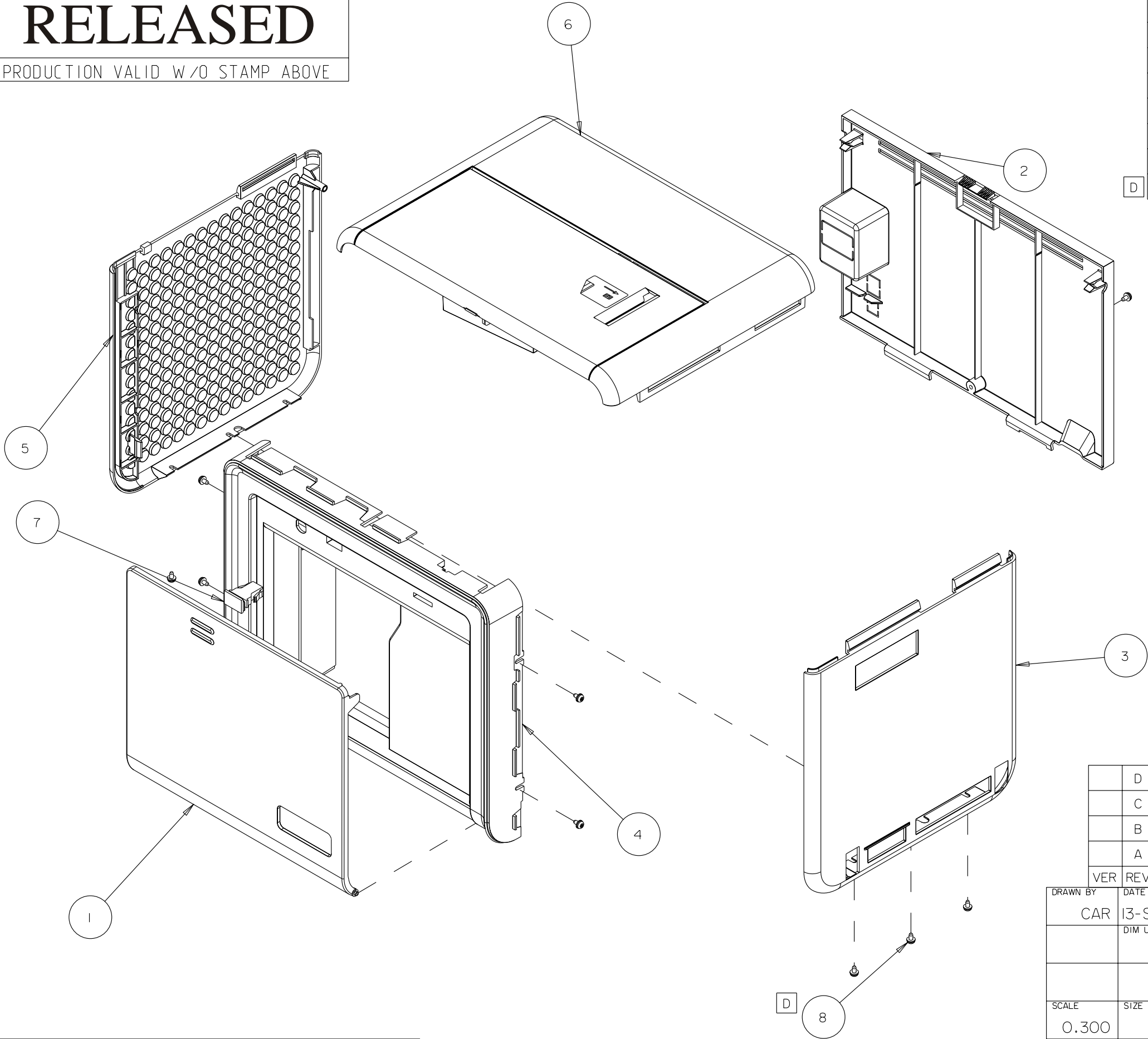
SS, ES, FS, 7-77
 Stacker, 17-106
 Start Sentinel (SS), 7-77
 Stepper Motor, 17-106
 String, 17-106
 Super Coercivity, 7-65
 Supply Frequency, 2-15
 Supply Voltage, 2-15
 Surface mount, 17-106
 surface roughness, 7-2
 Switch Box, 17-106
System Color Management, 7-40
 System Requirements, 2-15
 TAC, 17-106
 Tape adhesion Test, 7-5, 7-7
 Tape Test, 7-58
 Technical Specifications, 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15
 Temp file, 17-106
 Temperature Adjustment, 2-24
 Test Print, 17-106
 Thermistor, 17-106
 Thermocouple, 17-107
 thicker cards, 7-2
 thinner cards, 7-2
 Through-hole, 17-107
 Timeout, 17-107
 TOF (Top of Form), 17-107
Top Cover (D910136-01), 16-9
 total card area, 7-88
 Track, 17-107
 Track Information, 7-77
 track number (1, 2 or 3), 7-77
 Transfer Count, 5-36
 Transfer Dwell Time/Temperature, 7-55
 transferred Film, 7-5
 troubleshoot the Printer, 14-1
 Troubleshooting, 5-1, 17-107
 TrueType (TT), 17-107
 TrueType black text and TrueType barcodes, 7-81
 UL, 2-5
 UltraCard IIIs-Glossy PVC, 7-5
 UltraCard IIIs-Glossy PVC + H Panel Ribbon ⁽²⁾, 7-4
 UltraCard IIIs-Glossy PVC + non-H Panel Ribbon, 7-4
 Undefined Area(s) - K Panel Resin tab, 7-86
Undefined Area(s) option, 7-86
 Update, 17-107
 Upper Roller (D910064) and Lower Roller (D910107), **16-24, 16-61**
 UPS (Un-interruptible Power Supply), 17-108
 USB (Universal Serial Bus), 17-108
USB/Ethernet Board Assembly (A000441), 16-16
 Vertical adjustment, 7-54
 Vertical/Horizontal adjustment arrows, 7-53
 Virtual Memory, 17-108
WordPad, 5-31
 Wrinkle, 17-108
 X/Y boxes, 7-89
 Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Cyan (C) Ribbon Panels, 7-91
Yellow, Magenta and Cyan, 7-41, 7-42
 YMC, 7-27, 17-108
 YMC, YMCK or YMCKK Print Ribbon, 7-21
 YMCI, 2-13
 YMCK, 7-27, 17-108
 YMCK or YMCKK Print Ribbon, 7-44
 YMCK/YMCKK Print Ribbons, 7-32
 YMCKH, 7-27, 17-108
 YMCKH Panel Ribbon, 7-2
 YMCKH Ribbon, 7-7
 YMCKI, 7-27, 17-2
 YMCKIKI, 7-27
 YMCKK, 7-27, 17-108
 YMCKO, 17-108
 YMCKOK, 17-108

Appendix: Engineering Drawings

FARGO

RELEASED

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	D910131 -XX	PART	COVER FRONT DOOR
2	1	D910132 -XX	PART	COVER-REAR DOOR
3	1	D910187 -XX	PART	COVER FLIPPER INPUT SIDE
4	1	D910238 -XX	PART	COVER FLIPPER FRONT FI
5	1	D910242 -XX	PART	COVER OUTPUT SIDE FI
6	1	D910327 -XX	ASSEMBLY	ASY-COVER FLIPPER TOP FI
7	1	D910382	PART	LATCH- TOUCH
8	11	F000417	PART	SCREW M3X.5X6 TPH ZP TAP SEM

PART NUMBER	COLOR
D910315-01	BLACK AND SILVER

	D	ADDED (4X) F000417	CI5762	17-JUNE-08	JAR/JAR
	C	CHANGED REV ON LOWER LEVEL PART	CI5689	20-MAY-08	JAR/JAR
	B	CHANGED REV ON LOWER LEVEL PART	CI5360	04-FEB-08	JAR/JAR
	A	ADDED D910382	CI5232	10-DEC-07	JAR/JAR
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR

DRAWN BY	DATE	<div>FARGO®</div> <div>Part of HID Global</div> <div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div>			
CAR	13-Sep-07				
	DIM UNITS	DESCRIPTION			
	inch				
SCALE	SIZE	ASY-FLIPPER COVERS			
0.300	B				
ASSY DWG		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
		PHAT BANK	D910315	D910315	

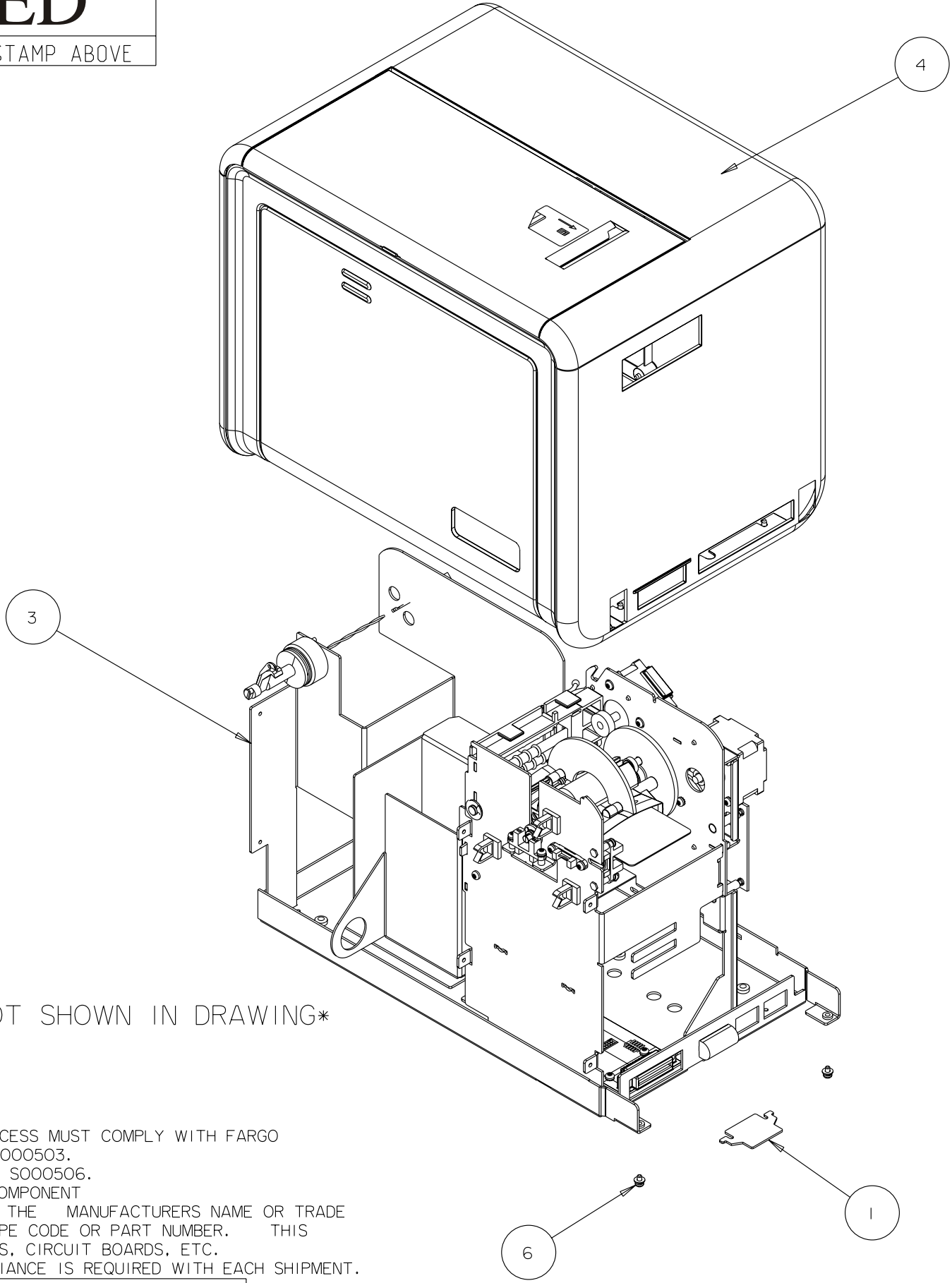
ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D910315	D910315	ASSEM

FARGO

RELEASED

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE

COLOR OPTION TABLE	
PART NUMBER	COLOR
D9I0244-0I	BLACK / SILVER



D9I0289 & D9I03I8 NOT SHOWN IN DRAWING

1.

MATERIAL AND MANUFACTURING PROCESS MUST COMPLY WITH FARGO ENVIRONMENTAL SPECIFICATION S000503.
2.

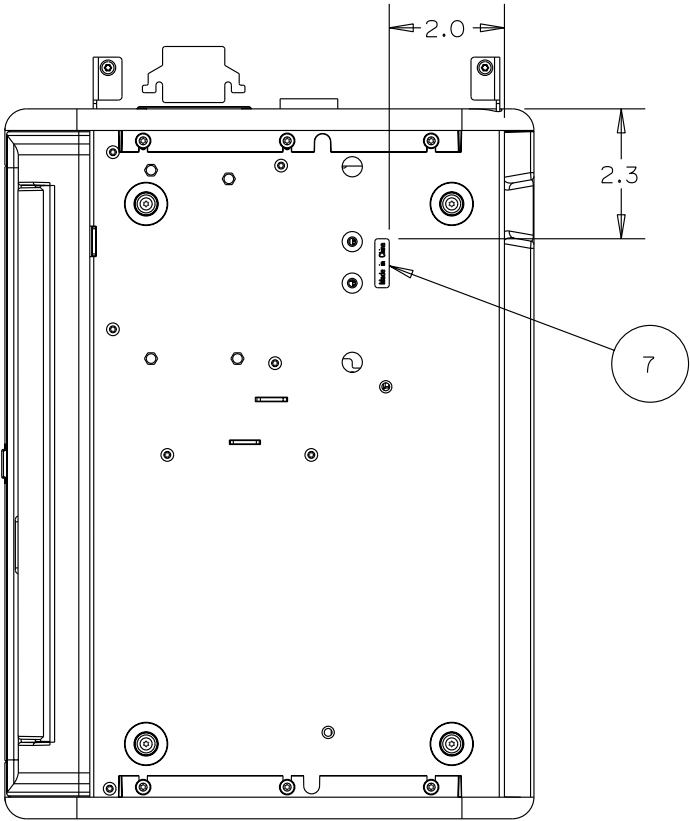
PACKAGE PER FARGO SPECIFICATION S000506.
3.

ALL ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS OR COMPONENT ASSEMBLIES MUST BE MARKED WITH THE MANUFACTURERS NAME OR TRADE MARK, AND THE MANUFACTURERS TYPE CODE OR PART NUMBER. THIS INCLUDES MOTORS, FANS, SOLENOIDS, CIRCUIT BOARDS, ETC.
4.

SUPPLIER CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE IS REQUIRED WITH EACH SHIPMENT.

ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D9I0244	D9I0244	ASSEM

ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	D000446	PART	PCB STATION INTF ARMSTRONG
2	1	D9I0289	ASSEMBLY	ASM HDP5000 FI LOCK, FLIPPER
3	1	D9I0293	ASSEMBLY	ASY-FLIPPER MECH
4	1	D9I0315 -XX	ASSEMBLY	ASY-FLIPPER COVERS
5	1	D9I0318	ASSEMBLY	LOCK ROD ASSEMBLY
6	2	F000462	PART	SCREW M3X.5X6 TPH ZP LOCK SEM
7	1	L000837	PART	LBL, Made in China .85" x .25"



L000837 PLACEMENT

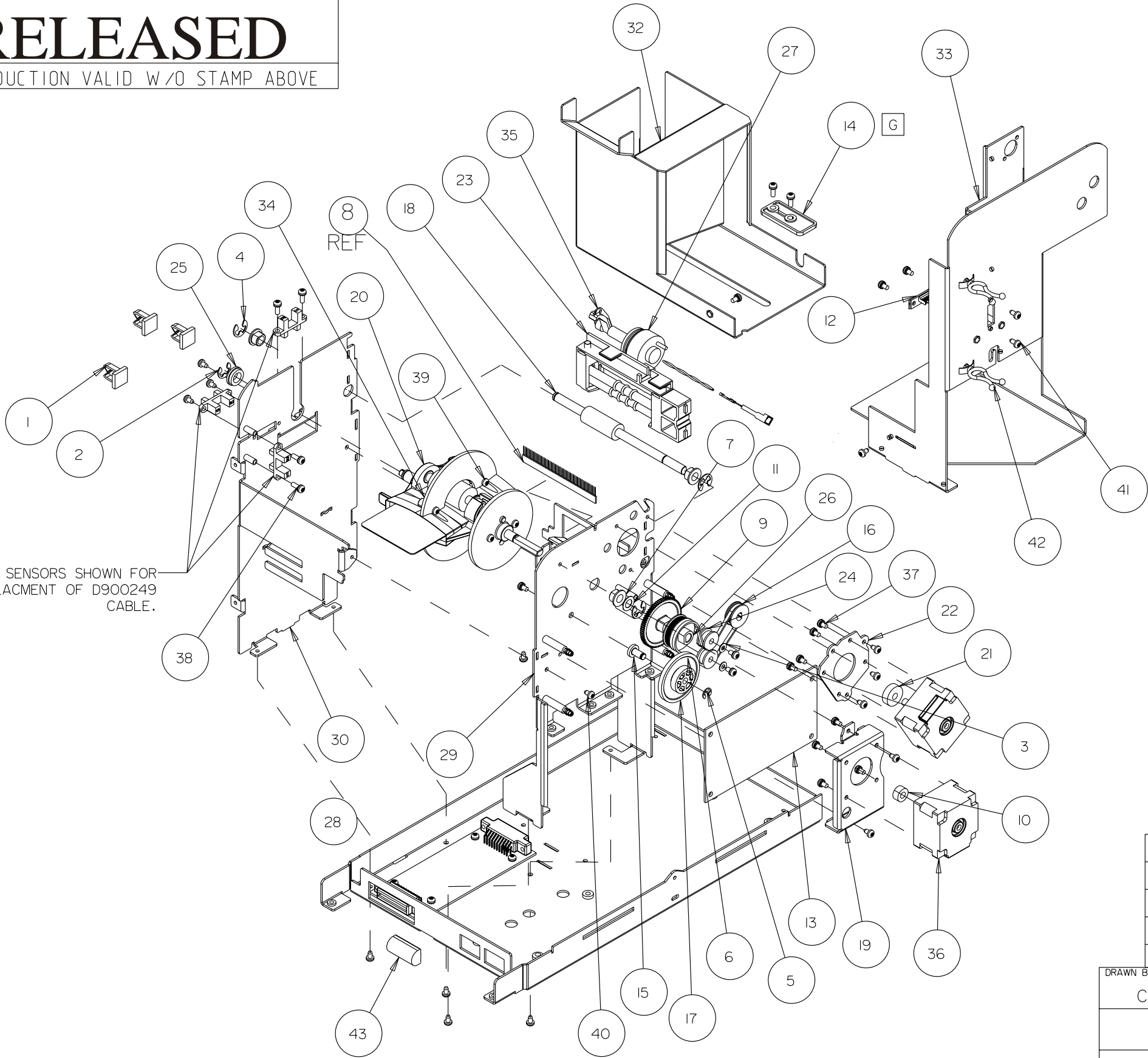
	G	CHANGED REV ON LOWER LEVEL ASSEMBLY	CI6325	05-JAN-09	TGG/PGU
	F	CHANGED REV ON LOWER LEVEL ASSEMBLY	CI5762	17-JUNE-08	JAR/JAR
	E	CHANGED REV ON LOWER LEVEL ASSEMBLY	CI5689	2I-MAY-08	JAR/JAR
	D	F000462 WAS F000I69	CI5602	0I-APR-08	KAB/MJL
	C	THIS REV WAS NOT RELEASED	---	---	---
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR

DRAWN BY	DATE	<div><div>FARGO</div><div>Part of HID Global</div><div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div></div>			
CAR	I3-Sep-07				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch				
SCALE	SIZE	DESCRIPTION			
0.300	B	ASY-FINAL FLIPPER			
ASSY DWG		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
			D9I0244	D9I0244	

FARGO

RELEASED

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	3	I30878	PART	CLAMP-CBL MWSEB-3-OIA-RT
2	1	I40010	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT E .313 IN SHFT
3	2	I40040	PART	WASHER 3MM FLAT
4	3	I40062	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT E .250 IN SHFT
5	1	I40063	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT E .188 IN SHFT
6	1	220082	PART	BELT IO5 GRV I25 W MXL
7	3	760343	PART	BEARING - DRIVE ROLLER
8	1	8I0253	PART	BRUSH-STATIC DISSIPATIVE
9	1	8I0266	PART	GEAR-CARD TRANSPORT DRIVE
10	1	820524	PART	PINION-MOTOR
11	1	820621	PART	WASHER-ENCODER WHEEL SUPPORT
12	1	A000136	ASSEMBLY	ASY-PCB INPUT SENSOR
13	1	A000394	PART	ASY PCB DTCIOO FLIP STATION
14	1	D840667	PART	GUIDE-ADJUSTMENT, OUTPUT
15	1	D84I033	PART	POST-PLTN_DRIVE_IDLER
16	1	D850190	PART	PULLEY-MAIN
17	1	D860280	PART	GEAR-72X36-TOOTH MOLDED
18	1	D900I23	PART	ROLLER-FLIPPER OUTPUT
19	1	D900I96	PART	BRACKET-MOTOR
20	1	D900205	ASSEMBLY	ASY-FLIPPER TABLE
21	1	D900208	PART	GEAR-30 T-48 P
22	1	D900235	PART	STEPPER MTR BRACKET
23	1	D900236	ASSEMBLY	ASY OUTPUT ROLLER IOOFLIP
24	2	D900241	PART	PULLEY-IDLER
25	1	D900271	PART	BEARING-OIL IMP .313 X .150 L
26	1	D900287	PART	PULLEY-36 GRV I25 W MXL
27	1	D9I0213	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CBL RELEASE SOLENOID
28	1	D9I0234	ASSEMBLY	ASY-FLIPPER BASEPLATE
29	1	D9I0235	ASSEMBLY	SIDEPLATE FLIP BACK
30	1	D9I0236	ASSEMBLY	SIDEPLATE FLIP FRT
31	1	D9I0322	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CABLE WIRES FI
32	1	D9I0380	ASSEMBLY	OUTPUT HOPPER, DRAWER
33	1	D9I0381	ASSEMBLY	BRACKET-HOPPER
34	2	D9I0408	PART	BRACKET-FLIPPER SLOT BLOCK,ABS
35	1	D920I46	PART	BRACKET-SOLENOID LOCK
36	2	E000062	PART	MOTOR-1.8 DEGREE STEPPER DRIVE
37	14	F000I69	PART	SCREW-M3X5_TPH_ZP_SEM
38	6	F000I71	PART	SCREW-M3X8_TPH_ZP_SEM
39	4	F000I82	PART	SCREW-#4-20X.500_TPH_ZP_PLAS
40	17	F000I91	PART	SCREW-M3X5 TPH ZP TAPTITE
41	2	F000I92	PART	SCREW-M3X6 TPH ZP TAPTITE
42	2	F000351	PART	CABLE TIE TWIST LOCK
43	1	F000445	PART	COND GASKET.375H X .500W X 1.00L

	G	REV CHANGE TO D840667	CI6325	05-JAN-09	TGG/PGU
	F	REV CHANGE TO D920I46	CI5869	25-Jul-08	PGU/PGU
	E	REPLACES (2X) F000I71 WITH F000I69	CI5762	17-JUNE-08	JAR/JAR
	D	THIS REV WAS NOT RELEASED	---	---	---
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	ENG/DRF

DRAWN BY	DATE	<div><div>FARGO®</div><div>Part of HID Global</div><div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div></div>			
CAR	07-Apr-06				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch	DESCRIPTION			
SCALE	SIZE	ASY-FLIPPER MECH			
0.300	B				
ASSY DWG		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
			D9I0293	D9I0293	

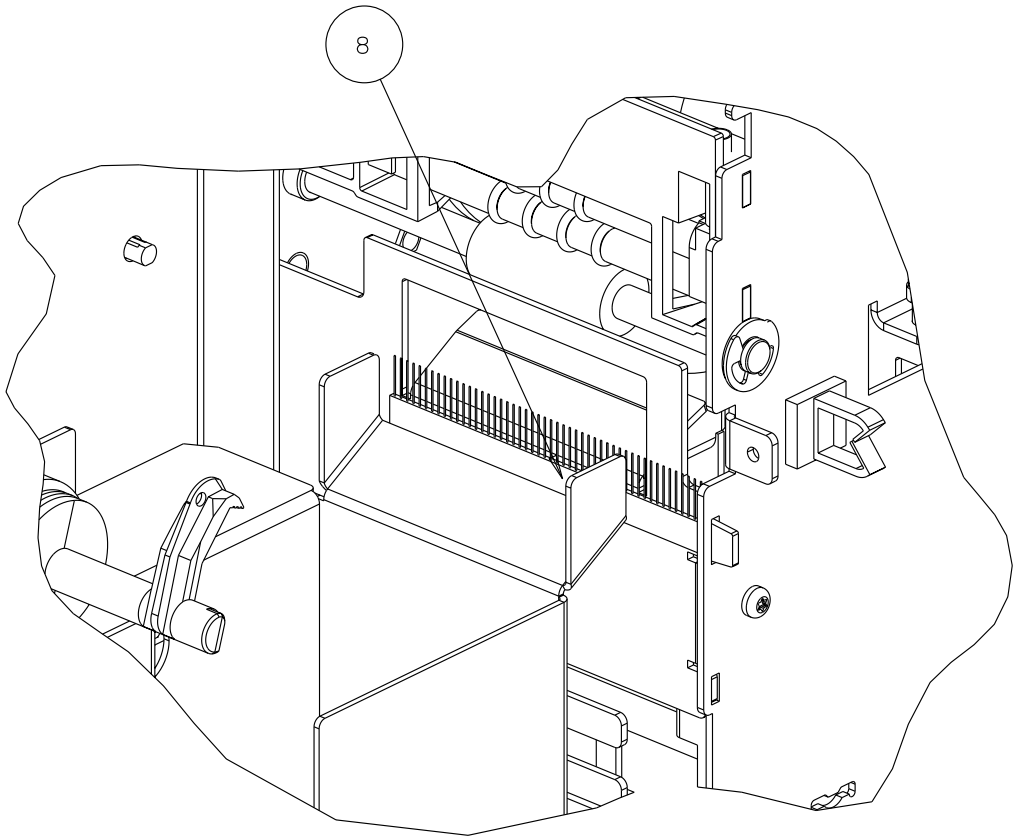
ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D9I0293	D9I0293	ASSEM

CABLES ARE NOT DISPLAYED IN DWG.

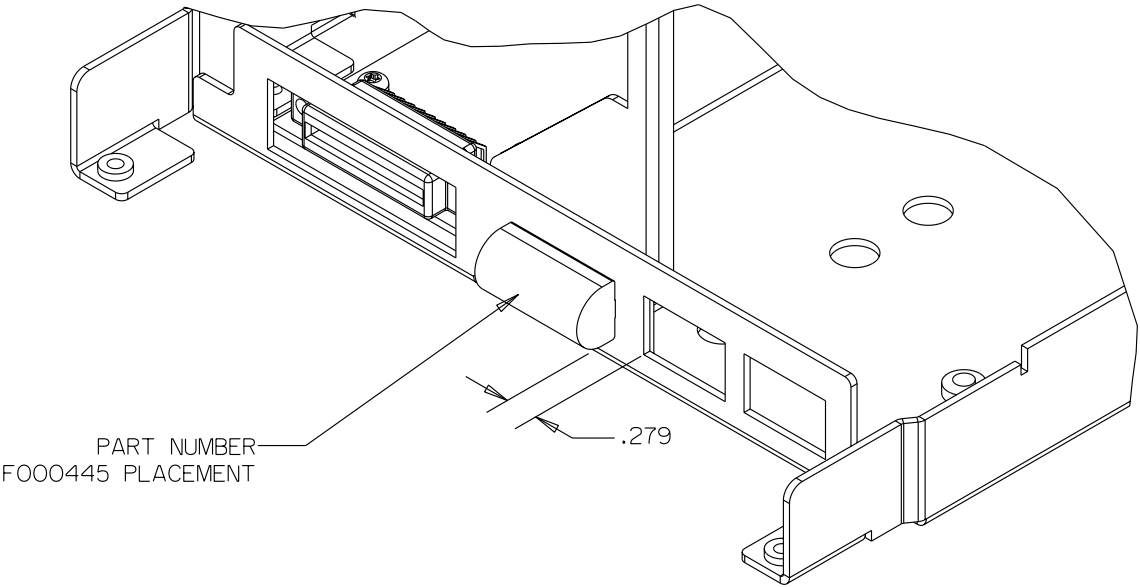
FARGO

RELEASED

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



PART NUMBER
810253
810253 PLACEMENT
SCALE 0.750



SCALE 0.750

	G	SEE PAGE I	N/A
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#

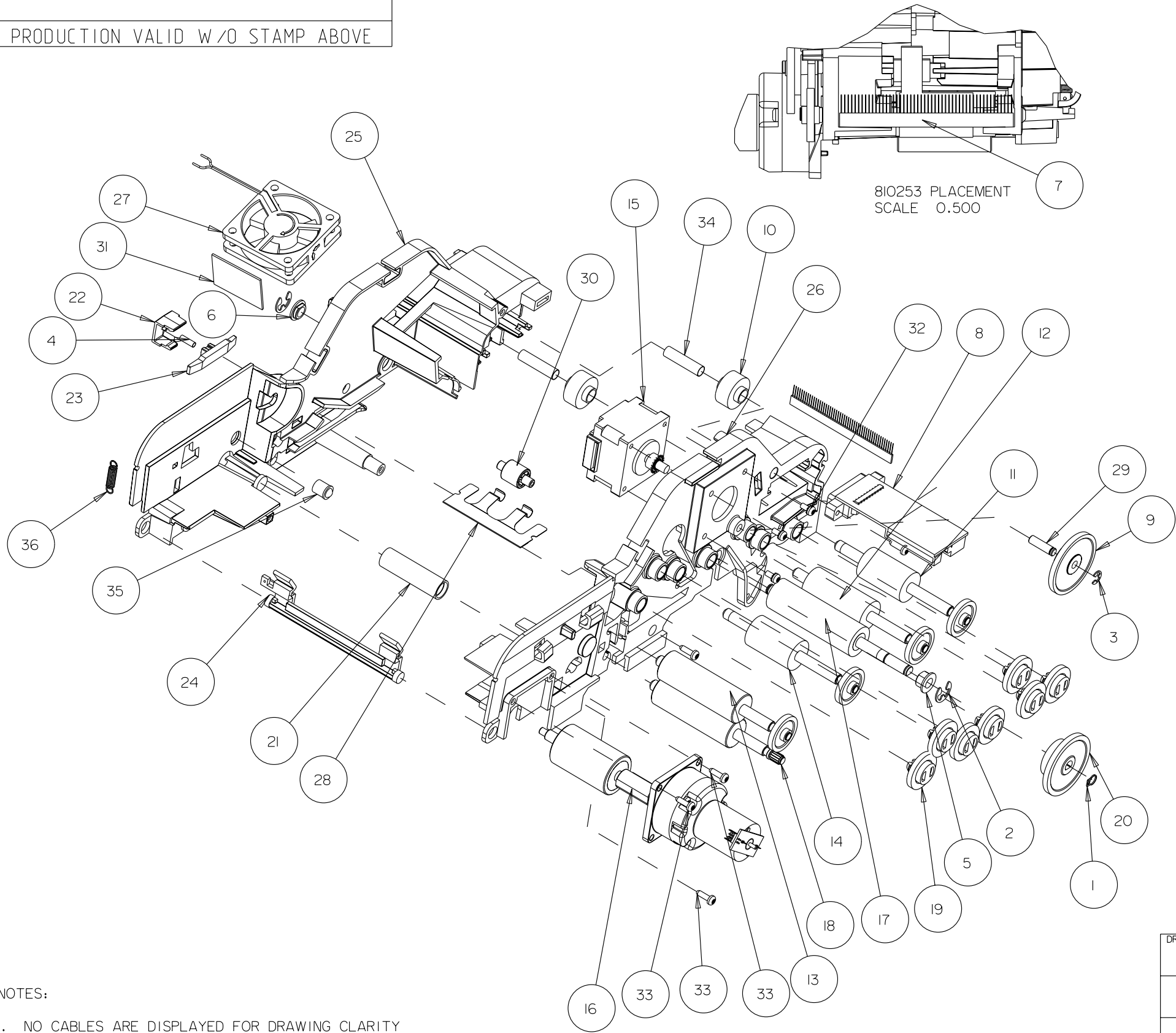
FARGO®
Part of HID Global

CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.

SIZE	DESCRIPTION		2
B	ASY-FLIPPER MECH		2
PROJECT		PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER
		D910293	D910293

ENGINEERING USE ONLY			
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE	
D910293	D910293	ASSEM	

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



NOTES:

1. NO CABLES ARE DISPLAYED FOR DRAWING CLARITY

ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D910006	D910006	ASSEM

ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	I40048	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT C .25 IN SHFT
2	2	I40062	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT E .250 IN SHFT
3	1	I40063	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT E .188 IN SHFT
4	1	I50071	PART	SPRING - COMP .120 X .375 X .014
5	1	760343	PART	BEARING - DRIVE ROLLER
6	1	760363	PART	BEARING - CAM SHAFT
7	1	810253	PART	BRUSH-STATIC DISSIPATIVE
8	1	A000445	PART	ASY PCB MAG INTF ARMSTRONG
9	1	D860280	PART	GEAR-72X36-TOOTH MOLDED
10	2	D900098	ASSEMBLY	ROLLER- PINCH C4I
11	1	D910062	ASSEMBLY	ASY-D910102-W/GEAR
12	1	D910063	ASSEMBLY	ASY-D910100-W/GEAR
13	1	D910064	ASSEMBLY	ASY-ROLLER-CLEANING-W/GEAR
14	1	D910065	ASSEMBLY	ASY-D910103-W/GEAR
15	1	D910073	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR DRIVETRAIN-STEPPER
16	1	D910074	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR CARD FEED
17	1	D910101	PART	ROLLER-PLATEN
18	1	D910107	PART	ROLLER-CLEANING IDLER
19	7	D910110	PART	GEAR IDLER 56 TOOTH SNAP IN
20	1	D910112	PART	GEAR-72X56 TOOTH
21	1	D910121	PART	ROLLER INPUT IDLER
22	1	D910155	PART	BRACKET, CARD PUSHER
23	1	D910156	PART	CARD PUSHER
24	1	D910158	PART	BRACKET-CARD CARTRIDGE SNAP
25	1	D910160	PART	FRAME-CARD PATH FRONT
26	1	D910161	PART	FRAME-CARD PATH BACK
27	1	D910212	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CBL FAN
28	1	D910221	PART	SPRING, PINCH ROLLER
29	1	D910227	PART	PIN-COMBO GEAR
30	1	D910295	PART	ROLLER-CARD IDLER
31	1	F000117	PART	"TAPE I" 2 SIDED FOAM ADHESIV"
32	3	F000170	PART	SCREW-M3X6_TPH_ZP_SEM
33	5	F000178	PART	SCREW-#4-20X.375_TPH_ZP_PLAS
34	2	F000338	PART	SPRING - COMP .250 X 1.000 X .040
35	1	F000408	PART	BALL PLUNGER
36	1	F000411	PART	SPRING-COMP .188 X .875 X .024

	E	REV BUMP	C16100	17-OCT-08	CAR/CAR
	D	D880153 IS D910295	C15264	19-DEC-07	TH/TGG
	C	MODIFIED D910161 TO BE ABLE TO REMOVE ONE OF THE F000408.	C15069	07-NOV-07	TGG/TGG
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR


DRAWN BY	DATE	<div><div>FARGO®</div><div>Part of HID Global</div><div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div></div>			
TGG	31-Mar-06				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch	DESCRIPTION			
SCALE	SIZE	ASY-ARMSTRONG CARDPATH			
0.375	B	PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
ASSY DWG		ARMSTRONG	D910006	D910006	



PART NUMBER	COLOR SCHEME
D9IO323-OI	BLACK / SILVER

This exploded view diagram illustrates the assembly of a device. The components are identified by numbered callouts:

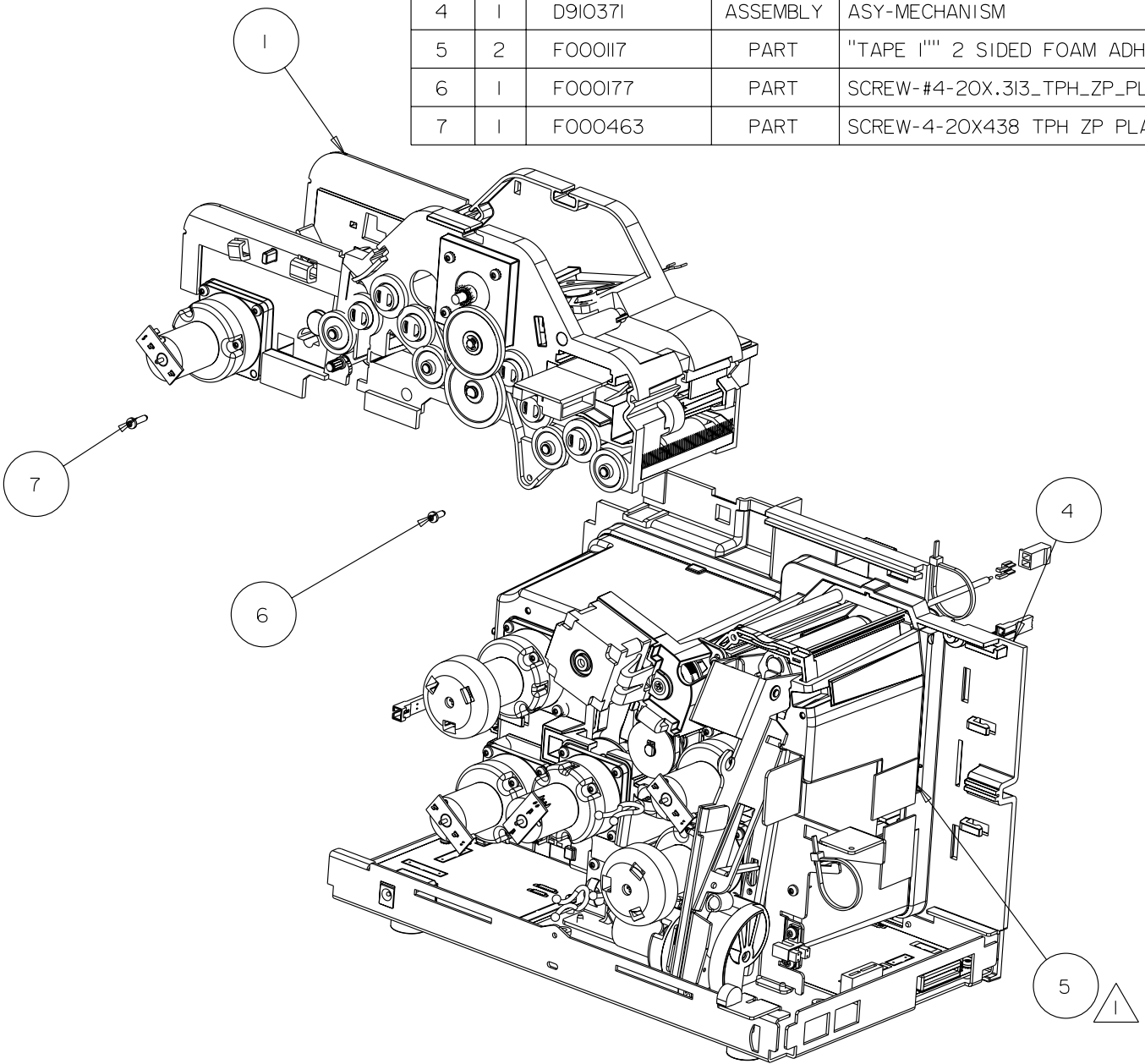
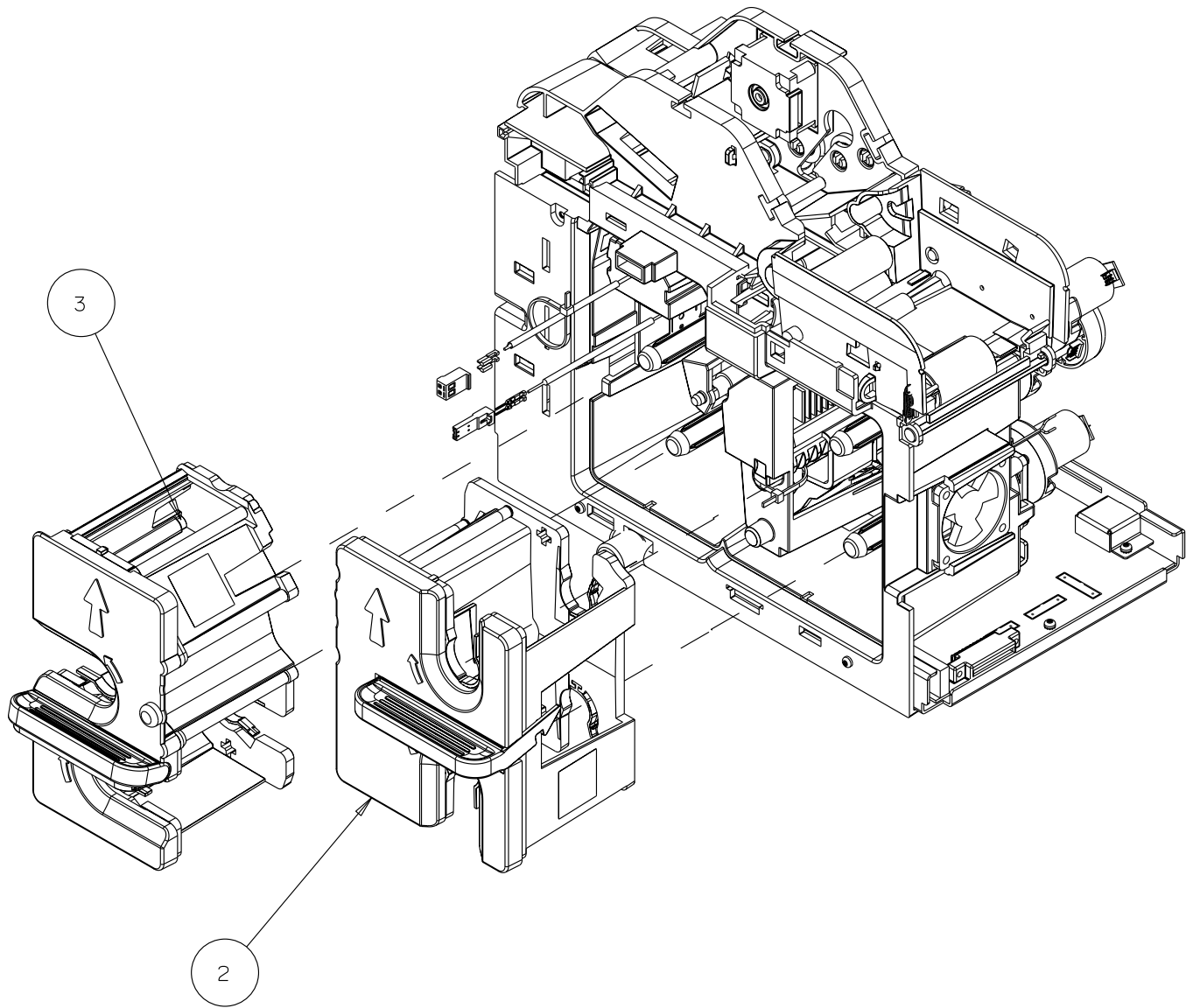
- 1**: The main top housing or cover of the device.
- 2**: A rectangular frame or bezel component.
- 3**: A perforated metal mesh or filter, shown being inserted into the frame (2).
- 4**: A side or bottom frame component.
- 5**: A small rectangular component, possibly a sensor or connector, shown being inserted into the side frame (4).
- 6**: The main front panel or display area, shown being inserted into the side frame (4).
- 7**: A small screw or fastener used to secure the front panel (6) to the side frame (4).
- 8**: A small screw or fastener used to secure the side frame (4) to the main housing (1).

DRAWN BY		DATE		 <p>This document is the property of FARGO Electronics, Inc. It contains confidential and proprietary information. Unauthorized duplication or disclosure is prohibited.</p>	
CAR		04-Mar-08			
		DIM UNITS			
		inch			
SCALE		SIZE		DESCRIPTION	
0.250		B		ASY ARMSTRONG COVERS <div style="float: right; border: 1px solid black; width: 40px; height: 40px; text-align: center; line-height: 40px;">1 1</div>	
ASSY DWG		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
		H5K	D9I0323	D9I0323	

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----

RELEASED

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	D910006	ASSEMBLY	ASY-ARMSTRONG CARDPATH
2	1	D910022	ASSEMBLY	ASY-RIBBON CARTRIDGE
3	1	D910023	ASSEMBLY	ASY-FILM CARTRIDGE
4	1	D910371	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MECHANISM
5	2	FO00117	PART	"TAPE 1'" 2 SIDED FOAM ADHESIV"
6	1	FO00177	PART	SCREW-#4-20X.313_TPH_ZP_PLAS
7	1	FO00463	PART	SCREW-4-20X438 TPH ZP PLAS

NOTES:

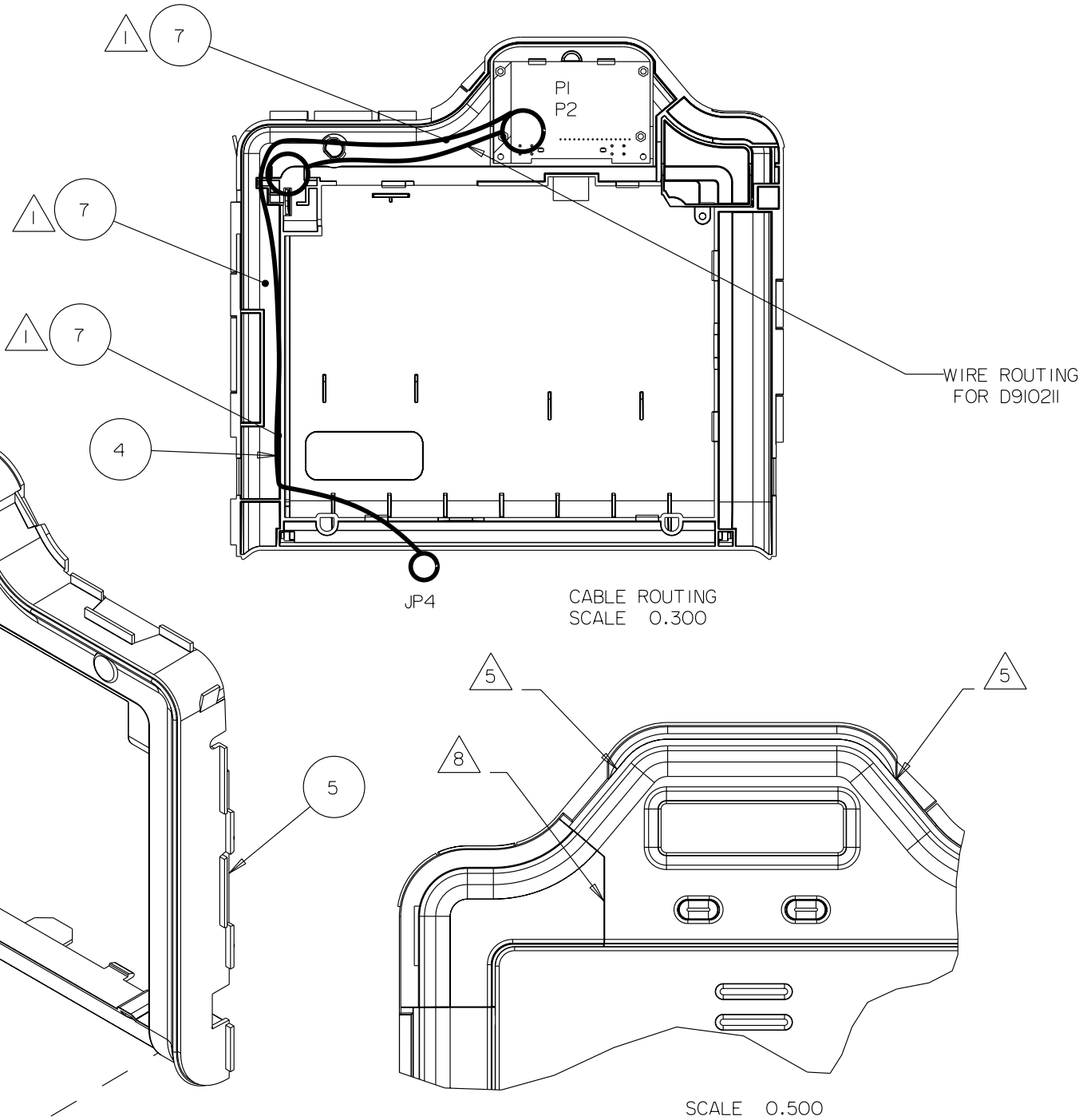
1. REFERENCE THE MANUFACTURING INSTRUCTIONS FOR A MORE DETAILED LOCATION OF TAPE.
2. NO CABLES ARE DISPLAYED FOR DRAWING CLARITY

	B	REV BUMP	C15737	15-OCT-08	CAR/CAR
	A	PRODUCTION RELEASE	C15437	22-FEB-08	CAR/CAR
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR

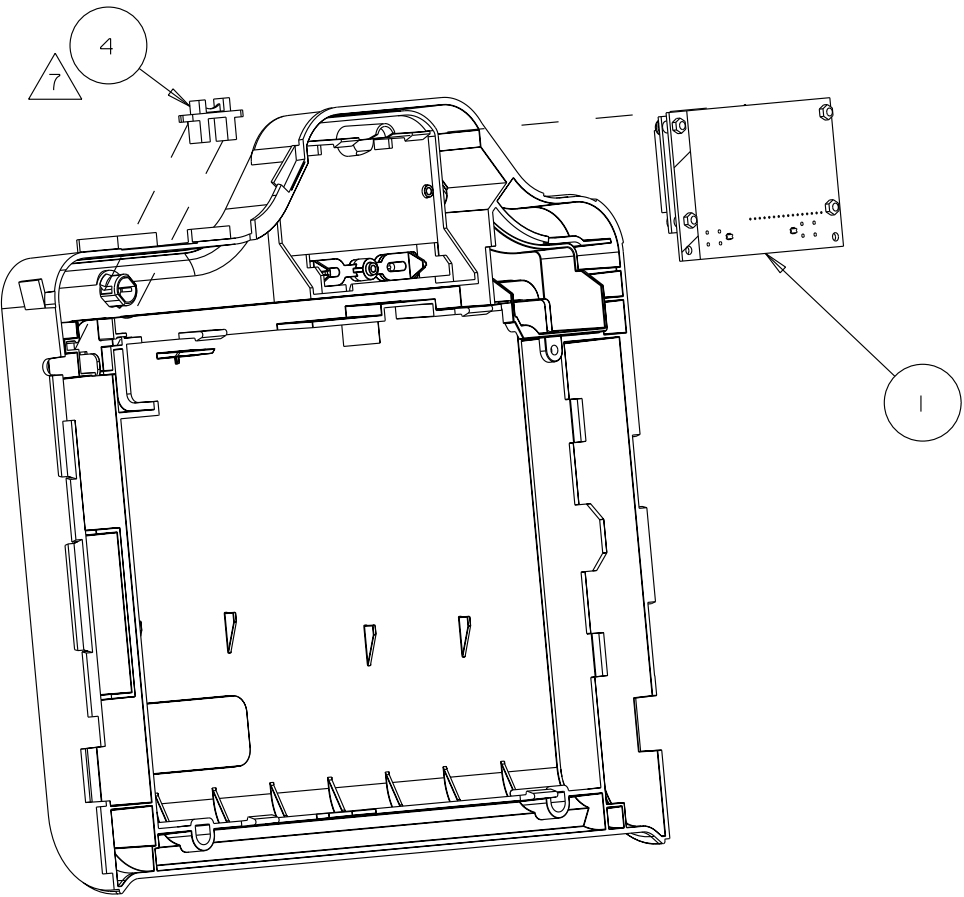
DRAWN BY	DATE	<div><div>FARGO</div><div>Part of HID Global</div><div></div></div> <div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div>			
CAR	17-Apr-06				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch				
SCALE	SIZE				
0.300	B				
ASSY DWG		DESCRIPTION	ASY-FINAL		
		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
		H5K	D910370	D910370	

ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D910370	D910370	ASSEM

COLOR TABLE	
PART NUMBER	COLOR SCHEME
D9IO283-01	STANDARD (BLACK AND SILVER)



ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	A000440	ASSEMBLY	ASY PCB DISPLAY ARMSTRONG
2	1	D9IO131 -XX	PART	COVER FRONT DOOR
3	1	D9IO208	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CBL LCD DISPLAY
4	1	D9IO211	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CBL SUPPLY COVER
5	1	D9IO282 -XX	ASSEMBLY	ASY COVER FRT TRIM PANEL
6	3	F000145	PART	"TAPE.VHB CLEAR X .5 .020'" THK"



NOTES:

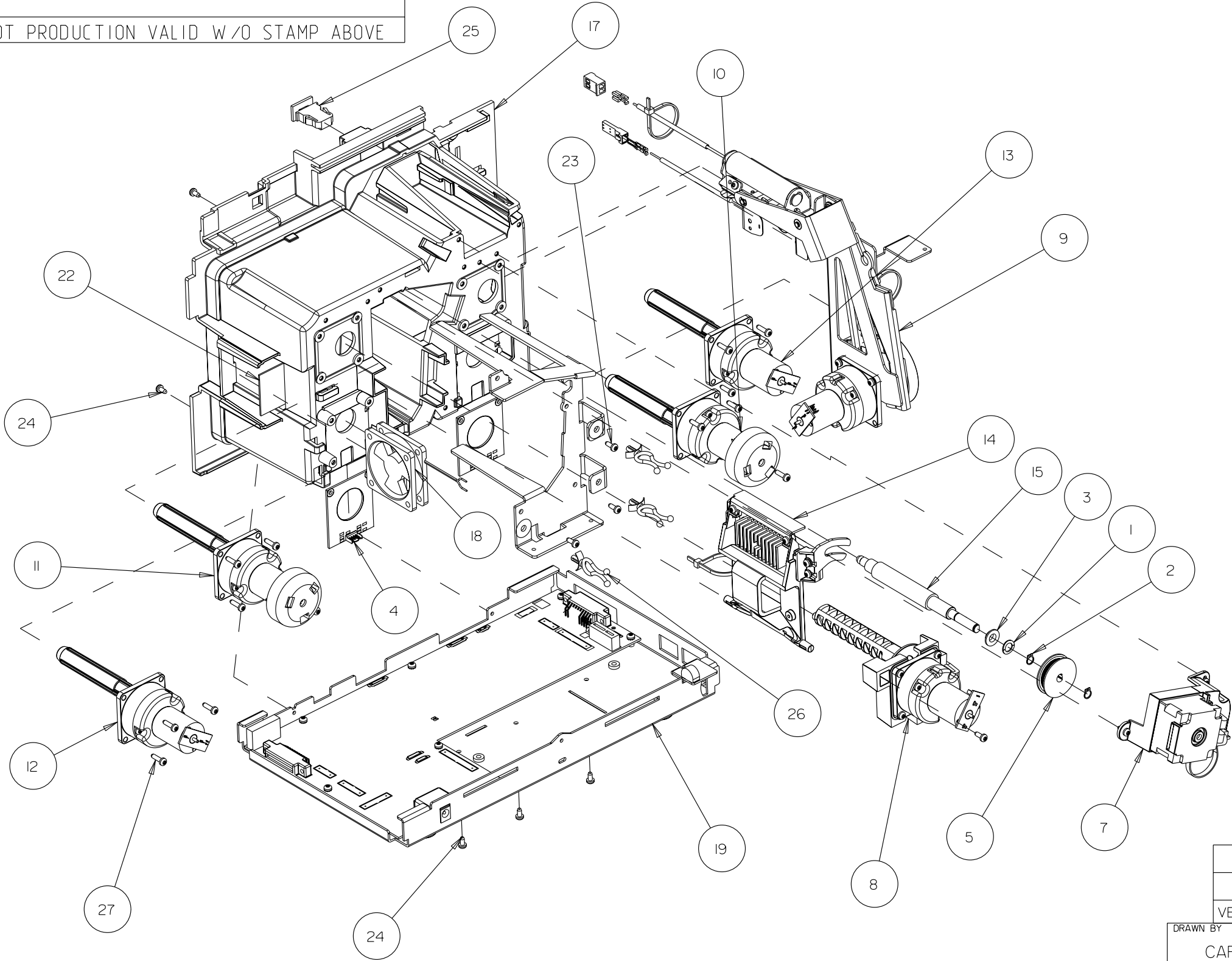
1. TO SECURE CABLE IN PLACE USE ONE PIECE (1.0 " OR 25.4 mm) OF F000145 TAPE PER LOCATION FOR A MORE PRECISE PLACEMENT AND WIRE ROUTING REFERENCE THE MANUFACTURING PROCEDURES.
2. MATERIAL AND MANUFACTURING PROCESS MUST COMPLY WITH FARGO ENVIRONMENTAL SPECIFICATION S000503. SUPPLIER CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE IS REQUIRED WITH EACH SHIPMENT.
3. PACKAGE PER FARGO SPECIFICATION S000506.
4. ALL CHANGES MUST BE APPROVED BY FARGO ENGINEERING.
5. PROTECTIVE LENSE FILM NOT TO GO PAST THIS EDGE.
6. CABLE ROUTING AND PLACEMENT ARE FOR REFERENCE ONLY.
7. SENSOR MUST BE PRESSED INTO COVER UNTIL FULLY SEATED.
8. USE 2 INCHES OF TAPE TO SECURE ITEM D9IO138-XX TO D9IO282-XX ASY.

	A	PRODUCTION RELEASE, REMOVED D9IO138-XX FROM BOM	CI5I94	28-NOV-07	CAR/CAR
	OI	PROTOTYPE RELEASE	CI5O23	03-JUL-07	CAR/CAR
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR

DRAWN BY	DATE	<div>FARGO</div> <div>ELECTRONICS, INCORPORATED</div>			
CAR	03-Jul-07				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch				
SCALE	SIZE	DESCRIPTION			
0.350	B	ASY-COVER-FRT-W-CABLES			
ASSY DWG		PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
		H5K	D9IO283	D9IO283	

ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D9IO283	D9IO283	ASSEM

NOT PRODUCTION VALID W/O STAMP ABOVE



NOTES:
1. NO CABLES ARE DISPLAYED FOR DRAWING CLARITY.

ITEM	QTY	ITEM NUMBER	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	1	I3095I	PART	WASHER-SPRING.269ID.423OD.006THK
2	2	I40048	PART	RETAINING RING-EXT C .25 IN SHFT
3	1	760363	PART	BEARING-CAM_SHAFT
4	2	A000365	ASSEMBLY	ASY PCB RFID ANTENNA
5	1	D840889	PART	PULLEY-FHT-I, 80 TOOTH
6	1	D9I0030	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CABLE WIRES
7	1	D9I0050	ASSEMBLY	ASY-BRACKET PRINT STEPPER
8	1	D9I0052	ASSEMBLY	ASY PRINthead MOTOR MOUNT
9	1	D9I0054	ASSEMBLY	ASY LAM MECHANISM
10	1	D9I0055	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR FILM SUPPLY
11	1	D9I0056	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR RBN TAKEUP
12	1	D9I0057	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR RBN SUPPLY
13	1	D9I0058	ASSEMBLY	ASY-MTR FILM TAKEUP
14	1	D9I0071	ASSEMBLY	ASY BRACKET PRINthead
15	1	D9I0I09	PART	ROLLER - PRINT PLATEN
16	1	D9I0I40	PART	BRACKET STIFFENER
17	1	D9I0I54	PART	FRAME-ARMSTRONG
18	1	D9I0212	ASSEMBLY	ASY-CBL FAN
19	1	D9I0372	ASSEMBLY	ASY-BASEPLATE-W/BOARD
20	2	E000508	PART	FERRITE-SNAP ON
21	1	E000939	PART	IND FERRITE SNAP ON 8.2MM
22	1	F000I17	PART	"TAPE I"" 2 SIDED FOAM ADHESIV"
23	10	F000I77	PART	SCREW-#4-20X.3I3_TPH_ZP_PLAS
24	5	F000I92	PART	SCREW-M3X6 TPH ZP TAPTITE
25	1	F00033I	PART	LATCH- TOUCH
26	3	F00035I	PART	CABLE TIE TWIST LOCK
27	14	F000463	PART	SCREW-4-20X438 TPH ZP PLAS

	B	REV BUMP	CI6I00	I7-OCT-08	CAR/CAR
	A	PRODUCTION RELEASE	CI5437	22-FEB-08	CAR/CAR
VER	REV	RECORD	ECO#	DATE	APPR

DRAWN BY	DATE	<div><div>FARGO®</div><div>Part of HID Global</div><div><div>CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION This document contains confidential and proprietary information, which may not be duplicated, published, disseminated or disclosed to unintended third party recipients (or just: "third parties") or used for any purpose, without written permission from Fargo Electronics Inc.</div></div></div>			
CAR	I6-Nov-07				
	DIM UNITS				
	inch	DESCRIPTION			
SCALE	SIZE	ASY-MECHANISM			
0.300	B	PROJECT	ASSY PART NUMBER	ITEM NUMBER	
ASSY DWG	H5K	D9I037I	D9I037I	D9I037I	

ENGINEERING USE ONLY		
DRAWING FILE	ENGINEERING MODEL NAME	MODEL TYPE
D9I037I	D9I037I	ASSEM